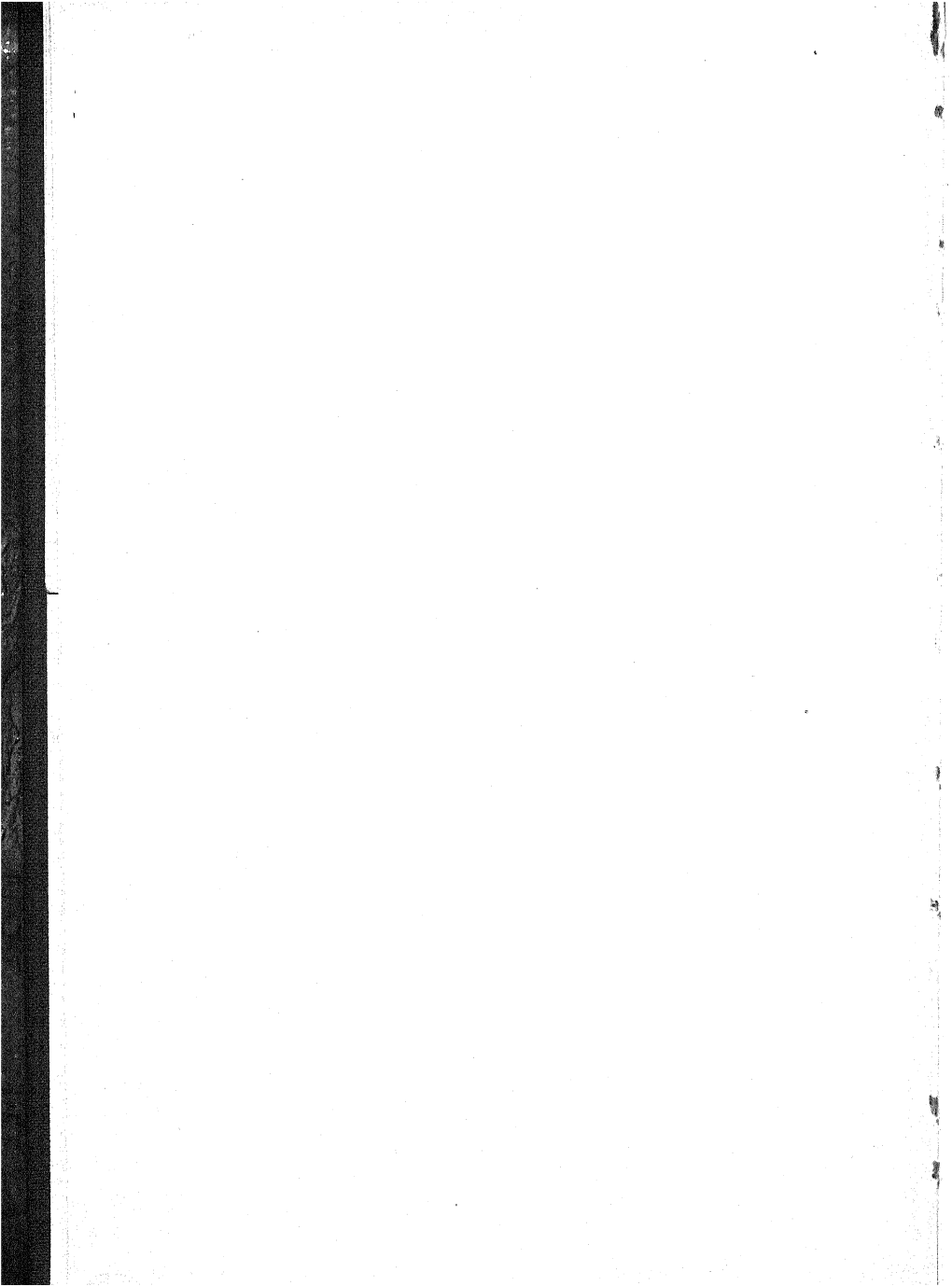


THE  
COMMERCE AND NAVIGATION  
OF  
THE ERYTHRAEAN SEA  
AND  
ANCIENT INDIA AS DESCRIBED  
BY  
KTESIAS THE KNIDIAN





JOHN WATSON McCRINDLE  
THE COMMERCE AND  
NAVIGATION OF  
THE ERYTHRAEAN SEA

BEING TRANSLATIONS OF THE  
"PERIPLUS MARIS ERYTHRAEI" BY AN ANONYMOUS WRITER  
AND PARTLY FROM

ARRIAN'S ACCOUNT OF THE VOYAGE OF NEARKHOS

FOLLOWED BY

61982

ANCIENT INDIA AS DESCRIBED

BY 61983

KTESIAS THE KNIDIAN

BEING A TRANSLATION OF THE ABRIDGEMENT OF HIS "INDIKA"  
BY PHOTIOS AND OF THE FRAGMENTS  
OF THAT WORK PRESERVED IN OTHER WRITERS

Edited, with

historical introductions, commentary, critical notes, and indexes



PHILO PRESS  
AMSTERDAM

61982

LIBRARY, NEW YORK  
Ac. No. 61983  
Date 25.4.77  
Call No. 910.40955  
McC

ISBN 90 6022 108 7

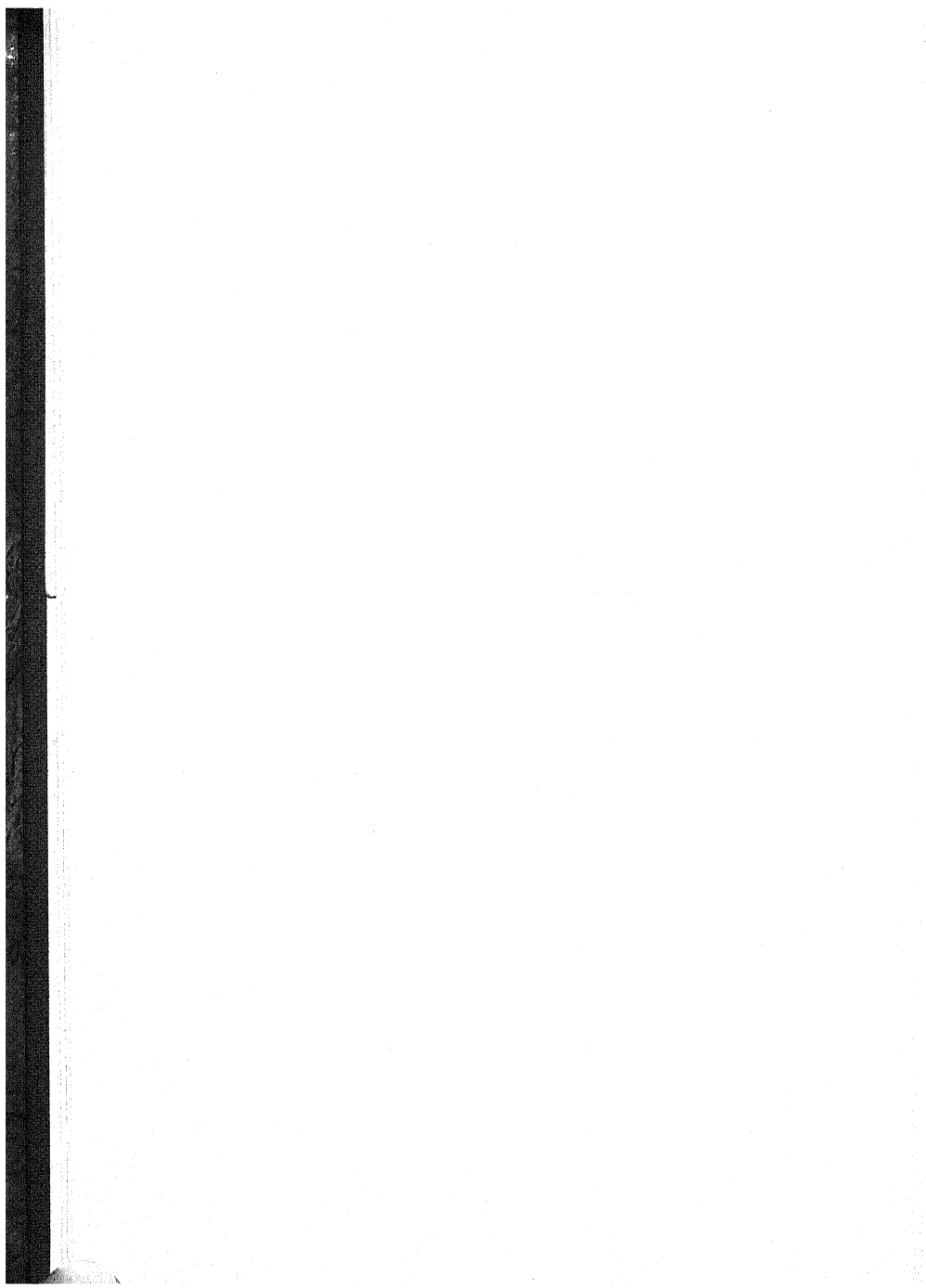
REPRINT 1973 OF THE EDITIONS CALCUTTA-LONDON 1879, 1882

THE  
COMMERCE AND NAVIGATION  
OF THE  
ERYTHRÆAN SEA;

BEING A TRANSLATION  
OF THE  
PERIPLUS MARIS ERYTHRÆI,  
BY AN ANONYMOUS WRITER,  
AND OF  
ARRIAN'S ACCOUNT OF THE VOYAGE OF NEARKHOS,  
FROM THE MOUTH OF THE INDUS TO THE HEAD OF THE  
PERSIAN GULF.  
WITH INTRODUCTIONS, COMMENTARY, NOTES,  
AND INDEX.

BY  
J. W. McCRINDLE, M.A., EDIN.,  
PRINCIPAL OF THE GOVERNMENT COLLEGE, PATNA;  
MEMBER OF THE COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY OF EDINBURGH;  
FELLOW OF THE CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY.

*(Reprinted, with additions, from the Indian Antiquary.)*



## PREFACE.

---

In the Preface to my former work, "Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian," I informed the reader that it was my intention to publish from time to time translations of the Greek and Latin works which relate to ancient India, until the series should be exhausted, and the present volume is the second instalment towards the fulfilment of that undertaking. It contains a translation of the *Periplus* (i. e. *Circumnavigation*) of the *Erythræan Sea*, together with a translation of the second part of the *Indika* of Arrian describing the celebrated voyage made by Nearkhos from the mouth of the Indus to the head of the Persian Gulf. Arrian's narrative, copied from the Journal of the voyage written by Nearkhos himself, forms an admirable supplement to the *Periplus*, as it contains a minute description of a part of the Erythræan Coast which is merely glanced at by the author of that work. The translations have been prepared from the most approved texts. The notes, in a few instances only, bear upon points of textual criticism, their main object being to present in a concise form for popular reading the most recent results of learned enquiry directed to verify, correct,

or otherwise illustrate the contents of the narratives.

The warm and unanimous approbation bestowed upon the first volume of this series, both by the Press in this country and at home, has given me great encouragement to proceed with the undertaking, and a third volume is now in preparation, to contain the *Indika* of Ktésias and the account of India given by Strabo in the 15th Book of his Geography.

*Patna College, June 1879.*

---

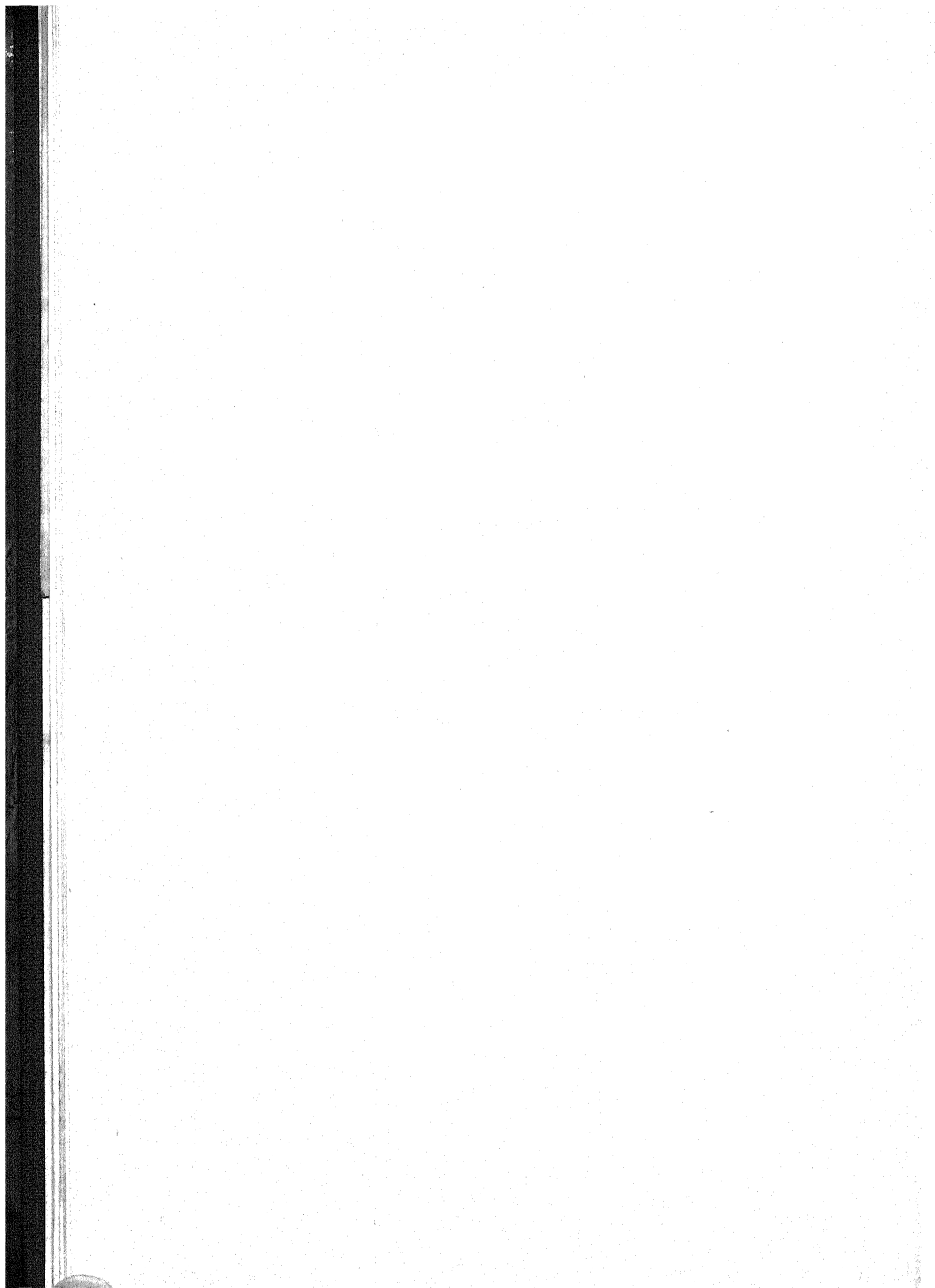
ANONYMI CARRIANI UT FERTUR  
PERIPLUS MARIS ERYTHRÆI.

TRANSLATED FROM THE TEXT

As given in the *Geographi Græci Minores*, edited by  
C. Muller : Paris, 1855.

WITH INTRODUCTION AND COMMENTARY.

Received from the University of Cambridge. Delivered 1900-02





## PERIPLUS OF THE ERYTHRÆAN SEA.

---

### INTRODUCTION.<sup>1</sup>

The *Periplus of the Erythræan Sea* is the title prefixed to a work which contains the best account of the commerce carried on from the Red Sea and the coast of Africa to the East Indies during the time that Egypt was a province of the Roman empire. The Erythræan Sea was an appellation given in those days to the whole expanse of ocean reaching from the coast of Africa to the utmost boundary of ancient knowledge on the East—an appellation in all appearance deduced from the entrance into it by the Straits of the Red Sea, styled Erythra by the Greeks, and not excluding the Gulf of Persia.

The author was a Greek merchant, who in the first century of the Christian era had, it would appear, settled at Berenikê, a great seaport situated in the southern extremity of Egypt, whence he made commercial voyages which carried him to the seaports of Eastern Africa as far as Azania, and to those of Arabia as far as Kanê, whence, by taking advantage of the south-west monsoon, he crossed over to the ports lying on the western shores of India. Having made careful

---

<sup>1</sup> The Introduction and Commentary embody the main substance of Müller's *Prolegomena* and Notes to the *Periplus*, and of Vincent's *Commerce and Navigation of the Ancients* so far as it relates specially to that work. The most recent authorities accessible have, however, been also consulted, and the result of their inquiries noted. I may mention particularly Bishop Caldwell's *Dravidian Grammar*, to which I am indebted for the identification of places on the Malabar and Coromandel coasts.

observations and inquiries regarding the navigation and commerce of these countries, he committed to writing, for the benefit of other merchants, the knowledge which he had thus acquired. Much cannot be said in praise of the style in which he writes. It is marked by a rude simplicity, which shows that he was not a man of literary culture, but in fact a mere man of business, who in composing restricts himself to a narrow round of set phrases, and is indifferent alike to grace, freedom, or variety of expression. It shows further that he was a Greek settled in Egypt, and that he must have belonged to an isolated community of his countrymen, whose speech had become corrupt by much intercourse with foreigners. It presents a very striking contrast to the rhetorical diction which Agatharkhidês, a great master of all the tricks of speech, employs in his description of the Erythræan. For all shortcomings, however, in the style of the work, there is ample compensation in the fulness, variety, accuracy, and utility of the information which it conveys. Such indeed is its superiority on these points that it must be reckoned as a most precious treasure: for to it we are indebted far more than to any other work for most of our knowledge of the remote shores of Eastern Africa, and the marts of India, and the condition of ancient commerce in these parts of the world.

The name of the author is unknown. In the Heidelberg MS., which alone has preserved the little work, and contains it after the *Periplus* of Arrian, the title given is 'Ἀρριανοῦ περίπλους τῆς Ερυθρᾶς θαλάσσης. Trusting to the correctness of this

title, Stuckius attributed the work to Arrian of Nikomedia, and Fabricius to another Arrian who belonged to Alexandria. No one, however, who knows how ancient books are usually treated can fail to see what the real fact here is, viz. that since not only the *Periplus Maris Erythraei*, but also the *Anonymi Periplus Ponti Euxini* (whereof the latter part occurs in the Heidelberg MS. before Arrian's *Ponti Periplus*) are attributed to Arrian, and the different Arrians are not distinguished by any indications afforded by the titles, there can be no doubt that the well-known name of the Nikomedian writer was transferred to the books placed in juxtaposition to his proper works, by the arbitrary judgment of the librarians. In fact it very often happens that short works written by different authors are all referred to one and the same author, especially if they treat of the same subject and are published conjointly in the same volume. But in the case of the work before us, any one would have all the more readily ascribed it to Arrian who had heard by report anything of the *Paraplus* of the Erythraean Sea described in that author's *Indika*. On this point there is the utmost unanimity of opinion among writers.

That the author, whatever may have been his name, lived in Egypt, is manifest. Thus he says in § 29: "Several of the trees *with us* in Egypt weep gum," and he joins the names of the Egyptian months with the Roman, as may be seen by referring to §§ 6, 39, 49, and 56. The place in which he was settled was probably Berenikê, since it was from that port he embarked on his

voyages to Africa and Arabia, and since he speaks of the one coast as on the right from Berenikê, and the other on the left. The whole tenor of the work proclaims that he must have been a merchant. That the entire work is not a mere compilation from the narratives or journals of other merchants and navigators, but that the author had himself visited some of the seats of trade which he describes, is in itself probable, and is indicated in § 20, where, contrary to the custom of the ancient writers, he speaks in his own person :—"In sailing south, therefore, *we* stand off from the shore and keep *our* course down the middle of the gulf." Compare with this what is said in § 48: τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἐμπορίαν τὴν ἡμετέραν.

As regards the age to which the writer belonged: it is first of all evident that he wrote after the times of Augustus, since in § 23 mention is made of the Roman Emperors. That he was older, however, than Ptolemy the Geographer, is proved by his geography, which knows nothing of India beyond the Ganges except the traditional account current from the days of Eratosthenês to those of Pliny, while it is evident that Ptolemy possessed much more accurate information regarding these parts. It confirms this view that while our author calls the island of Ceylon Παλαισιμoundou, Ptolemy calls it by the name subsequently given to it—Salikê. Again, from § 19, it is evident that he wrote before the kingdom of the Nabathæans was abolished by the Romans. Moreover Pliny (VI. xxvi. 104), in proceeding to describe the navigation to the marts of India by the direct route across the

ocean with the wind called Hippalos, writes to this effect :—" And for a long time this was the mode of navigation, until a merchant discovered a compendious route whereby India was brought so near that to trade thither became very lucrative. For, every year a fleet is despatched, carrying on board companies of archers, since the Indian seas are much infested by pirates. Nor will a description of the whole voyage from Egypt tire the reader, since now for the first time correct information regarding it has been made public." Compare with this the statement of the *Periplus* in § 57, and it will be apparent that while this route to India had only just come into use in the time of Pliny, it had been for some time in use in the days of our author. Now, as Pliny died in 79 A.D., and had completed his work two years previously, it may be inferred that he had written the 6th book of his *Natural History* before our author wrote his work. A still more definite indication of his date is furnished in § 5, where Zoskalês is mentioned as reigning in his times over the Auxumitæ. Now in a list of the early kings of Abyssinia the name of Za-Hakale occurs, who must have reigned from 77 to 89 A.D. This Za-Hakale is doubtless the Zoskalês of the *Periplus*, and was the contemporary of the emperors Vespasian, Titus, and Domitian. We conclude, therefore, that the *Periplus* was written a little after the death of Pliny, between the years A.D. 80-89.

Opinions on this point, however, have varied considerably. Salmasius thought that Pliny and our author wrote at the same time, though their ac-

counts of the same things are often contradictory. In support of this view he adduces the statement of the *Periplus* (§ 54), "Muziris, a place in India, is in the kingdom of Kêprobotes," when compared with the statement of Pliny (VI. xxvi. 104), "Cœlobothras was reigning there when I committed this to writing;" and argues that since Kêprobotes and Cœlobothras are but different forms of the same name, the two authors must have been contemporary. The inference is, however, unwarrantable, since the name in question, like that of Pandîôn, was a common appellation of the kings who ruled over that part of India.

Dodwell, again, was of opinion that the *Periplus* was written after the year A. D. 161, when Marcus Aurelius and Lucius Verus were joint emperors. He bases, in the first place, his defence of this view on the statement in § 26: "Not long before our own times the Emperor (Καίσαρ) destroyed the place," viz. Eudaimôn-Arabia, now Aden. This emperor he supposes must have been Trajan, who, according to Eutropius (VIII. 3), reduced Arabia to the form of a province. Eutropius, however, meant by Arabia only that small part of it which adjoins Syria. This Dodwell not only denies, but also asserts that the conquest of Trajan embraced the whole of the Peninsula—a sweeping inference, which he bases on a single passage in the *Periplus* (§ 16) where the south part of Arabia is called ἡ πρώτη Αραβία, "the First Arabia." From this expression he gathers that Trajan, after his conquest of the country, had divided it into several provinces, designated according to the order in which they were consti-

tuted. The language of the *Periplus*, however, forbids us to suppose that there is here any reference to a Roman province. What the passage states is that Azania (in Africa) was by ancient right subject to the kingdom τῆς πρώτης γινομένης (λεγομένης according to Dodwell) Ἀραβίας, and was ruled by the despot of Mapharitis.

Dodwell next defends the date he has fixed on by the passage in § 23, where it is said that Kharibaël sought by frequent gifts and embassies to gain the friendship of the emperors (τῶν αὐτοκρατόρων). He thinks that the time is here indicated when M. Aurelius and L. Verus were reigning conjointly, A.D. 161-181. There is no need, however, to put this construction on the words, which may without any impropriety be taken to mean '*the emperors for the time being*,' viz. Vespasian, Titus, and Domitian.

Vincent adopted the opinion of Salmasius regarding the date of the work, but thinks that the Kaisar mentioned in § 26 was Claudius. "The Romans," he says, "from the time they first entered Arabia under Ælius Gallus, had always maintained a footing on the coast of the Red Sea. They had a garrison at Leukê Kômê, in Nabathæa, where they collected the customs; and it is apparent that they extended their power down the gulf and to the ports of the ocean in the reign of Claudius, as the freedman of Annianus Plocamus was in the act of collecting the tributes there when he was carried out to sea and over to Taprobânê. If we add to this the discovery of Hippalus in the same reign, we find a better reason for the destruction of Aden at

this time than at any other." The assertion in this extract that the garrison and custom-house at *Leukê Kômê* belonged to the Romans is not warranted by the language of the *Periplus*, which in fact shows that they belonged to *Malikhos* the king of the Nabathæans. Again, it is a mere conjecture that the voyage which the freedman of *Plocamus* (who, according to *Pliny*, farmed the revenues of the Red Sea) was making along the coast of Arabia, when he was carried away by the monsoon to *Taprobanê*, was a voyage undertaken to collect the revenues due to the Roman treasury. With regard to the word *Kaîrap*, which has occasioned so much perplexity, it is most probably a corrupt reading in a text notorious for its corruptness. The proper reading may perhaps be *ΕΛΙΣΑΡ*. At any rate, had one of the emperors in reality destroyed *Aden*, it is unlikely that their historians would have failed to mention such an important fact.

*Schwanbeck*, although he saw the weakness of the arguments with which *Salmasius* and *Vincent* endeavoured to establish their position, nevertheless thought that our author lived in the age of *Pliny* and wrote a little before him, because those particulars regarding the Indian navigation which *Pliny* says became known in his age agree, on the whole, so well with the statement in the *Periplus* that they must have been extracted therefrom. No doubt there are, he allows, some discrepancies; but those, he thinks, may be ascribed to the haste or negligence of the copyist. A careful examination, however, of parallel passages in *Pliny* and the *Periplus* show this assertion to be



untenable. Vincent himself speaks with caution on this point :—"There is," he says, "no absolute proof that either copied from the other. But those who are acquainted with Pliny's methods of abbreviation would much rather conclude, if one must be a copyist, that his title to this office is the clearest."

From these preliminary points we pass on to consider the contents of the work, and these may be conveniently reviewed under the three heads Geography, Navigation, Commerce. In the commentary, which is to accompany the translation, the Geography will be examined in detail. Meanwhile we shall enumerate the voyages which are distinguishable in the *Periplus*,<sup>2</sup> and the articles of commerce which it specifies.

#### I. VOYAGES MENTIONED IN THE PERIPLUS.

I. A voyage from *Bereniké*, in the south of Egypt, down the western coast of the Red Sea through the Straits, along the coast of Africa, round Cape Guardafui, and then southward along the eastern coast of Africa as far as Rhâpta, a place about six degrees south of the equator.

II. We are informed of two distinct courses confined to the Red Sea : one from Myos Hormos, in the south of Egypt, across the northern end of the sea to Leuké Kômê, on the opposite coast of Arabia, near the mouth of the Eilatitic Gulf, whence it was continued to Mouza, an Arabian port lying not far westward from the Straits ; the other from Bereniké directly down the gulf to this same port

---

<sup>2</sup> The enumeration is Vincent's, altered and abridged.

III. There is described next to this a voyage from the mouth of the Straits along the southern coast of Arabia round the promontory now called Ras-el-Had, whence it was continued along the eastern coast of Arabia as far as Apologos (now Oboleh), an important emporium at the head of the Persian Gulf, near the mouth of the river Euphrates.

IV. Then follows a passage from the Straits to India by three different routes: the first by adhering to the coasts of Arabia, Karmania, Gedrosia, and Indo-Skythia, which terminated at Barugaza (Bharêch), a great emporium on the river Nammadios (the Narmadâ), at a distance of thirty miles from its mouth; the second from Kanê, a port to the west of Suagros, a great projection on the south coast of Arabia, now Cape Fartaque; and the third from Cape Guardafui, on the African side—both across the ocean by the monsoon to Mouziris and Nelkunda, great commercial cities on the coast of Malabar.

V. After this we must allow a similar voyage performed by the Indians to Arabia, or by the Arabians to India, previous to the performance of it by the Greeks, because the Greeks as late as the reign of Philomêtôr met this commerce in Sabæa.

VI. We obtain an incidental knowledge of a voyage conducted from ports on the east coast of Africa over to India by the monsoon long before Hippalos introduced the knowledge of that wind to the Roman world. This voyage was connected, no doubt, with the commerce of Arabia, since the Arabians were the great traffickers of antiquity, and held in subjection part of the sea-board of Eastern

Africa. The Indian commodities imported into Africa were rice, ghee, oil of sesamum, sugar, cotton, muslins, and sashes. These commodities, the *Periplus* informs us, were brought sometimes in vessels destined expressly for the coast of Africa, while at others they were only part of the cargo, out of vessels which were proceeding to another port. Thus we have two methods of conducting this commerce perfectly direct; and another by touching on this coast with a final destination to Arabia. This is the reason that the Greeks found cinnamon and the produce of India on this coast, when they first ventured to pass the Straits in order to seek a cheaper market than Sabæa.

## II. ARTICLES OF COMMERCE MENTIONED IN THE PERIPLUS.

### I. Animals :—

1. Παρθένοι εὐειδεῖς πρὸς παλλακίαν—Handsome girls for the haram, imported into Barugaza for the king (49).<sup>3</sup>

2. Δούλικα κρείσσονα—Tall slaves, procured at Opônê, imported into Egypt (14).

3. Σώματα θηλυκὰ—Female slaves, procured from Arabia and India, imported into the island of Dioskoridês (31).

4. Σώματα.—Slaves imported from Omana and Apologos into Barugaza (36), and from Moundou and Malaô (8, 9).

5. Ἴπποι—Horses imported into Kanê for the king, and into Mouza for the despot (23, 24).

---

<sup>3</sup> The numerals indicate the sections of the *Periplus* in which the articles are mentioned.

6. 'Ημίονοι *νωρηνγοί*—Sumpter mules imported into Mouza for the despot (24).

## II. Animal Products :—

1. Βούτυρον—Butter, or the Indian preparation therefrom called *ghî*, a product of Ariakê (41); exported from Barugaza to the Barbarine markets beyond the Straits (14). The word, according to Pliny (xxviii. 9), is of Skythian origin, though apparently connected with Βοῦς, *rupòs*. The reading is, however, suspected by Lassen, who would substitute Βόσμπορον or Βόσπορον, a kind of grain.

2. Δέρματα Σηρικὰ—Chinese hides or furs. Exported from Barbarikon, a mart on the Indus (39). Vincent suspected the reading δέρματα, but groundlessly, for Pliny mentions the Séres sending their iron along with vestments and hides (*vestibus pellibusque*), and among the presents sent to Yudhishthira by the Śaka, Tushâra and Kaṅka skins are enumerated.—*Mahâbh.* ii. 50, quoted by Lassen.

3. Ἐλέφας—Ivory. Exported from Adouli (6), Analîtês (8), Ptolemaïs (3), Mossulon (10), and the ports of Azania (16, 17). Also from Barugaza (49), Mouziris and Nelkunda (56); a species of ivory called Βασαρή is produced in Desarênê (62).

4. Ἐριον Σηρικόν—Chinese cotton. Imported from the country of the Thînai through Baktria to Barugaza, and by the Ganges to Bengal, and thence to Dimurikê (64). By Ἐριον Vincent seems to understand silk in the raw state.

5. Κέρατα—Horns. Exported from Barugaza to the marts of Omana and Apologos (36). Müller suspects this reading, thinking it strange that

such an article as *horns* should be mentioned between *wooden beams* and *logs*. He thinks, therefore, that *Képara* is either used in some technical sense, or that the reading *Korμῶν* or *Korμίων* should be substituted—adding that *Korμῶνς ἐβένου*, *planks of ebony*, are at all events mentioned by *Athēnaios* (p. 201a) where he is quoting *Kalixenos of Rhodes*.

6. *Kopάλλιον*—Coral. (Sans. *pravāla*, Hindi *māṅgā*.) Imported into Kanê (28), Barbarikon on the Indus (39), Barugaza (49), and Naoura, Tundis, Mouziris, and Nelkunda (56).

7. *Λάκκος χρωμάτινος*—Coloured lac. Exported to Adouli from Ariakê (6). The Sanskrit word is *lākshā*, which is probably a later form of *rākshā*, connected, as Lassen thinks, with *rāga*, from the root *rañj*, to dye. The vulgar form is *lakkha*. Gum-lac is a substance produced on the leaves and branches of certain trees by an insect, both as a covering for its egg and food for its young. It yields a fine red dye.\* *Salmasius* thinks that by *λάκκος χρωμάτινος* must be understood not lac itself, but vestments dyed therewith.

8. *Μαργαρίτης*—Pearl. (Sans. *mukta*, Hindi, *motī*.) Exported in considerable quantity and of superior quality from Mouziris and Nelkunda (56). Cf. *πινικόν*.

9. *Νῆμα Σηρικόν*—Silk thread. From the coun-

\* *Bhagvānlāl Indraji Pandit* points out that the colour is called *alaktaka*, Prakrit *alito*: it is used by women for dyeing the nails and feet,—also as a dye. The *gulāl* or pill-like balls used by women are made with arrowroot coloured with *alito*, and cotton dipped in it is sold in the bazars under the name of *pothi*, and used for the same purposes. He has also contributed many of the Sanskrit names, and some notes.

try of the Thinaï: imported into Barugaza and the marts of Dimurikê (64). Exported from Barugaza (49), and also from Barbarikon on the Indus (39). "It is called μέταξα by Procopius and all the later writers, as well as by the *Digest*, and was known without either name to Pliny"—Vincent.

10. Πινίκιος κόγχος—the Pearl-oyster. (Sans. *śukti*.) Fished for at the entrance to the Persian Gulf (35). Pearl (πίνικον) inferior to the Indian sort exported in great quantity from the marts of Apologos and Omana (36). A pearl fishery (Πινικῶν κολύμβησις) in the neighbourhood of Kolkhoi, in the kingdom of Pandiôn, near the island of Epio-dôros; the produce transported to Argalou, in the interior of the country, where muslin robes with pearl inwoven (μαργαρίτιδες συνδόνες) were fabricated (59). The reading of the MS. is συνδόνες, ἑβαραρείτιδες λεγόμεναι, for which Salmasius proposed to read μαργαρίτιδες. Müller suggests instead αἱ Ἀργαρίτιδες, as if the muslin bore the name of the place *Argarou* or *Argulou*, where it was made.

Pearl is also obtained in Taprobanê (61); is imported into the emporium on the Ganges called Gangê (63).

11. Πορφύρα—Purple. Of a common as well as of a superior quality, imported from Egypt into Mouza (24) and Kanê (28), and from the marts of Apologos and Omana into Barugaza (36).

12. Ῥινόκερος—Rhinoceros (Sans. *khaḍgaḍ*)—the horn or the teeth, and probably the skin. Exported from Adouli (16), and the marts of Azania (7). Bruce found the hunting of the rhinoceros still a trade in Abyssinia.

13. *Χελώνη*—Tortoise (Sans. *kachchhapa*) or tortoise-shell. Exported from Adouli (6) and Aualitês (7); a small quantity of the genuine and land tortoise, and a white sort with a smallshell, exported from Ptolemaïs (3); smallshells (*Χελωνάρια*) exported from Mossulon (10); a superior sort in great quantity from Opônê (13); the mountain tortoise from the island of Menouthias (15); a kind next in quality to the Indian from the marts of Azania (16, 17); the genuine, land, white, and mountain sort with shells of extraordinary size from the island of Dioskoridês (30, 31); a good quantity from the island of Serapis (33); the best kind in all the Erythræan—that of the Golden Khersonêsos (63), sent to Mouziris and Nelkunda, whence it is exported along with that of the islands off the coast of Dimurikê (probably the Laccadive islands) (56); tortoise is also procured in Taprobanê (61).

### III.—Plants and their products:—

1. *Αλόη*—the aloe (Sans. *agaru*). Exported from Kanê (28). The sort referred to is probably the bitter cathartic, not the aromatic sort supposed by some to be the sandalwood. It grows abundantly in Sokotra, and it was no doubt exported thence to Kanê. "It is remarkable," says Vincent, "that when the author of the *Periplus* arrives at Sokotra he says nothing of the aloe, and mentions only Indian cinnabar as a gum or resin distilling from a tree: but the confounding of cinnabar with dragon's-blood was a mistake of ancient date and a great absurdity" (II. p. 689).

2. *Ἀρώματα*—aromatics (*εὐωδία, θυμιάματα*.) Exported from Aualitês (7), Mossulon (10). Among

the spices of Tabai (12) are enumerated ἀσύβη καὶ ἄρωμα καὶ μάγλα, and similarly among the commodities of Opônê κασσία καὶ ἄρωμα καὶ μότω; and in these passages perhaps a particular kind of aromatic (cinnamon?) may by preëminence be called ἄρωμα. The occurrence, however, in two instances of such a familiar word as ἄρωμα between two outlandish words is suspicious, and this has led Müller to conjecture that the proper reading may be ἀρηβώ, which Salmasius, citing Galen, notes to be a kind of cassia.

3. Ασύβη—Asuphê, a kind of cassia. Exported from Tabai (12). "This term," says Vincent, "if not Oriental, is from the Greek ἀσύφηλος, signifying *cheap* or *ordinary*; but we do not find ἀσύφη used in this manner by other authors: it may be an Alexandrian corruption of the language, or it may be the abbreviation of a merchant in his invoice." (*Asafetida*, Sans. *hingu* or *bāhlika*, Mar, *hing*.)

4. Βδέλλα, (common form Βδέλλιον). Bdella, Bdellium, produced on the sea-coast of Gedrosia (37); exported from Barbarikon on the Indus (39); brought from the interior of India to Barugaza (48) for foreign export (49). Bdella is the gum of the *Balsamodendron Mukul*, a tree growing in Sind, Kāthiāwād, and the Dīsā district.<sup>5</sup> It is used both as an incense and as a cordial medicine. The bdellium of Scripture is a crystal, and has nothing in common with the bdellium of the *Periplūs* but its transparency. Conf. Dioskorid. i. 80; Plin. xii. 9; Galen, *Therapeut. ad Glauc.* II. p. 106; Lassen,

---

<sup>5</sup> Sans. *Guggula*, Guj. *Gūgal*, used as a tonic and for skin and urinary diseases.—B. I. P.



*Ind. Alt.* vol. I. p. 290; Vincent, vol. II. p. 690; Yule's *Marco Polo*, vol. II. p. 387. The etymology of the word is uncertain. Lassen suspects it to be Indian.

5. Γίζειρ—Gizeir, a kind of cassia exported from Tabai (12). This sort is noticed and described by Dioskoridés.

6. Δόκος—Beams of wood. Exported from Barugaza to the marts of Omana and Apologos (36). (P Blackwood.)

7. Δούκα—Douaka, a kind of cassia. Exported from Malao and Moundou (8, 9). It was probably that inferior species which in Dioskorid. i. 12, is called δάκαρ or δακάρ or δάρκα.

8. Ἐβένιναι φάλαγγες—Logs of ebony (*Diospyros melanoxylon*.) Exported from Barugaza to the marts of Omana and Apologos (36).

9. Ελαιον—Oil (*tila*). Exported from Egypt to Adouli (6); ἔλαιον σηςάμινον, oil of sēsamê, a product of Ariakê (41). Exported from Barugaza to the Barbarine markets (14), and to Moskha in Arabia (32).<sup>c</sup>

10. Ἰνδικόν μελαν—Indigo. (Sans. *nīli*, Guj. *gulī*.) Exported from Skythic Barbarikon (39). It appears pretty certain that the culture of the indigo plant and the preparation of the drug have been practised in India from a very remote epoch. It has been questioned, indeed, whether the Indicum mentioned by Pliny (xxxv. 6) was indigo, but, as it would seem, without any good reason. He states that it was brought from India, and that when diluted it produced an admirable mixture

<sup>c</sup> Mahuwā oil (Guj. *dolīuñ*, Sans. *mādhuka*) is much exported from Bharoch.—B. I. P.

of blue and purple colours. *Vide* McCulloch's *Commer. Dict.* s. v. *Indigo*. Cf. Salmas. in *Exerc.* Plin. p. 181. The dye was introduced into Rome only a little before Pliny's time.

11. *Κάγκαμον*—Kankamon. Exported from Malao and Moundou (8, 10). According to Dioskoridēs i. 23, it is the exudation of a wood, like myrrh, and used for fumigation. Cf. Plin. xii. 44. According to Scaliger it was gum-lac used as a dye. It is the "dekamalli" gum of the bazars.

12. *Κάρπασος*—Karpasus (Sans. *kārpāsa*; Heb. *karpas*.) *Gossypium arboreum*, fine muslin—a product of Ariakē (41). "How this word found its way into Italy, and became the Latin *carbasus*, fine linen, is surprising, when it is not found in the Greek language. The *Καρπάσιον λίνον* of Pausanias (*in Atticis*), of which the wick was formed for the lamp of Pallas, is asbestos, so called from Karpasos, a city of Crete—Salmas. Plin. *Exercit.* p. 178. Conf. Q. Curtius viii. 9:—'Carbaso Indi corpora usque ad pedes velant, eorumque rex lecticâ margaritis circumpendentibus recumbit distinctis auro et purpurâ carbasis quâ indutus est.'" Vincent II. 699.

13. *Κασσία* or *Κασία* (Sans. *kuta*, Heb. *kiddah* and *keziah*). Exported from Tabai (12); a coarse kind exported from Malao and Moundou (8, 9); a vast quantity exported from Mossulon and Opônê (10, 13).

"This spice," says Vincent, "is mentioned frequently in the *Periplus*, and with various additions, intended to specify the different sorts properties, or appearances of the commodity. It is a species of cinnamon, and manifestly the same as what we call cinnamon at this day; but dif-

ferent from that of the Greeks and Romans, which was not a bark, nor rolled up into pipes, like ours. Theirs was the tender shoot of the same plant, and of much higher value." "If our cinnamon," he adds, "is the ancient casia, our casia again is an inferior sort of cinnamon." Pliny (xii. 19) states that the cassia is of a larger size than the cinnamon, and has a thin rind rather than a bark, and that its value consists in being hollowed out. Dioskoridēs mentions cassia as a product of Arabia, but this is a mistake, Arabian cassia having been an import from India. Herodotos (iii.) had made the same mistake, saying that cassia grew in Arabia, but that cinnamon was brought thither by birds from the country where Bacchus was born (India). The cassia shrub is a sort of laurel. There are ten kinds of cassia specified in the *Periplus*.<sup>7</sup> Cf. Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* I. 279, 283; Salmas. *Plin. Exercit.* p. 1304; Galen, *de Antidotis*, bk. i.

14. *Κιννάβαρι Ἰνδικόν*—Dragon's-blood, *damu'l akhawein* of the Arabs, a gum distilled from *Pterocarpus Draco*, a leguminous tree<sup>8</sup> in the island of Dioskoridēs or Sokotra (30). Cinnabar, with which this was confounded, is the red sulphuret of mercury. Pliny (lib. xxix. c. 8) distinguishes it as 'Indian cinnabar.' Dragon's-blood is one of the concrete balsams, the produce of *Calamus Drace*, a species of rattan palm of the Eastern Archipelago, [of *Pterocarpus Draco*, allied to the Indian Kino tree or *Pt. marsupium* of

<sup>7</sup> May not some of these be the fragrant root of the *kush* grass, *Andropogon calamus-aromaticus*?—J. B.

<sup>8</sup> A similar gum is obtained from the *Pālāśa* (Guj. *kha-khara*), the *Dhāka* of Rājputāna.—B. I. P.

South India, and of *Dracæna Draco*, a liliaceous tree of Madeira and the Canary Islands].

15. *Kóros* (Sans. *kushîa*, Mar. *choka*, Guj. *katha* and *pushkara mûla*),—*Kostus*. Exported from Barbarikon, a mart on the Indus (39), and from Barugaza, which procured it from Kâbul through Proklais, &c. This was considered the best of aromatic roots, as nard or spikenard was the best of aromatic plants. Pliny (xii. 25) describes this root as hot to the taste and of consummate fragrance, noting that it was found at the head of Patalênê, where the Indus bifurcates to form the Delta, and that it was of two sorts) black and white, black being of an inferior quality. Lassen states that two kinds are found in India—one in Multân, and the other in Kâbul and Kâsmîr. "The *Costus* of the ancients is still exported from Western India, as well as from Calcutta to China, under the name of *Putchok*, to be burnt as an incense in Chinese temples. Its identity has been ascertained in our own days by Drs. Royle and Falconer as the root of a plant which they called *Aucklandia Costus*. . . . . Alexander Hamilton, at the beginning of last century, calls it *ligna dulcis* (sic), and speaks of it as an export from Sind, as did the author of the *Periplus* 1600 years earlier." Yule's *Marco Polo*, vol. II. p. 388.

16. *Kpókos*—Crocus, Saffron. (Sans. *kaśmîraja*, Guj. *kesir*, Pers. *zafrân*.) Exported from Egypt to Mouza (24) and to Kanê (28).

17. *Kúpepos*—Cyprus. Exported from Egypt to Mouza (24). It is an aromatic rush used in medicine (Pliny xxi. 18). Herodotos (iv. 71) describes

it as an aromatic plant used by the Skythians for embalming. *Κύπερος* is probably Ionic for *Κύπερος*—*Κύπερος Ἰνδικὸς* of Dioskoridēs, and *Cypria herba indica* of Pliny.—Perhaps Turmeric, *Curcuma longa*, or Galingal possibly.

18. *Λέντια*, (Lat. *līntea*)—Linen. Exported from Egypt to Adouli (6).

19. *Λιβανός* (Heb. *lebonah*, Arab. *luban*, Sans. *śrīvāsa*)—Frankincense. Peratic or Libyan frankincense exported from the Barbarine markets—Tabai (12), Mossulon (10), Malaô and Moundou, in small quantities (8, 9); produced in great abundance and of the best quality at Akannai (11); Arabian frankincense exported from Kanê (28). A magazine for frankincense on the Sakhalitic Gulf near Cape Suagros (30). Moskha, the port whence it was shipped for Kanê and India (32) and Indo-Skythia (39).

Regarding this important product Yule thus writes:—"The coast of Hadhramaut is the true and ancient *Χώρα λιβανοφόρος* or *λιβανωτοφόρος*, indicated or described under those names by Theophrastus, Ptolemy, Pliny, Pseudo-Arrian, and other classical writers, *i.e.* the country producing the fragrant gum-resin called by the Hebrews *Lebonah*, by the Arabs *Luban* and *Kundur*, by the Greeks *Libanos*, by the Romans *Thus*, in mediæval Latin *Olibanum* (probably the Arabic *al-luban*, but popularly interpreted as *oleum Libani*), and in English frankincense, *i.e.* I apprehend, 'genuine incense' or 'incense proper.'<sup>9</sup> It is still produced in this

<sup>9</sup> What the Brâhman call *kunduru* is the gum of a tree called the *Dhûpa-salai*; another sort of it, from Arabia, they call *Isésa*, and in Kâthiâvâd it is known as *Sesagundar*.—B. I. P.

region and exported from it, but the larger part of that which enters the markets of the world is exported from the roadsteads of the opposite Sumâlî coast. Frankincense when it first exudes is milky white; whence the name *white incense* by which Polo speaks of it, and the Arabic name *luban* apparently refers to milk. The elder Niebuhr, who travelled in Arabia, depreciated the Libanos of Arabia, representing it as greatly inferior to that brought from India, called Benzoin. He adds that the plant which produces it is not native, but originally from Abyssinia."—*Marco Polo*, vol. II. p. 443, &c.

20. Λύκιον—Lycium. Exported from Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (39), and from Barugaza (49). Lycium is a thorny plant, so called from being found in Lykia principally. Its juice was used for dying yellow, and a liquor drawn from it was used as a medicine (Celsus v. 26, 30, and vi. 7). It was held in great esteem by the ancients. Pliny (xxiv. 77) says that a superior kind of Lycium produced in India was made from a thorn called also *Pyxanthus* (box-thorn) *Chironia*. It is known in India as *Ruzot*, an extract of the *Berberis lycium* and *B. aristata*, both grown on the Himâlayas. Conf. the Λύκιον Ἰνδικόν of Dioskor. i. 133. ( ? Gamboge.)

21. Μάγλα—Magla—a kind of cassia mentioned only in the *Periplus*. Exported from Tabai (12).

22. Μάκειρ—Macer. Exported from Malaô and Moundou (8, 9). According to Pliny, Dioskoridês, and others, it is an Indian bark—perhaps a kind of cassia. The bark is red and the root large. The bark was used as a medicine in dysenteries. Pliny

xii. 8; Salmasius, 1302. (? The *Karachala* of the bâzârs, *Kutajavak*).

23. *Μαλάβαθρον* (Sans. *tamālapattra*, the leaf of the *Laurus Cassia*), Malabathrum, Betel. Obtained by the Thinaï from the Sesataï and exported to India<sup>10</sup> (65); conveyed down the Ganges to Gangê near its mouth (63); conveyed from the interior of India to Mouziris and Nelkunda for export (56). That Malabathrum was not only a masticatory, but also an unguent or perfume, may be inferred from Horace (*Odes*, II. vii. 89):—

. . . “coronatus nitentes  
Malabathro Syrio capillos”,

and from Pliny (xii. 59): “Dat et Malabathrum Syria, arborum folio convoluto, arido colore, ex quo exprimitur oleum ad unguenta: fertiliore ejusdem Egypto: laudatius tamen ex India venit.” From Ptolemy (VII. ii. 16) we learn that the best Malabathrum was produced in Kirrhadia—that is, Rangpur. Dioskoridês speaks of it as a masticatory, and was aware of the confusion caused by mistaking the nard for the betel.

24. *Μέλι τὸ καλάμινον, τὸ λεγόμενον σάκχαρ* (Sans. *śarkarā*, Prâkrit *sākara*, Arab. *sukkar*, Latin *saccharum*)—Honey from canes, called Sugar. Exported from Barugaza to the marts of Barbaria (14). The first Western writer who mentions this article was Theophrastos, who continued the labours of Aristotle in natural history. He called it a sort of honey extracted from reeds. Strabo states, on the authority of Nearkhos, that reeds in India yield honey without bees.

<sup>10</sup> More likely from Nepâl, where it is called *tejapât*.—B. I. P.

Ælian (*Hist. Anim.*) speaks of a kind of honey pressed from reeds which grew among the Prasii. Seneca (Epist. 84) speaks of sugar as a kind of honey found in India on the leaves of reeds, which had either been dropped on them from the sky as dew, or had exuded from the reeds themselves. This was a prevalent error in ancient times, *e.g.* Dioskoridês says that sugar is a sort of concreted honey found upon canes in India and Arabia Felix, and Pliny that it is collected from canes like a gum. He describes it as white and brittle between the teeth, of the size of a hazel-nut at most, and used in medicine only. So also Lucan, alluding to the Indians near the Ganges, says that they quaff sweet juices from tender reeds. Sugar, however, as is well known, must be extracted by art from the plant. It has been conjectured that the sugar described by Pliny and Dioskoridês was sugar candy obtained from China.

25. *Μελίλωτον*—Melilot, Honey-lotus. Exported from Egypt to Barugaza (49). Melilot is the Egyptian or Nymphæa Lotus, or Lily of the Nile, the stalk of which contained a sweet nutritive substance which was made into bread. So Vincent; but Melilot is a kind of clover, so called from the quantity of honey it contains. The nymphæa lotus, or what was called the Lily of the Nile, is not a true lotus, and contains no edible substance.

26. *Μοκρότον*. Exported from Moundou (9) and Mossulon (10). It is a sort of incense, mentioned only in the *Periplus*.

27. *Μόρω*—Motô—a sort of cassia exported from Tabai and Opônê (13).

28. *Μύρον*—Myrrh. (Sans. *bola*.) Exported from



Egypt to Barugaza as a present for the king (49). It is a gum or resin issuing from a thorn found in Arabia Felix, Abyssinia, &c., *vide σμύρνῃ inf.*

29. *Nápdos* (Sans. *nalada*, 'kaskas,' Heb. *nerd*) Nard, Spikenard.<sup>11</sup> Gangetic spikenard brought down the Ganges to Gangé, near its mouth (63), and forwarded thence to Mouziris and Nelkunda (56). Spikenard produced in the regions of the Upper Indus and in Indo-Skythia forwarded through Ozênê to Barugaza (48). Imported by the Egyptians from Barugaza and Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (49, 39).

The *Nardos* is a plant called (from its root being shaped like an ear of corn) *νάπδου σπάχvus*, also *ναπδόσπαχvus*, Latin *Spica nardi*, whence 'spikenard.' It belongs to the species *Valeriana*. "No Oriental aromatic," says Vincent, "has caused greater disputes among the critics or writers on natural history, and it is only within these few years that we have arrived at the true knowledge of this curious odour by means of the inquiries of Sir W. Jones and Dr. Roxburgh. Pliny describes the nard with its *spica*, mentioning also that both the leaves and the *spica* are of high value, and that the odour is the prime in all unguents; the price 100 denarii for a pound. But he afterwards visibly confounds it with the Malabathrum or Betel, as will appear from his usage of *Hudrosphærum*, *Mesosphærum*, and *Microsphærum*, terms peculiar to the Betel"—II. 743-4. See Sir W. Jones on the spikenard of the ancients in *As. Res.* vol. II. pp. 416 *et seq.*, and Roxburgh's

<sup>11</sup> Obtained from the root of *Nardostachys jatamansi*, a native of the eastern Himâlayas.—J. B.

additional remarks on the spikenard of the ancients, vol. IV. pp. 97 *et seq.*, and botanical observations on the spikenard, pp. 433. See also Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol. I. pp. 288 *et seq.*

30. *Νάυπλιος*—Nauplius. Exported in small quantity from the marts of Azania (17). The signification of the word is obscure, and the reading suspected. For *Ναυπλιος* Müller suggests *Ναππλιος*, the Indian cocoanut, which the Arabians call *Nargil* (Sansk. *nārikēla* or *nālikēra*, Guj. *nāliyér*, Hindi *nāliyar*). It favours this suggestion that cocoanut oil is a product of Zangibar, and that in four different passages of Kosmas Indikopleustēs nuts are called *ἀργέλλια*, which is either a corrupt reading for *ναργέλλια*, or Kosmas may not have known the name accurately enough.

31. *Ὀθόνιον*—Muslin. Sêric muslin sent from the Thînai to Barugaza and Dimurikê (64). Coarse cottons produced in great quantity in Ariakê, carried down from Ozênô to Barugaza (48); large supplies sent thither from Tagara also (51); Indian muslins exported from the markets of Dimurikê to Egypt (56). Muslins of every description, Seric and dyed of a mallow colour, exported from Barugaza to Egypt (49); Indian muslin taken to the island of Dioskoridês (31); wide Indian muslins called *μοναχὴ*, *mondakhê*, i. e. of the best and finest sort; and another sort called *σαγματογὴν*, *sagmatogênê*, i. e. coarse cotton unfit for spinning, and used for stuffing beds, cushions, &c., exported from Barugaza to the Barbarine markets (14), and to Arabia, whence it was exported to Adouli (6). The meanings given to *mondakhê* and *sagmatogênê* (for which other readings have

been suggested) are conjectural. Vincent defends the meaning assigned to *sagmatogénéē* by a quotation from a passage in Strabo citing Nearkhos:—"Fine muslins are made of cotton, but the Makedonians use cotton for flocks, and stuffing of couches."

32. *῾Οῖνος*—Wine. Laodikean and Italian wine exported in small quantity to Adouli (6); to Aualitēs (7), Malaô (8), Mouza (24), Kanê (28), Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (39); the same sorts, together with Arabian wine, to Barugaza (49); sent in small quantity to Mouziris and Nelkunda (56); the region inland from Oraia bears the vine (37), which is found also in the district of Mouza (24), whence wine is exported to the marts of Azania, not for sale, but to gain the good will of the natives (17). Wine is exported also from the marts of Apologos and Omana to Barugaza (36). By Arabian wine may perhaps be meant palm or toddy wine, a great article of commerce.

33. *῾Ομφακος Διοσπολιτικῆς χυλός*—the juice of the sour grape of Diospolis. Exported from Egypt to Aualitēs (7). This, says Vincent, was the *dipse* of the Orientals, and still used as a relish all over the East. *Dipse* is the rob of grapes in their unripe state, and a pleasant acid.—II. 751. This juice is called by Dioskoridēs (iv. 7) in one word *Ομφάκιον*, and also (v. 12) *῾Οῖνος ῾Ομφακίτης*. Cf. Plin. xii. 27.

34. *῾Ορυζα* (Sansk. *vr̥hi*)—Rice. Produced in Oraia and Ariakê (37, 41), exported from Barugaza to the Barbarine markets (14), and to the island of Dioskoridēs (31).

35. *Πέπερι* (Sansk. *pippalī*), long pepper—Pep-

per. Kottonarik pepper exported in large quantities from Mouziris and Nelkunda (56); long pepper from Barugaza (49). *Kottonara* was the name of the district, and *Kottonarikon* the name of the pepper for which the district was famous. Dr. Buchanan identifies Kottonara with Kadattannâdu, a district in the Calicut country celebrated for its pepper. Dr. Burnell, however, identifies it with Kolatta-Nâdu, the district about Tellicherry, which, he says, is the pepper district.

36. Πυρός—Wheat. Exported in small quantity from Egypt to Kanê (28), some grown in the district around Mouza (24).

37. Σάκχαρι—Sugar: see under Μέλι.

38. Σανδαράκη—Sandarakê (*chandrasa* of the bazars); a resin from the *Thuja articulata* or *Callitris quadrivalvis*, a small coniferous tree of North Africa; it is of a faint aromatic smell and is used as incense. Exported from Egypt to Barugaza (49); conveyed to Mouziris and Nelkunda (56).<sup>12</sup>

Sandarakê also is a red pigment—red sulphuret of arsenic, as orpiment is the yellow sulphuret. Cf. Plin. xxxv. 22, Hard. "Juba informs us that sandarace and ochre are found in an island of the Red Sea, Topazas, whence they are brought to us."

39. Σαντάλινα and σασάμινα ξύλα—Logs of Sandal and Sasame (*santalum album*). Exported from Barugaza to the marts of Omana and Apologos (36). Σαντάλινα is a correction of the MS. reading σαγάλινα proposed by Salmasius. Kosmas Indiko-

---

<sup>12</sup> It is brought now from the Eastern Archipelago.—B. I. P.

pleustes calls sandalwood τζαδάνα. For σασάμινα of the MS. Stuckius proposed σησάμινα—a futile emendation, since sesame is known only as a leguminous plant from which an oil is expressed, and not as a tree. But possibly Red Saunders wood (*Pterocarpus Santalinus*) may be meant.

40. Σησάμινον ἔλαιον. See Ἐλαιον.

41. Σινδόνες διαφορώταται αἱ Γαγγητικαί. The finest Bengal muslins exported from the Ganges (63); other muslins in Taprobanê (61); Μαργαρίτιδες (?), made at Argalou and thence exported (59); muslins of all sorts and mallow-tinted (μολόχιναι) sent from Ozênê to Barugaza (48), exported thence to Arabia for the supply of the market at Adouli (6).

42. Σίτος—Corn. Exported from Egypt to Adouli (7), Malaô (8); a little to Mouza (24), and to Kanê (28), and to Muziris and Nelkunda for ships' stores (56); exported from Dimurikê and Ariakê into the Barbarine markets (14), into Moskha (32) and the island of Dioskoridês (31); exported also from Mouza to the ports of Azania for presents (17).

43. Σύμνη—Myrrh (vide μύρον). Exported from Malaô, Moundou, Mossulon (8, 9, 10); from Aualitês a small quantity of the best quality (7); a choice sort that trickles in drops, called *Abeirminaiia* (ἐκλεκτή καὶ στακτὴ ἀβειρμιναιία), exported from Mouza (24). For Ἀβειρμιναιία of the MS. Müller suggests to read γαβειρμιναιία, inclining to think that two kinds of myrrh are indicated, the names of which have been erroneously combined into one, viz. the Gabiræan and Minæan, which are mentioned by Dioskoridês, Hippokratês, and Galen. There is a *Wadi Gabir* in Omân.

44. Σρύπαξ—Storax (Sans. *turuska, selarasa* of the bazars),—one of the balsams. Exported from Egypt to Kanê (28), Barbarikon on the Indus (39), Barugaza (40). Storax is the produce of the tree *Liquidambar orientale*, which grows in the south of Europe and the Levant.<sup>13</sup> The purest kind is storax in grains. Another kind is called *styrax calamita*, from being brought in masses wrapped up in the leaves of a certain reed. Another kind, that sold in shops, is semi-fluid.

45. Φοίνιξ—the Palm or Dates. Exported from the marts of Apologos and Omana to Barugaza (36, 37).

IV.—Metals and Metallic Articles :—

1. Ἀργυρὰ σκεύη, ἀργυρώματα—Vessels of silver. Exported from Egypt to Mossulon (10), to Barbarikon on the Indus (39). Silver plate chased or polished (τορνευτὰ or τετορνευμένα) sent as presents to the despot of Mouza (24), to Kanê for the king (28). Costly (βαρύτιμα) plate to Barugaza for the king (49). Plate made according to the Egyptian fashion to Adouli for the king (6).

2. Ἀρσενικόν—Arsenic (*somal*). Exported from Egypt to Mouziris and Nelkunda (56).

3. Δηνάριον—Denary. Exported in small quantity from Egypt to Adouli (6). Gold and silver denarii sent in small quantity to the marts of Barbaria (8, 13); exchanges with advantage for native money at Barugaza (49).

The *denary* was a Roman coin equal to about  $8\frac{1}{2}d.$ , and a little inferior in value to the Greek drachma.

4. Κάλτις—Kaltis. A gold coin (νομισμὰ) cur-

<sup>13</sup> In early times it was obtained chiefly from *Styrax officinalis*, a native of the same region.—J. B.

rent in the district of the Lower Ganges (63); Benfey thinks the word is connected with the Sanskrit *kalita*, i.e. *numeratum*.

5. *Κασσίτερος* (Sans. *baṅga*, *kathīla*)—Tin. Exported from Egypt to Aualitēs (7), Malaō (8) Kanē (28), Barugaza (49), Mouziris and Nelkunda (56). India produced this metal, but not in those parts to which the Egyptian trade carried it.

6. *Μόλυβδος*—Lead (Sansk. *nāga*, Guj. *sīsuñ*). Exported from Egypt to Barugaza, Muziris, and Nelkunda (49, 56).

7. *Ὀρείχαλκος*—Orichalcum (Sans. *tripus*, Prak. *pītala*)—Brass. Used for ornaments and cut into small pieces by way of coin. Exported from Egypt to Adouli (6).

The word means 'mountain copper.' Ramusio calls it white copper from which the gold and silver have not been well separated in extracting it from the ore. Gold, it may be remarked, does not occur as an export from any of the African marts, throughout the *Periplus*.

8. *Σίδηρος, σιδηρὰ σκεύη*—Iron, iron utensils. Exported from Egypt to Malaō, Moundou, Tabai, Opônē (8, 9, 12, 13). Iron spears, swords and adzes exported to Adouli (6). Indian iron and sword-blades (*στόμαμα*) exported to Adouli from Arabia (Ariakē?). Spears (*λόγχαι*) manufactured at Mouza, hatchets (*πελύκια*), swords (*μάχαιραι*), awls (*ὀπίετια*) exported from Mouza to Azania (17).

On the Indian sword see Ktésias, p. 80, 4. The Arabian poets celebrate swords made of Indian steel. Cf. Plin. xxxiv. 41:—"Ex omnibus autem generibus palma Serico ferro est." This iron, as

has already been stated, was sent to India along with skins and cloth. Cf. also Edrisi, vol. I. p. 65, ed. Joubert. Indian iron is mentioned in the Pandects as an article of commerce.

9. Στίμιμ—Stibium (Sans. *sauvīrānjana*, Prāk. *surma*). Exported from Egypt to Barugaza (49), to Mouziris and Nelkunda (56).

Stibium is a sulphuret of antimony, a dark pigment, called *kohl*, much used in the East for dyeing the eyelids.

10. Χαλκός—Copper (Sans. *tāmra*) or Brass. Exported from Egypt to Kanê (28), to Barugaza (49), Mouziris and Nelkunda (56). Vessels made thereof (Χαλκουργήματα) sent to Mouza as presents to the despot (24). Drinking-vessels (ποτήρια) exported to the marts of Barbaria (8, 13). Big and round drinking-cups to Adouli (6). A few (μελίεφθα ὀλίγα) to Malaô (8); μελίεφθα χαλκῶ for cooking with, and being cut into bracelets and anklets for women to Adouli (6).

Regarding μελίεφθα Vincent says: "No usage of the word occurs elsewhere; but metals were prepared with several materials to give them colour, or to make them tractable, or malleable. Thus χολόβαφα in Hesychius was brass prepared with ox's gall to give it the colour of gold, and used, like our tinsel ornaments or foil, for stage dresses and decorations. Thus common brass was neither ductile nor malleable, but the Cyprian brass was both. And thus perhaps brass, μελίεφθα was formed with some preparation of honey." Müller cannot accept this view. "It is evident," he says, "that the reference is to ductile copper from which, as Pliny says, all impurity has been



carefully removed by smelting, so that pots, bracelets, and articles of that sort could be fabricated from it. One might therefore think that the reading should be *περίεφθα* or *πυρίεφθα*, but in such a case the writer would have said *περίεφθον χαλκόν*. In vulgar speech *μελίεφθα* is used as a substantive noun, and I am therefore almost persuaded that, just as molten copper, *ὁ χαλκὸς ὁ χυτὸς*, *cuprum caldarium*, was called *τρόχιος*, from the likeness in shape of its round masses to hoops, so *laminæ* of ductile copper (*plaques de cuivre*) might have been called *μελίεφθα*, because shaped like thin honey-cakes, *πέμματα μελίεφθα*."

11. *Χρυσός*—Gold. Exported from the marts of Apologos and Omana to Barugaza (36). Gold plate—*χρυσώματα*—exported from Egypt to Mouza for the despot (24), and to Adouli for the king (6).

#### V. Stones:—

1. *Λιθία διαφανής*—Gems (carbuncles?) found in Taprobané (63); exported in every variety from Mouziris and Nelkunda (56).

2. *Αδάμας*—Diamonds. (Sans. *vajra*, *pīraka*). Exported from Mouziris and Nelkunda (56).

3. *Καλλεανός λίθος*—Gold-stone, yellow crystal, chrysolith? Exported from Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (39).

It is not a settled point what stone is meant. Lassen says that the Sanskrit word *kalyāṇa* means *gold*, and would therefore identify it with the chrysolith or gold-stone. If this view be correct, the reading of the MS. need not be altered into *καλλαῖνός*, as Salmasius, whom the editors of the *Periplus* generally follow, enjoins. In support of the alteration Salmasius adduces Pliny, xxxvii.

56:—"Callais sapphirum imitatur, candidior et litoroso mari similis. Callainas vocant e turbido Callaino", and other passages. Schwanbeck, however, maintaining the correctness of the MS. reading, says that the Sanskrit word *kalyāṇa* generally signifies *money*, but in a more general sense *anything beautiful*, and might therefore have been applied to this gem. *Kalyāṇa*, he adds, would appear in Greek as *καλλιανός* or *καλλεανός* rather than *καλλαῖνός*. In like manner *kalyāṇī* of the Indians appears in our author not as *καλλάῖνα*, but, as it ought to be, *καλλίενα*.

4. *Λύγδος*—Alabaster. Exported from Mouza (24). Salmasius says that an imitation of this alabaster was formed of Parian marble, but that the best and original *lygdus* was brought from Arabia, that is, Mouza, as noted in the *Periplus*. Cf. Pliny (xxxvi. 8):—"Lygdinos in Tauro reportos . . . antea ex Arabia tantum advehi solitos candoris eximii."

5. *ὄνυχιν λίθια*—Onyx (*akika*—agate). Sent in vast quantities (*πλείστη*) from Ozênê and Paithana to Barugaza (48, 51), and thence exported to Egypt (49). Regarding the onyx mines of Gujarât vide Ritter, vol. VI. p. 603.

6. *Μουρρίνη*, sup. *λίθια*—Fluor-spath. Sent from Ozênê to Barugaza, and exported to Egypt (49). Porcelain made at Diospolis (*μουρρίνη λίθια ἡ γενομένη ἐν Διοσπόλει*) exported from Egypt to Adouli (6).

The reading of the MS. is *μορρίνης*. By this is to be understood *vitrum murrhinum*, a sort of china or porcelain made in imitation of cups or vases of *murrha*, a precious fossil-stone resembling,

if not identical with, *fluor-spath*, such as is found in Derbyshire. Vessels of this stone were exported from India, and also, as we learn from Pliny, from Karmania, to the Roman market, where they fetched extravagant prices.<sup>14</sup> The "cups baked in Parthian fires" (*pocula Parthis focis cocta*) mentioned by Propertius (IV. v. 26) must be referred to the former class. The whole subject is one which has much exercised the pens of the learned. "Six hundred writers," says Müller, "emulously applying themselves to explain what had the best claim to be considered the *murrha* of the ancients, have advanced the most conflicting opinions. Now it is pretty well settled that the murrhine vases were made of that stone which is called in German *flussspath* (*spato-fluore*)". He then refers to the following as the principal authorities on the subject:—Pliny—xxxiii. 7 *et seq.*; xxxiii. *proem.* Suetonius—*Oct.* c. 71; Seneca—*Epist.* 123; Martial—iv. 86; xiv. 43; *Digest*—xxxiii. 10, 3; xxxiv. 2. 19; Rozière—*Mémoire sur les Vases murrhins*, &c.; in *Description de l'Égypt*, vol. VI. pp. 277 *et seq.*; Corsi—*Delle Pietre antiche*, p. 106; Thiersch—*Ueber die Vasa Murrhina der Alten*, in *Abhandl. d. Münch. Akad.* 1835, vol. I. pp. 443-509; A learned Englishman in the *Classical Journal* for 1810, p. 472; Witzsch in Pauly's *Real Encycl.* vol. V. p. 253; See also Vincent, vol. II. pp. 723-7.

7. Ὀψιανὸς λίθος—the Opsian or Obsidian stone, found in the Bay of Hanfelah (5). Pliny says,—  
"The opsians or obsidians are also reckoned as a

<sup>14</sup> Nero gave for one 300 talents = £58,125. They were first seen at Rome in the triumphal procession of Pompey. [May these not have been of emerald, or even ruby?—J. B.]

sort of glass bearing the likeness of the stone which Obsius (or Obsidius) found in Ethiopia, of a very black colour, sometimes even translucent, hazier than ordinary glass to look through, and when used for mirrors on the walls reflecting but shadows instead of distinct images." (Bk. xxxvi. 37). The only Obsius mentioned in history is a M. Obsius who had been Prætor, a friend of Germanicus, referred to by Tacitus (*Ann.* IV. 68, 71). He had perhaps been for a time prefect of Egypt, and had coasted the shore of Ethiopia at the time when Germanicus traversed Egypt till he came to the confines of Ethiopia. Perhaps, however, the name of the substance is of Greek origin—*ὀψιανός*, from its reflecting power.

8. *Σάπφειρος*—the Sapphire. Exported from Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (39). "The ancients distinguished two sorts of dark blue or purple, one of which was spotted with gold. Pliny says it is never pellucid, which seems to make it a different stone from what is now called sapphire."—Vincent (vol. II. p. 757), who adds in a note, "Dr. Burgess has specimens of both sorts, the one with gold spots like lapis lazuli, and not transparent."<sup>15</sup>

9. *Ύακινθος*—Hyacinth or Jacinth. Exported from Mouziris and Nelkunda (56). According to Salmasius this is the Ruby. In Solinus xxx. it would seem to be the Amethyst (Sansk. *pushkarakāja*.)

10. *Ἰαλός ἁργή*—Glass of a coarse kind. Exported from Egypt to Barugaza (49), to Mouziris and Nelkunda (56). Vessels of glass (*ὡὰλὰ σκεύη*) ex-

---

<sup>15</sup> Possibly the Lapis Lazuli is meant.—J. B.

ported from Egypt to Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (39). Crystal of many sorts (λιθίας ὑαλῆς πλείστα γένη) exported from Egypt to Adouli, Aualitès, Mossulon (6, 7, 10); from Mouza to Azania (17).

11. Χρυσόλιθος—Chrysolite. Exported from Egypt to Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (39), to Barugaza (43), to Mouziris and Nelkunda (56). Some take this to be the topaz (Hind. *pīrojā*).

#### VI. Wearing Apparel :—

1. Ἰμάτια ἄγναφα—Cloths undressed. Manufactured in Egypt and thence exported to Adouli (6). These were disposed of to the tribes of Barbaria—the Troglodyte shepherds of Upper Egypt, Nubia and Ethiopia.

2. Ἰμάτια βαρβαρικὰ σύμμικτα γεγραμμένα—Cloths for the Barbarine markets, dressed and dyed of various colours. Exported to Malaô and Aualitès (8, 7).

3. Ἰματισμὸς Ἀραβικὸς—Cloth or coating for the Arabian markets. Exported from Egypt (24). Different kinds are enumerated :—Χειριδωτὸς, with sleeves reaching to the wrist; Ὅτε ἀπλοῦς καὶ ὁ κοινὸς, with single texture and of the common sort; σκοτουλάτος, wrought with figures, checkered; the word is a transliteration of the Latin *scutulatus*, from *scutum*, the checks being lozenge-shaped, like a shield: see Juvenal, Sat. ii. 79; διάχρυσος, shot with gold; πολυτελὴς, a kind of great price sent to the despot of Mouza; Κοινὸς καὶ ἀπλοῦς καὶ ὁ νόθος, cloth of a common sort, and cloth of simple texture, and cloth in imitation of a better commodity, sent to Kanê (28); Διάφορος ἀπλοῦς, of superior quality and single texture, for the king (28); Ἀπλοῦς, of single texture, in great quantity, and

*νόθος*, an inferior sort imitating a better, in small quantity, sent to Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (39), *ἁπλοῦς καὶ νόθος παντοῖος*, and for the king *ἁπλοῦς πολυτελής*, sent to Barugaza (49); *ἱματισμὸς οὐ πολὺς*—cloth in small quantity sent to Muziris and Nelkunda (56); *ἐντόπιος*, of native manufacture, exported from the marts of Apologos and Omana to Barugaza (36).

4. *Ἀβόλλαι*—Riding or watch cloaks. Exported from Egypt to Mouza (34), to Kanê (28). This word is a transliteration of the Latin *Abolla*. It is supposed, however, to be derived from Greek: *ἀμβολλη*, i. e. *ἀμφιβολή*. It was a woollen cloak of close texture—often mentioned in the Roman writers: e.g. Juven. *Sat.* iii. 115 and iv. 76; Sueton. *Calig.* c. 35. Where the word occurs in sec. 6 the reading of the MS. is *ἄβολοι*, which Müller has corrected to *Ἀβόλλαι*, though Salmasius had defended the original reading.

5. *Δικρόσσια* (Lat. *Mantilia utrinque fimbriata*)—Cloths with a double fringe. Exported from Egypt to Adouli (6). This word occurs only in the *Periplus*. The simple *Κρόσσιον*, however, is met with in Herodian, *Epim.* p. 72. An adjective *δίκροστος* is found in Pollux vii. 72. "We cannot err much," says Vincent, "in rendering the *δικρόσσια* of the *Periplus* either *cloth fringed*, with Salmasius, or *striped*, with Apollonius. Meursius says *λευρία ἄκροσσια* are *plain linens not striped*."

6. *Ζώναι πολύμυτοι πηχναῖοι*—Flowered or embroidered girdles, a cubit broad. Exported from Egypt to Barugaza (49). *Σκιωταί*—girdles (*kācha*) shaded of different colours, exported to Mouza (24). This word occurs only in the *Periplus*.

7. *Καυνάκαι*—Garments of frieze. Exported from Arabia to Adouli (6); a pure sort—*ἀπλοί*—exported to the same mart from Egypt (6). In the latter of these two passages the MS. reading is *γαννάκαι*. Both forms are in use: conf. Latin *gaunace*—Varro, *de L. L.* 4, 35. It means also a fur garment or blanket—*vestis stragula*.

8. *Λώδικες*—Quilts or coverlids. Exported in small quantity from Egypt to Mouza (24) and Kanê (28).

9. *Περιζώματα*—Sashes, girdles, or aprons. Exported from Barugaza to Adouli (6), and into Barbaria (14).

10. *Πολύμιτα*—Stuffs in which several threads were taken for the woof in order to weave flowers or other objects: Latin *polymita* and *plumatica*. Exported from Egypt to Barbarikon in Indo-Skythia (39), to Mouziris and Nelkunda (56).

11. *Σάγοι Ἀρσινοητικοὶ γεγναμμένοι καὶ βεβαμμένοι*—Coarse cloaks made at Arsinoê, dressed and dyed. Exported from Egypt to Barbaria (8, 13).

12. *Στολαὶ Ἀρσινοητικαὶ*—Women's robes made at Arsinoê. Exported from Egypt to Adouli (6).

13. *Χιτῶνες*—Tunics. Exported from Egypt to Malaô, Moundou, Mossulon (8, 9, 10).

VII. In addition to the above, works of art are mentioned.

*Ἀνδριάντες*—Images, sent as presents to Khari-baël (48). Cf. Strabo (p. 714), who among the articles sent to Arabia enumerates *τόρευμα*, *γραφὴν*, *πλάσμα*, pieces of sculpture, painting, statues.

*Μουσικά*—Instruments of music, for presents to the king of Ariakê (49).

ANONYMI [ARRIANI UT FERTUR] ·  
PERIPLUS MARIS ERYTHRÆI.

1. The first of the important roadsteads established on the Red Sea, and the first also of the great trading marts upon its coast, is the port of *Myos-hormos* in Egypt. Beyond it

---

*Commentary.*

(1) *Myos Hormos*.—Its situation is determined by the cluster of islands now called *Jifâtîn* [lat.  $27^{\circ} 12' N.$ , long.  $33^{\circ} 55' E.$ ] of which the three largest lie opposite an indenture of the coast of Egypt on the curve of which its harbour was situated [near *Ras Abu Somer*, a little north of *Safâtjah Island*]. It was founded by *Ptolemy Philadelphos* B. C. 274, who selected it as the principal port of the Egyptian trade with India in preference to *Arsinoe*,<sup>10</sup> N. N. E. of *Suez*, on account of the difficulty and tediousness of the navigation down the *Heroöpolite Gulf*. The vessels bound for Africa and the south of Arabia left its harbour about the time of the autumnal equinox, when the North West wind which then prevailed carried them quickly down the Gulf. Those bound for the Malabar Coast or Ceylon left in July, and if they cleared the Red Sea before the 1st of

---

<sup>10</sup> There was another *Arsinoe* between *Ras Dh'ib* and *Ras Shukhair*, lat.  $28^{\circ} 3' N.$  The few geographical indications added by Mr. Burgess to these comments as they passed through the press are enclosed in brackets. [ ]



at a distance of 1800 stadia is Berenikê, which is to your right if you approach it by sea.

September, they had the monsoon to assist their passage across the ocean. Myos Hormos was distant from Koptos [lat. 26° N.], the station on the Nile through which it communicated with Alexandria, a journey of seven or eight days along a road opened through the desert by Philadelphos. The name Myos Hormos is of Greek origin, and may signify either the Harbour of the Mouse, or, more probably, of the Mussel, since the pearl mussel abounded in its neighbourhood. Agatharkhidês calls it Aphroditês Hormos, and Pliny Veneris Portus. [Veneris Portus however was probably at Sherm Sheikh, lat. 24° 36' N. Off the coast is Wade Jemâl Island, lat. 24° 39' N., long. 35° 8' E., called Iambe by Pliny, and perhaps the Aphroditês Island of Ptolemy IV. v. 77.] Referring to this name Vincent says: "Here if the reader will advert to Aphroditê, the Greek title of Venus, as springing from the foam of the ocean, it will immediately appear that the Greeks were translating here, for the native term to this day is *Suffunge-el-Bahri*, 'sponge of the sea'; and the vulgar error of the sponge being the foam of the sea, will immediately account for Aphroditê."

The rival of Myos-Hormos was Berenikê, a city built by Ptolemy Philadelphos, who so named it in honour of his mother, who was the daughter of Ptolemy Lagos and Antigônê. It was in the same parallel with Syênê and therefore not far from the Tropic [lat. 23° 55' N.]. It stood nearly

These roadsteads are both situate at the furthest end of Egypt, and are bays of the Red Sea.

2. The country which adjoins them on the right below Berenikê is *Barbaria*. Here the sea-board is peopled by the *Ikhthyophagoi*, who live in scattered huts built in the narrow gorges of the hills, and further inland are the

---

at the bottom of *Foul Bay* (ἐν βάθει τοῦ Ἀκαθάπτου Κόλπου), so called from the coast being foul with shoals and breakers, and not from the impurity of its water, as its Latin name, *Sinus Immundus*, would lead us to suppose. Its ruins are still perceptible even to the arrangement of the streets, and in the centre is a small Egyptian temple adorned with hieroglyphics and bas-reliefs of Greek workmanship. Opposite to the town is a very fine natural harbour, the entrance of which has been deep enough for small vessels, though the bar is now impassable at low water. Its prosperity under the Ptolemies and afterwards under the Romans was owing to its safe anchorage and its being, like *Myos-Hormos*, the terminus of a great road from *Koptos* along which the traffic of Alexandria with Ethiopia, Arabia, and India passed to and fro. Its distance from *Koptos* was 258 Roman miles or 11 days' journey. The distance between *Myos-Hormos* and *Berenikê* is given in the *Periplus* at 225 miles, but this is considerably above the mark. The difficulty of the navigation may probably have made the distance seem greater than it was in reality.

(2) Adjoining *Berenikê* was *Barbaria*

Berbers, and beyond them the Agriophagoi and Moskhophagoi, tribes under regular government by kings. Beyond these again, and still further inland towards the west [is situated the metropolis called Meroê].

3. Below the Moskhophagoi, near the sea, lies a little trading town distant from Bere-

(ἡ Βαρβαρικὴ χώρα)—the land about Ras Abū Fatima [lat. 22° 26' N.—Ptol. IV. vii. 28]. The reading of the MS. is ἡ Τισσηβαρικὴ which Müller rejects because the name nowhere occurs in any work, and because if Barbaria is not mentioned here, our author could not afterwards (Section 5) say ἡ ἄλλη Βαρβαρία. The Agriophagoi who lived in the interior are mentioned by Pliny (vi. 35), who says that they lived principally on the flesh of panthers and lions. Vincent writes as if instead of *Αγριοφάγων* the reading should be *Ακριδοφάγων* locust-eaters, who are mentioned by Agatharkhidês in his *De Mari Erythraeo*, Section 58. Another inland tribe is mentioned in connection with them—the Moskhophagoi, who may be identified with the Rizophagoi or Spermatophagoi of the same writer, who were so named because they lived on roots or the tender suckers and buds of trees, called in Greek *μόσχοι*. This being a term applied also to the young of animals, Vincent was led to think that this tribe fed on the brinde or flesh cut out of the living animal as described by Bruce.

(3) To the south of the Moskhophagoi lies Ptolemaïs Thêrôn, or, as it is called by

nîkê about 4000 stadia, called Ptolemaïs Thêrôn, from which, in the days of the Ptolemies, the hunters employed by them used to go up into the interior to catch elephants. In this mart is procured the true (or marine) tortoise-shell, and the land kind also, which, however, is scarce, of a white colour, and smaller size. A little ivory is also sometimes obtainable, resembling that of Adouli. This place has no port, and is approachable only by boats.

---

Pliny, Ptolemaïs Epitheras. [On Er-rih island, lat.  $18^{\circ} 9' N.$ , long  $38^{\circ} 27' E.$ , are the ruins of an ancient town—probably Ptolemaïs Thêrôn,—Müller however places Suche here.—Ptol. I. viii. 1.; IV. vii. 7; VIII. xvi. 10]. It was originally an Ethiopian village, but was extended and fortified by Ptolemy Philadelphos, who made it the depôt of the elephant trade, for which its situation on the skirts of the great Nubian forest, where these animals abounded, rendered it peculiarly suitable. The Egyptians before this had imported their elephants from Asia, but as the supply was precarious, and the cost of importation very great, Philadelphos made the most tempting offers to the Ethiopian elephant-hunters (Elephantophagoi) to induce them to abstain from eating the animal, or to reserve at least a portion of them for the royal stables. They rejected however all his solicitations, declaring that even for all Egypt they would not forego the luxury of their repast. The king resolved thereupon to procure his supplies by employing hunters of his own.

4. Leaving Ptolemaïs Thêrôn we are conducted, at the distance of about 3000 stadia, to Adouli, a regular and established port of trade situated on a deep bay the direction of which is

(4) Beyond Ptolemaïs Thêrôn occur Adoulê, at a distance, according to the *Periplus*, of 3000 stadia—a somewhat excessive estimate. The place is called also Adouleï and more commonly Adoulis by ancient writers (Ptol. IV. vii. 8; VIII. xvi. 11). It is represented by the modern Thulla or Zula [pronounced Azule,—lat.  $15^{\circ} 12' - 15^{\circ} 15' N.$ , long.  $39^{\circ} 36' E.$ ].—To the West of this, according to Lord Valentia and Mr. Salt, there are to be found the remains of an ancient city. It was situated on the Adoulikos Kolpos (Ptol. I. xv. 11.; IV. vii. 8), now called Annesley Bay, the best entrance into Abyssinia. It was erroneously placed by D'Anville at Dokhnau or Harkiko, close to Musawwâ [lat.  $15^{\circ} 35' N.$ ]. There is much probability in the supposition that it was founded by a party of those Egyptians who, as we learn from Herodotos (II. 30), to the number of 240,000 fled from their country in the days of Psammêtikhos (B. C. 671—617) and went to as great a distance beyond Meroë, the capital of Ethiopia, as Meroë is beyond Elephantinê. This is the account which Pliny (VI. 3-4) gives of its foundation, adding that it was the greatest emporium of the Troglodytes, and distant from Ptolemaïs a five days' voyage, which by the ordinary reckoning is 2,500 stadia. It was an emporium for rhinoceros' hides, ivory and tortoise-shell. It had not only a large sea-borne traffic, but was also a

due south. Facing this, at a distance seaward of about 200 stadia from the inmost recess of the bay, lies an island called Oreinê (or 'the mountainous'), which runs on either side parallel

caravan station for the traffic of the interior of Africa. Under the Romans it was the haven of Auxumê (Ptol. IV. vii. 25,—written also Auxumis, Axumis), now Axum, the capital of the kingdom of Tigre in Abyssinia. Auxumê was the chief centre of the trade with the interior of Africa in gold-dust, ivory, leather, hides and aromatics. It was rising to great prosperity and power about the time the *Periplus* was written, which is the earliest work extant in which it is mentioned. It was probably founded by the Egyptian exiles already referred to. Its remaining monuments are perfectly Egyptian and not pastoral, Troglodytik, Greek, or Arabian in their character. Its name at the same time retains traces of the term Asmak, by which, as we learn from Herodotos, those exiles were designated, and Heeren considers it to have been one of the numerous priest-colonies which were sent out from Meroë.

At Adouli was a celebrated monument, a throne of white marble with a slab of basanite stone behind it, both covered with Greek characters, which in the sixth century of our era were copied by Kosmas Indikopleustês. The passage in Kosmos relating to this begins thus: "Adulê is a city of Ethiopia and the port of communication with Axîômis, and the whole nation of which that city is the capital.

with the mainland. Ships, that come to trade with Adouli, now-a-days anchor here, to avoid being attacked from the shore; for in former times when they used to anchor at the very head of the bay, beside an island called Diodôros, which was so close to land that the sea was fordable, the neighbouring barbarians, taking advantage of this, would run across to attack the ships at their moorings. At the distance of 20 stadia from the sea, opposite Oreinê, is the village of Adouli, which is not of any great size, and inland from this a three

---

In this port we carry on our trade from Alexandria and the Elanitik Gulf. The town itself is about a mile from the shore, and as you enter it on the Western side which leads from Axiômis, there is still remaining a chair or throne which appertained to one of the Ptolemys who had subjected this country to his authority." The first portion of the inscription records that Ptolemy Euergetês (247-222 B.C.) received from the Troglodyte Arabs and Ethiopians certain elephants which his father, the second king of the Makedonian dynasty, and himself had taken in hunting in the region of Adulê and trained to war in their own kingdom. The second portion of the inscription commemorates the conquests of an anonymous Ethiopian king in Arabia and Ethiopia as far as the frontier of Egypt. Adouli, it is known for certain, received its name from a tribe so designated which formed a part of the Danakil shepherds who are still found in the neigh-

days' journey is a city, Kolöê, the first market where ivory can be procured. From Kolöê it takes a journey of five days to reach the metropolis of the people called the Auxumitai, whereto is brought, through the province called Kyêneion, all the ivory obtained on the other side of the Nile, before it is sent on to Adouli. The whole mass, I may say, of the elephants and rhinoceroses which are killed *to supply the trade* frequent the uplands of the interior, though at rare times they are seen near the coast, even in the neighbourhood of Adouli. Besides the islands already mentioned, a cluster consist-

---

bourhood of Annesley Bay, in the island of Diset [lat. 15° 28', long. 39° 45', the Diodôros perhaps of the *Periplus*] opposite which is the town or station of Masawâ (anc. Saba) [lat. 15° 37' N., long. 39° 28' E.], and also in the archipelago of Dhalak, called in the *Periplus*, the islands of Alalaïou. The merchants of Egypt, we learn from the work, first traded at Masawwâ but afterwards removed to Oreine for security. This is an islet in the south of the Bay of Masawwâ, lying 20 miles from the coast; it is a rock as its name imports, and is of considerable elevation.

Aduli being the best entrance into Abyssinia, came prominently into notice during the late Abyssinian war. Beke thus speaks of it, "In our recent visit to Abyssinia I saw quite enough to confirm the opinion I have so long entertained, that when the ancient Greeks founded Adule or Adulis at the mouth of the river Hadâs, now only



ing of many small ones lies out in the sea to the right of this port. They bear the name of Alalaion, and yield the tortoises with which the Ikhtyophagoi supply the market.

5. Below Adouli, about 800 stadia, occurs another very deep bay, at the entrance of which on the right are vast accumulations of sand, wherein is found deeply embedded the Opsian stone, which is not obtainable anywhere else. The king of all this country, from the Moskhophagoi to the other end of Barbaria, is Zôskalês, a man at once of penurious

---

a river bed except during the rains, though a short way above there is rain all the year round, they knew that they possessed one of the keys of Abyssinia."

(5) At a distance of about 100 miles beyond Adouli the coast is indented by another bay now known as Hanfelah bay [near Râs Hanfelah in lat.  $14^{\circ} 44'$ , long.  $40^{\circ} 49' E.$ ] about 100 miles from Annesley Bay and opposite an island called Daramsas or Hanfelah. It has wells of good water and a small lake of fresh water after the rains; the coast is inhabited by the Dummoeta, a tribe of the Danakil]. This is the locality where, and where only, the Opsian or Obsidian stone was to be found. Pliny calls it an unknown bay, because traders making for the ports of Arabia passed it by without deviating from their course to enter it. He was aware, as well as our author, that it contained the Opsian stone, of which he gives an account, already produced in the introduction.

habits and of a grasping disposition, but otherwise honourable in his dealings and instructed in the Greek language.

6. The articles which these places import are the following :—

ἱμάτια βαρβαρικὰ, ἀγναφὰ τὰ ἐν Ἀιγύπτῳ γινόμενα  
—Cloth undressed, of Egyptian manufacture, for the Barbarian market.

Στολαὶ Ἀρσινοητικαὶ—Robes manufactured at Arsinoë.

Ἀβόλλαι νόθοι χρωμάτιναι—Cloaks, made of a poor cloth imitating a better quality, and dyed.

Λέντια—Linens.

Δικρόσσια—Striped cloths and fringed. Mantles with a double fringe.

Λιθίας ὑαλῆς πλείονα γίνῃ καὶ ἄλλης μορρίνης, τῆς γινόμενης ἐν Διοσπόλει—Many sorts of glass or crystal, and of that other transparent stone called Myrrhina, made at Diospolis.

Ὀρείχαλκος—Yellow copper, for ornaments and cut into pieces to pass for money.

Μελίεφθα χαλκᾶ—Copper fused with honey : for

(6, 7) From this bay the coast of the gulf, according to our author, has a more easterly direction to the Straits, the distance to which from Adouli is stated at 4,000 stadia, an estimate much too liberal. In all this extent of coast the *Periplus* mentions only the bay of the Opsian-stones and conducts us at once from thence to Anulites at the straits. Strabo however, and Juba, and Pliny, and Ptolemy mention several places in this tract, such as Arsinoë, Bere-

culinary vessels and cutting into bracelets and anklets worn by certain classes of women.

Σίδηρος—Iron. Consumed in making spear-heads for hunting the elephant and other animals and in making weapons of war.

Πελύκια—Hatchets.

Σκέπαρνα—Adzes.

Μάχαιραι—Swords.

Ποτήρια χαλκᾷ στρογγύλα μεγάλα—Drinking vessels of brass, large and round.

Δηνάριον ὀλίγον—A small quantity of denarii: for the use of merchants resident in the country.

Οἶνος Λαοδικηνὸς καὶ Ἰταλικὸς οὐ πολὺς—Wine, Laodikean, i.e. Syrian, from Laodike, (now Latakia) and Italian, but not much.

Ἐλαιον οὐ πολὺ—Oil, but not much.

Ἀργυρώματα καὶ χρυσώματα τοπικῶ ῥυθμῶ κατεσκευασμένοι—Gold and silver plate made according to the fashion of the country for the king.

Ἀβόλλαι—Cloaks for riding or for the camp.

Καυνάκαι ἀπλοῖ—Dresses simply made of skins with the hair or fur on. These two articles of dress are not of much value.

nîkê, Epideirês, the Grove of Eumenês, the Chase of Puthangelos, the Territory of the Elephantophagoi, &c. The straits are called by Ptolemy Deirê or Dêrê (i. e. the neck), a word which from its resemblance in sound to the Latin *Dirae* has sometimes been explained to mean "the terrible." (I. xv. 11; IV. vii. 9; VIII. xvi. 12). "The *Periplus*," Vincent remarks, "makes no mention of Deirê, but observes that the point of contraction is close to A balitês

These articles are imported from the interior parts of Ariakê:—

Σίδηρος Ἰνδικὸς—Indian iron.

Στόμαμα—Sharp blades.

῾Οθόνιον Ἰνδικὸν τὸ πλατύτερον, ἡ λεγομένη μοναχῆ.  
—Monakhê,<sup>17</sup> Indian cotton cloth of great width.

Σαγματογῆναι—Cotton for stuffing.

Περιζώματα—Sashes or girdles.

Καυνάκαι—Dresses of skin with the hair or fur on.

Μολόχινα—Webs of cloth mallow-tinted.

Σινδόνες ῾ολίγαι—Fine muslins in small quantity.

Λάκκος χρωμάτινος—Gum-lac: yielding Lake.

The articles locally produced for export are ivory, tortoise-shell, and rhinoceros. Most of the goods which supply the market arrive any time from January to September—that is, from Tybi to Thôth. The best season, however, for ships from Egypt to put in here is about the month of September.

---

or the Abalitik mart; it is from this mart that the coast of Africa falling down first to the South and curving afterwards towards the East is styled the Bay of Aualitês by Ptolemy, (IV. vii. 10, 20, 27, 30, 39,) but in the *Periplûs* this name is confined to a bay immediately beyond the straits which D'Anville has likewise inserted in his map, but which I did not fully understand till I obtained Captain Cook's chart and found it perfectly consistent with the *Periplûs*." It is the gulf of Tejureh or Zeyla.

---

<sup>17</sup> Bruce, *Travels*, vol. III., p. 62.—J. B.

7. From this bay the Arabian Gulf trends eastward, and at Aualitês is contracted to its narrowest. At a distance of about 4000 stadia (*from Adouli*), if you still sail along the same coast, you reach other marts of Barbaria, called the marts beyond (*the Straits*), which occur in successive order, and which, though harbourless, afford at certain seasons of the year good and safe anchorage. The first district you come to is that called Aualitês, where the passage across the strait to the opposite point of Arabia is shortest. Here is a small port of trade, called, like the district, Aualitês, which can be approached only by little boats and rafts. The imports of this place are—

ῥαλὴ λίθια σύμμικτος—Flint glass of various sorts.

[Χυλός] Διοσπολιτικῆς ὀμφακος—Juice of the sour grape of Diospolis.

---

The tract of country extending from the Straits to Cape Arômata (now Guardafui) is called at the present day Adel. It is described by Strabo (XVI. iv. 14), who copies his account of it from Artemidoros. He mentions no emporium, nor any of the names which occur in the *Periplus* except the haven of Daphnous. [Bandar Mariyah, lat. 11° 46' N., long. 50° 38' E.] He supplies however many particulars regarding the region which are left unnoticed by our author as having no reference to commerce—particulars, however, which prove that these parts which were resorted to in the times of the Ptolemies for elephant-hunt-

ἱμάτια βαρβαρικά σύμμικτα γεγναμμένα—Cloths of different kinds worn in Barbaria dressed by the fuller.

Σίτος—Corn.

Οἶνος—Wine.

Κασσίτερος ὀλίγος—A little tin.

The exports, which are sometimes conveyed on rafts across the straits by the Berbers themselves to Okêlis and Mouza on the opposite coast, are—

Ἀρώματα—Odoriferous gums.

Ἐλέφας ὀλίγος—Ivory in small quantity.

Χελώνη—Tortoise-shell.

Σμύρνα ἐλαχίστη διαφέρουσα δὲ τῆς ἄλλης—Myrrh in very small quantity, but of the finest sort.

Μάκειρ—Macer.

The barbarians forming the population of the place are *rude and lawless men*.

ing were much better known to the ancients than they were till quite recently known to ourselves. Ptolemy gives nearly the same series of names (IV. vii. 9, 10) as the *Periplus*, but with some discrepancies in the matter of their distances which he does not so accurately state. His list is: Dêre, a city; Abalitês or Aualitês, a mart; Malaô, a mart; Moundou or Mondou, a mart; Mondou, an island; Mosulon, a cape and a mart; Kobê, a mart; Elephas, a mountain; Akkanai or Akannai, a mart; Aromata, a cape and a mart.

The mart of Abalitês is represented by the modern Zeyla [lat. 11° 22' N., long. 43° 29' E.,

8. Beyond Analitês there is another mart, superior to it, called Mala ô, at a distance by sea of 800 stadia. The anchorage is an open road, sheltered, however, by a cape protruding eastward. The people are of a more peaceable disposition than their neighbours. The imports are such as have been already specified, with the addition of—

Πλείονες χιτῶνες—Tunics in great quantity.

Σάγοι Ἀρσινοητικὰὶ γεγραμμένοι καὶ βεβαμμένοι—Coarse cloaks (or blankets) manufactured at Arsinoë, prepared by the fuller and dyed.

Μελίεφθα ὀλίγα.—A few utensils made of copper fused with honey.

Σίδηρος—Iron.

Δηράριον οὐ πολὺ χρυσοῦντε καὶ ἀργυροῦν—Specie, —gold and silver, but not much.

The exports from this locality are—

Σύρρα—Myrrh.

Δίβανος ὁ περατικὸς ὀλίγος—Frankincense *which we call peratic*, i.e. from beyond the straits, a little only.

---

79 miles from the straits.] On the N. shore of the gulf are Abalit and Tejureh. Abalit is 43 miles from the straits, and Tejureh 27 miles from Abalit. This is the Zouileh of Ebn Haukal and the Zalegh of Idrisi. According to the *Periplus* it was near the straits, but Ptolemy has fixed it more correctly at the distance from them of 50 or 60 miles.

(8) Mala ô as a mart was much superior to Abalitês, from which our author estimates its distance to be 800 stadia, though it is in reality

Κασσία σκληροτέρα—Cinnamon of a hard grain.  
 Δούακα—Douaka (*an inferior kind of cinnamon*).  
 Κάγκαμον—The gum (*for fumigation*) kangka-  
 mon. 'Dekamalli,' gum.

Μάκερ—The spice *macer*, which is carried to Arabia.

Σώματα σπαρίως—Slaves, a few.

9. Distant from Malaô a two days' sail is the trading port of Moundou, where ships find a safer anchorage by mooring at an island which lies very close to shore. The exports and imports are similar to those of the preceding marts, with the addition of the fragrant gum called *Mohrotou*, a peculiar product of the place. The native traders here are uncivilized in their manners.

10. After Moundou, if you sail eastward as before for two or three days, there comes

---

greater. From the description he gives of its situation it must be identified with Berbereh [lat. 10° 25' N., long. 45° 1' E.] now the most considerable mart on this part of the coast. Vincent erroneously places it between Zeyla and the straits.

(9) The next mart after Malaô is Moundou, which, as we learn from Ptolemy, was also the name of an adjacent island—that which is now called Meyet or Burnt-island [lat. 11° 12' N., long. 47° 17' E., 10 miles east of Bandar Jedid].

(10) At a distance beyond it of two or three days' sail occurs Mosulon, which is the name both of a mart and of a promontory. It is mentioned



next Mossulon, where it is difficult to anchor. It imports the same sorts of commodities as have been already mentioned, and also utensils of silver and others of iron but not so many, and glass-ware. It exports a vast amount of cinnamon (whence it is a port requiring ships of heavy burden) and other fragrant and aromatic products, besides tortoise-shell, but in no great quantity, and the incense called *mokrotou* inferior to that of Moundou, and frankincense brought from parts further dis-

---

by Pliny (VI. 34), who says: "Further on is the bay of Abalitês, the island of Diodôrus and other islands which are desert. On the mainland, which has also deserts, occur a town Gaza [Bandar Gazim, long. 49° 13' E.], the promontory and port of Mossulon, whence cinnamon is exported. Sesostris led his army to this point and no further. Some writers place one town of Ethiopia beyond it, Baricaza, which lies on the coast. According to Juba the Atlantic Sea begins at the promontory of Mossulon." Juba evidently confounded this promontory with Cape Arômata, and Ptolemy, perhaps in consequence, makes its projection more considerable than it is. D'Anville and Gosselin thought Mossulon was situated near the promontory Mete, where is a river, called the Soal, which they supposed preserved traces of the name of Mossulon. This position however cannot be reconciled with the distances given in the *Periplus*, which would lead us to look for it where Guesele is placed in the

tant, and ivory and myrrh though in small quantity.

11. After leaving Mosullon, and sailing past a place called Neilo ptolemaios, and past Tapategê and the Little Laurel-grove, you are conducted in two days to Cape Ele-

latest description given of this coast. Vincent on very inadequate grounds would identify it with Barbara or Berbera. [Müller places it at Bandar Barthe and Ras Antarah, long. 49° 35' E.]

(11) After Mosulon occurs Cape Elephant, at some distance beyond Neilo ptolemaios, Tapategê, and the Little Laurel-grove. At the Cape is a river and the Great Laurel-grove called Akannai. Strabo in his account of this coast mentions a Neilospotamia which however can hardly be referred to this particular locality which pertains to the region through which the Khori or San Pedro flows, of which Idrisi (I. 45) thus writes: "At two journeys' distance from Markah in the desert is a river which is subject to risings like the Nile and on the banks of which they sow dhorra." Regarding Cape Elephant Vincent says, "it is formed by a mountain conspicuous in the Portuguese charts under the name of Mount Felix or Felles from the native term Jibel Fil, literally, Mount Elephant. The cape [Ras Filik, 800 ft. high, lat. 11° 57' N., long. 50° 37' E.] is formed by the land jutting up to the North from the direction of the coast which is nearly East and West, and from its northernmost point the land falls off again South-East to Râs 'Asir—Cape Guardafun, the Arômata of the

phant. Here is a stream called Elephant River, and the Great Laurel-grove called Akan-nai, where, and where only, is produced the *peratic* frankincense. The supply is most abundant, and it is of the very finest quality.

12. After this, the coast now inclining to the south, succeeds the mart of Arômata, and a

ancients. We learn from Captain Saris, an English navigator, that there is a river at Jibel Fîl. In the year 1611 he stood into a bay or harbour there which he represents as having a safe entrance for three ships abreast: he adds also that several sorts of gums very sweet in burning were still purchased by the Indian ships from Cambay which touched here for that purpose in their passage to Mocha." The passage in the *Periplus* where these places are mentioned is very corrupt. Vincent, who regards the greater Daphnôn (Laurel-grove) as a river called Akan-nai, says, "Neither place or distance is assigned to any of these names, but we may well allot the rivers Daphnôn and Elephant to the synonymous town and cape; and these may be represented by the modern Mete and Santa Pedro." [Müller places Elephas at Ras el Fîl, long.  $50^{\circ} 37' E.$ , and Akan-nai at Ulûlah Bandar, long.  $50^{\circ} 56' E.$ , but they may be represented by Ras Ahileh, where a river enters through a lagoon in  $11^{\circ} 46'$ , and Bonah a town with wells of good water in lat.  $11^{\circ} 58' N.$ , long.  $50^{\circ} 51' E.$ ]

(12) We come now to the great projection Cape Arômata, which is a continuation of Mount Elephant. It is called in Arabic Jerd Hafûn

bluff headland running out eastward which forms the termination of the Barbarine coast. The roadstead is an open one, and at certain seasons dangerous, as the place lies exposed to

---

or Ras Asir; in Idrisi, Carfouna, whence the name by which it is generally known. [The South point  $11^{\circ} 40'$  is Râs Shenarif or Jerd Hafûn; the N. point  $11^{\circ} 51'$  is Râs 'Asir.] It formed the limit of the knowledge of this coast in the time of Strabo, by whom it is called Notou Keras or South Horn. It is described as a very high bluff point and as perpendicular as if it were scarped. [Jerd Hafûn is 2500 feet high.] The current comes round it out of the gulf with such violence that it is not to be stemmed without a brisk wind, and during the South-West Monsoon, the moment you are past the Cape to the North there is a stark calm with insufferable heat. The current below Jerd Hafûn is noticed by the *Periplus* as setting to the South, and is there perhaps equally subject to the change of the monsoon. With this account of the coast from the straits to the great Cape may be compared that which has been given by Strabo, XVI. iv. 14:

"From Deirê the next country is that which bears aromatic plants. The first produces myrrh and belongs to the Ichthyophagi and Creophagi. It bears also the persea, peach or Egyptian almond, and the Egyptian fig. Beyond is Licha, a hunting ground for elephants. There are also in many places standing pools of rain-water. When these are dried up, the elephants with their trunks and tusks dig holes and find

the north wind. A coming storm gives warning of its approach by a peculiar prognostic, for the sea turns turbid at the bottom and changes its colour. When this occurs, all hasten for refuge

---

water. On this coast there are two very large lakes extending as far as the promontory Pytholaus. One of them contains salt water and is called a sea; the other fresh water and is the haunt of hippopotami and crocodiles. On the margin grows the papyrus. The ibis is seen in the neighbourhood of this place. Next is the country which produces frankincense; it has a promontory and a temple with a grove of poplars. In the inland parts is a tract along the banks of a river bearing the name of Isis, and another that of Nilus, both of which produce myrrh and frankincense. Also a lagoon filled with water from the mountains. Next the watch-post of the Lion and the port of Pythangelus. The next tract bears the false cassia. There are many tracts in succession on the sides of rivers on which frankincense grows, and rivers extending to the cinnamon country. The river which bounds this tract produces rushes (*φλous*) in great abundance. Then follows another river and the port of Daphnus, and a valley called Apollo's which bears besides frankincense, myrrh and cinnamon. The latter is more abundant in places far in the interior. Next is the mountain Elephas, a mountain projecting into the sea and a creek; then follows the large harbour of Psygmus, a watering place called that of Cynocephali and the last promontory of this coast Notuceras (or the

to the great promontory called T a b a i, which affords a secure shelter. The imports into this mart are such as have been already mentioned ; while its products are cinnamon, gizeir (*a finer sort of cinnamon*), asuphê (*an ordinary sort*),

Southern Horn). After doubling this cape towards the south we have no more descriptions of harbours or places because nothing is known of the sea-coast beyond this point." [Bohn's *Transl.*] According to Gosselin, the Southern Horn corresponds with the Southern Cape of Bandel-caus, where commences the desert coast of Ajan, the ancient Azania.

According to the *Periplus* Cape Arômata marked the termination of Barbaria and the beginning of Azania. Ptolemy however distinguishes them differently, defining the former as the interior and the latter as the sea-board of the region to which these names were applied.

The description of the Eastern Coast of Africa which now follows is carried, as has been already noticed, as far as Rhapta, a place about 6 degrees South of the Equator, but which Vincent places much farther South, identifying it with Kilwa.

The places named on this line of coast are : a promontory called Tabai, a Khersonesos ; Opône, a mart ; the Little and the Great Apokopa ; the Little and the Great Coast ; the Dromoi or courses of Azania (first that of Serapiôn, then that of Nikôn) ; a number of rivers ; a succession of anchorages, seven in number ; the Paralaioi islands ; a strait or canal ; the island of Menouthias ; and then Rhapta,

fragrant gums, magla, motô (*an inferior cinnamon*), and frankincense.

13. If, on sailing from T a b a i, you follow the coast of the peninsula *formed by the promontory*, you are carried by the force of a strong current to another mart 400 stadia distant, called O p ô n ê, which imports the commodities already mentioned, but produces most abundantly cin-

beyond which, as the author conceived, the ocean curved round Africa until it met and amalgamated with the Hesperian or Western Ocean.

(13) Tabai, to which the inhabitants of the Great Cape fled for refuge on the approach of a storm, cannot, as Vincent and others have supposed, be Cape Orfui, for it lay at too great a distance for the purpose. The projection is meant which the Arabs call Banna. [Or, Tabai may be identified with Râs Shenarif, lat. 11° 40' N.] Tabai, Müller suggests, may be a corruption for Tabannai.

"From the foreign term Banna," he says, "certain Greeks in the manner of their countrymen invented P a n o s or P a n ô n or Panô or Panôna Kômê. Thus in Ptolemy (I. 17 and IV. 7) after Arômata follows P a n ô n Kômê, which Mannert has identified with Benna. [Khor Banneh is a salt lake, with a village, inside Râs Ali Beshgêl, lat. 11° 9' N., long. 51° 9' E.] Stephen of Byzantium may be compared, who speaks of P a n o s as a village on the Red Sea which is also called P a n ô n." The conjecture, therefore, of Letronnius that P a n ô n Kômê derived its name from the large apes found there, called P â n e s, falls to the ground.

namon, spice, *motô*, slaves of a very superior sort, chiefly for the Egyptian market, and tortoise-shell of small size but in large quantity and of the finest quality known.

14. Ships set sail from Egypt for all these ports beyond the straits about the month of July—that is, Epiphi. The same markets are also regularly supplied with the products of places far beyond them—A r i a k ê and B a r u g a z a. These products are—

Σίτος—Corn.

\*Ορυζα<sup>18</sup>—Rice.

Βούτυρον—Butter, i. e. *ghî*.

\*Ελαιον σησάμινον—Oil of sesamum.

Ὀθόνιον ἢ τε μοναχὴ καὶ ἡ σαγματογῆνη—Fine

O p ô n ê was situated on the Southern shores of what the *Periplus* calls a Khersonese, which can only be the projection now called Ras Hafûn or Cape D'Orfui (lat. 10° 25' N.). Ptolemy (I. 17) gives the distance of O p ô n ê from P a n ô n K ô m ê at a 6 days' journey, from which according to the *Periplus* it was only 400 stadia distant. That the text of Ptolemy is here corrupt cannot be doubted, for in his tables the distance between the two places is not far from that which is given in the *Periplus*. Probably, as Müller conjectures, he wrote ὁδὸν ἡμέρας (a day's journey) which was converted into ὁδὸν ἡμερ. 6 (a six-days' journey).

(14) At this harbour is introduced the mention of the voyage which was annually made between

<sup>18</sup> From the Tamil *arisi*, rice deprived of the husk.—Caldwell.



cotton called *Monakhé*, and a coarse kind for stuffing called *Sagmatogene*.

*Περιζώματα*—Sashes or girdles.

*Μέλι τὸ καλάμινον τὸ λεγόμενον σάκχαρι*.—The honey of a reed, called *sugar*.

Some traders undertake voyages for this commerce expressly, while others, as they sail along the coast *we are describing*, exchange their cargoes for such others as they can procure. There is no king who reigns paramount over all this region, but each separate seat of trade is ruled by an independent despot of its own.

15. After *Opônê*, the coast now trending more to the south, you come first to what are called the little and the great *Apokopa* (or Bluffs) of *Azania*, where there are no har-

the coast of India and Africa in days previous to the appearance of the Greeks on the Indian Ocean, which has already been referred to.

(15) After leaving *Opônê* the coast first runs due south, then bends to the south-west, and here begins the coast which is called the Little and the Great *Apokopa* or Bluffs of *Azania*, the voyage along which occupies six days. This rocky coast, as we learn from recent explorations, begins at *Râs Mabber* [about lat. 9° 25' N.], which is between 70 and 80 miles distant from *Ras Hafûn* and extends only to *Râs-ul-Kheil* [about lat. 7° 45' N.], which is distant from *Râs Mabber* about 140 miles or a voyage of three or four days only. The length of this rocky coast (called *Hazine* by the Arabs) is therefore much exaggerated in the *Peri-*

bours, but only roads in which ships can conveniently anchor. The navigation of this coast, the direction of which is now to the southwest, occupies six days. Then follow the Little Coast and the Great Coast, occupying other six days, when in due order succeed the Dromoi

*plús*. From this error we may infer that our author, who was a very careful observer, had not personally visited this coast. Ptolemy, in opposition to Marinós as well as the *Periplús*, recognizes but one Apokopa, which he speaks of as a bay. Müller concludes an elaborate note regarding the Apokopa by the following quotation from the work of Owen, who made the exploration already referred to, "It is strange that the descriptive term *Hazine* should have produced the names *Ajan*, *Azan* and *Azania* in many maps and charts, as the country never had any other appellation than *Barra Somáli* or the land of the *Somáli*, a people who have never yet been collected under one government, and whose limits of subjection are only within bow-shot of individual chiefs. The coast of Africa from the Red Sea to the river Juba is inhabited by the tribe called *Somáli*. They are a mild people of pastoral habits and confined entirely to the coast; the whole of the interior being occupied by an untameable tribe of savages called *Galla*."

The coast which follows the Apokopa, called the Little and the Great *Aigialos* or Coast, is so desolate that, as Vincent remarks, not a name occurs on it, neither is there an anchorage noticed, nor the least trace of commerce to be

(or Courses) of Azania, the one going by the name of Sarapiôn, and the other by that of Nikôn. Proceeding thence, you pass the mouths of numerous rivers, and a succession of other roadsteads lying apart one from another a day's distance either by sea or by

found. Yet it is of great extent—a six days' voyage according to the *Periplûs*, but, according to Ptolemy, who is here more correct, a voyage of eight days, for, as we have seen, the *Periplûs* has unduly extended the Apokopa to the South.

Next follow the Dromoi or Courses of Azania, the first called that of Serapiôn and the other that of Nikôn. Ptolemy interposes a bay between the Great Coast and the port of Serapiôn, on which he states there was an emporium called Essina—a day's sail distant from that port. Essina, it would therefore appear, must have been somewhere near where Makdashû [Magadoxo, lat.  $2^{\circ} 3' N.$ ] was built by the Arabs somewhere in the eighth century A.D. The station called that of Nikôn in the *Periplûs* appears in Ptolemy as the mart of Tonikê. These names are not, as some have supposed, of Greek origin, but distortions of the native appellations of the places into names familiar to Greek ears. That the Greeks had founded any settlements here is altogether improbable. At the time when the *Periplûs* was written all the trade of these parts was in the hands of the Arabs of Mouza. The port of Serapiôn may be placed at a promontory which occurs in  $1^{\circ} 40'$  of N. lat. From this, Tonikê, according to

land. There are seven of them altogether, and they reach on to the Puralaioi islands and the narrow strait called the Canal, beyond which, where the coast changes its direction from south-west slightly more to south, you are conducted by a voyage of two days and two nights to Me-

the tables of Ptolemy, was distant 45', and its position must therefore have agreed with that of Torre or Terra of our modern maps.

Next occurs a succession of rivers and roadsteads, seven in number, which being passed we are conducted to the Puralaän Islands, and what is called a canal or channel (δεώρυξ). These islands are not mentioned elsewhere. They can readily be identified with the two called Manda and Lamou, which are situate at the mouths of large rivers, and are separated from the mainland and from each other by a narrow channel. Vincent would assign a Greek origin to the name of these islands. "With a very slight alteration," he says, "of the reading, the Puralian Islands (Πῦρ ἄλιον, *marine fire*,) are the islands of the Fiery Ocean, and nothing seems more consonant to reason than for a Greek to apply the name of the Fiery Ocean to a spot which was the centre of the Torrid Zone and subject to the perpendicular rays of an equinoctial sun." [The Juba islands run along the coast from Juba to about Lat. 1° 50' S., and Manda bay and island is in Lat. 2° 12' S.]

Beyond these islands occurs, after a voyage of two days and two nights, the island of Menouthias or Menouthesias, which it has

n o u t h i a s, an island stretching towards sunset, and distant from the mainland about 300 stadia. It is low-lying and woody, has rivers, and a vast variety of birds, and yields the mountain tortoise, but it has no wild beasts at all, except only crocodiles, which, however, are quite

been found difficult to identify with any certainty. "It is," says Vincent, "the *Estenediommenouthesias* of the *Periplus*, a term egregiously strange and corrupted, but out of which the commentators unanimously collect Menoothias, whatever may be the fate of the remaining syllables. That this Menoothias," he continues, "must have been one of the Zangibar islands is indubitable; for the distance from the coast of all three, Pemba, Zangibar, and Momfia, affords a character which is indelible; a character applicable to no other island from Guardafui to Madagascar." He then identifies it with the island of Zangibar, lat.  $6^{\circ} 5' S.$ , in preference to Pemba,  $5^{\circ} 6' S.$ , which lay too far out of the course, and in preference to Momfia,  $7^{\circ} 50' S.$  (though more doubtfully), because of its being by no means conspicuous, whereas Zangibar was so prominent and obvious above the other two, that it might well attract the particular attention of navigators, and its distance from the mainland is at the same time so nearly in accordance with that given in the *Periplus* as to counterbalance all other objections. A writer in Smith's *Classical Geography*, who seems to have overlooked the indications of the distances both of Ptolemy and the *Periplus*, assigns it a position much further to the north than is reconcilable with these distances.

harmless. The boats are here made of planks sewn together attached to a keel formed of a single log of wood, and these are used for fishing and for catching turtle. This is also caught in another mode, peculiar to the island, by lowering wicker-baskets instead of nets, and fixing

He places it about a degree south from the mouth of the River Juba or Govind, just where an opening in the coral-reefs is now found. "The coasting voyage," he says, "steering S. W., reached the island on the east side—a proof that it was close to the main. . . . It is true the navigator says it was 300 stadia from the mainland; but as there is no reason to suppose that he surveyed the island, this distance must be taken to signify the estimated width of the northern inlet separating the island from the main, and this estimate is probably much exaggerated. The mode of fishing with baskets is still practised in the Juba islands and along this coast. The formation of the coast of E. Africa in these latitudes—where the hills or downs upon the coast are all formed of a coral conglomerate comprising fragments of madrepore, shell and sand, renders it likely that the island which was close to the main 16 or 17 centuries ago, should now be united to it. Granting this theory of gradual transformation of the coast-line, the Menouthias of the *Periplus* may be supposed to have stood in what is now the rich garden-land of Shamba, where the rivers carrying down mud to mingle with the marine deposit of coral drift covered the choked-up estuary with a rich soil."

them against the mouths of the cavernous rocks which lie out in the sea confronting the beach.

16. At the distance of a two days' sail from this island lies the last of the marts of Azania, called Rhapta, a name which it derives from the sewn boats just mentioned. Ivory is procured here in the greatest abundance, and also turtle. The indigenous inhabitants are

---

The island is said in the *Periplus* to extend towards the West, but this does not hold good either in the case of Zangibar or any other island in this part of the coast. Indeed there is no one of them in which at the present day all the characteristics of Menouthias are found combined. Momfia, for instance, which resembles it somewhat in name, and which, as modern travellers tell us, is almost entirely occupied with birds and covered with their dung, does not possess any streams of water. These are found in Zangibar. The author may perhaps have confusedly blended together the accounts he had received from his Arab informants.

(16) We arrive next and finally at Rhapta, the last emporium on the coast known to the author. Ptolemy mentions not only a city of this name, but also a river and a promontory. The name is Greek (from *ῥάπτειν*, to sew), and was applied to the place because the vessels there in use were raised from bottoms consisting of single trunks of trees by the addition of planks which were sewn together with the fibres of the cocoa.

men of huge stature, who live *apart from each other*, every man ruling like a lord his own domain. The whole territory is governed by the despot of Mopharitis, because the sovereignty over it, by some right of old standing, is vested in the kingdom of what is called the First Arabia. The merchants of Mouza farm its revenues from the king, and employ in trading with it a great many ships of heavy burden, on board of which they have Arabian commanders and factors who are intimately acquainted with the natives and have contracted marriage

---

"It is a singular fact," as Vincent remarks, "that this peculiarity should be one of the first objects which attracted the attention of the Portuguese upon their reaching this coast. They saw them first at Mozambique, where they were called *Almeidas*, but the principal notice of them in most of their writers is generally stated at Kilwa, the very spot which we have supposed to receive its name from vessels of the same construction." Vincent has been led from this coincidence to identify Rhapta with Kilwa [lat. 8° 50' S.]. Müller however would place it not so far south, but somewhere in the Bay of Zangibar. The promontory of Rhaptum, he judges from the indications of the *Periplus* to be the projection which closes the bay in which lies the island of Zangibar, and which is now known as Moianokaltu or Point Pouna, lat. 7° S. The parts beyond this were unknown, and the southern coast of Africa, it was accordingly thought by the ancient



with them, and know their language and the navigation of the coast.

17. The articles imported into these marts are principally javelins manufactured at Mouza, hatchets, knives, awls, and crown glass of various sorts, to which must be added corn and wine in no small quantity landed at particular ports, not for sale, but to entertain and thereby conciliate the barbarians. The articles which these places export are ivory, in great abundance but of inferior quality to that obtained at Adouli, rhinoceros, and tortoise-shell of fine quality, second only to the Indian, and a little *nauplius*.

---

geographers, began here. Another cape however is mentioned by Ptolemy remoter than Rhaptum and called *Prasum* (that is the Green Cape) which may perhaps be Cape Delgado, which is noted for its luxuriant vegetation. The same author calls the people of *Rhapta*, the *Rhapsioi Aithiopes*. They are described in the *Periplus* as men of lofty stature, and this is still a characteristic of the Africans of this coast. The *Rhapsii* were, in the days of our author, subject to the people of *Mouza* in Arabia just as their descendants are at the present day subject to the Sultan of Maskat. Their commerce moreover still maintains its ancient characteristics. It is the African who still builds and mans the ships while the Arab is the navigator and supercargo. The ivory is still of inferior quality, and the turtle is still captured at certain parts of the coast.

18. These marts, we may say, are about the last on the coast of *A z a n i a*—the coast, that is, which is on your right as you sail *south* from *B e r e n i k ê*. For beyond these parts an ocean, hitherto unexplored, curves round towards sunset, and, stretching along the southern extremities of Ethiopia, Libya, and Africa, amalgamates with the Western Sea.

19. To the left, again, of *B e r e n i k ê*, if you

---

(18, 19) Our author having thus described the African coast as far southward as it was known on its Eastern side, reverts to *B e r e n i k ê* and enters at once on a narrative of the second voyage—that which was made thence across the Northern head of the gulf and along the coast of Arabia to the emporium of *M o u z a* near the Straits. The course is first northward, and the parts about *B e r e n i k ê* as you bear away lie therefore now on your left hand. Having touched at *M y o s H o r m o s* the course on leaving it is shaped eastward across the gulf by the promontory *P h a r a n*, and *L e u k ê K ô m ê*<sup>10</sup> is reached after three or four days' sailing. This was a port in the kingdom of the Nabathæans (the Nebaioth of Scripture), situated perhaps near the mouth of the Elanitic Gulf or eastern arm of the Red Sea, now called the Gulf of Akabah. Much difference of opinion has prevailed as to its exact position, since the encroachment of the land upon the sea has much altered the line of coast here. Mannert identified it with the modern *Y e n b o* [lat. 24° 5' N., long. 38° 3' E., the port

---

<sup>10</sup> Meaning *white village*.

sail eastward from M y o s-H o r m o s across the adjacent gulf for two days, or perhaps three, you arrive at a place having a port and a fortress which is called L e u k ê K ô m ê, and forming the point of communication with Petra, the residence of M a l i k h a s, the king of the Nabatæans. It ranks as an emporium of trade, since small vessels come to it laden with merchandize from Arabia; and hence an officer is deputed to

---

of Medina], Gosselin with M o w i l a h [lat.  $27^{\circ} 38' N.$ , long.  $35^{\circ} 28' E.$ ], Vincent with E y n o u n a h [lat.  $28^{\circ} 3' N.$ , long.  $35^{\circ} 13' E.$ —the Onne of Ptolemy], Reichhard with I s t a b e l A n t a i, and Rüppel with W e j h [lat.  $26^{\circ} 13' N.$ , long.  $36^{\circ} 27' E.$ ]. Müller prefers the opinion held by Bochart, D'Anville, Quatremère, Noel des Vergers, and Ritter, who agree in placing it at the port called H a u a r a [lat.  $24^{\circ} 59' N.$ , long.  $37^{\circ} 16' E.$ ] mentioned by Idrisi (I. p. 332), who describes it as a village inhabited by merchants carrying on a considerable trade in earthen vases manufactured at a clay-pit in their neighbourhood. Near it lies the island of H a s s a n i [lat.  $24^{\circ} 59' N.$ , long.  $37^{\circ} 3' E.$ ], which, as Wellsted reports, is conspicuous from its *white* appearance. L e u k ê K ô m ê is mentioned by various ancient authors, as for instance Strabo, who, in a passage wherein he recounts the misfortunes which befel the expedition which Aelius led into Nabathaea, speaks of the place as a large mart to which and from which the camel traders travel with ease and in safety from Petra and back to Petra

collect the duties which are levied on imports at the rate of twenty-five per cent. of their value, and also a centurion who commands the garrison by which the place is protected.

20. Beyond this mart, and quite contiguous to it, is the realm of Arabia, which stretches to a great distance along the coast of the Red Sea. It is inhabited by various tribes, some speaking the same language with a certain degree of

---

with so large a body of men and camels as to differ in no respect from an army.

The merchandize thus conveyed from Leukê Kômê to Petra was passed on to Rhinokoloura in Palestine near Egypt, and thence to other nations, but in his own time the greater part was transported by the Nile to Alexandria. It was brought down from India and Arabia to Myos Hormos, whence it was first conveyed on camels to Koptos and thence by the Nile to Alexandria. The Nabathæan king, at the time when our author visited Leukê Kômê, was, as he tells us, Malikhas, a name which means 'king.' Two Petraean sovereigns so called are mentioned by Josêphos, of whom the latter was contemporary with Herod. The Malikhas of the *Periplus* is however not mentioned in any other work. The Nabathæan kingdom was subverted in the time of Trajan, A.D. 105, as we learn from Dio Cassius (cap. lxxviii. 14), and from Eutropius (viii. 2, 9), and from Ammianus Marcellinus (xiv. 8).

(20) Atnogreat distance from Leukê Kômê the Nabathæan realm terminates and Arabia

uniformity, and others a language totally different. Here also, *as on the opposite continent*, the sea-board is occupied by I k h t h y o p h a g o i, who live in dispersed huts ; while the men of the interior live either in villages, or where pasture can be found, and are an evil race of men, speaking two different languages. If a vessel is driven from her course upon this shore she is plundered, and if wrecked the crew on escaping to land are reduced to slavery. For this reason they are treated as enemies and captured by the chiefs and kings of Arabia. They are called K a n r a i t a i. Altogether, therefore, the navigation of this part of the Arabian coast is very dangerous : for, *apart from the barbarity of its people*, it has neither harbours nor good roadsteads, and it is foul with breakers, and girdled with rocks which render it inaccessible. For this reason when sailing south we stand off

---

begins. The coast is here described as most dismal, and as in every way dangerous to navigation. The inhabitants at the same time are barbarians, destitute of all humanity, who scruple not to attack and plunder wrecked ships and to make slaves of their crews if they escaped to land. The mariner therefore, shunned these inhospitable shores, and standing well out to sea, sailed down the middle of the gulf. The tribe here spoken of was that perhaps which is represented by the H u t e m i of the present day, and the coast belonged to the part of Arabia now called H e j i d.

from a shore in every way so dreadful, and keep our course down the middle of the gulf, straining our utmost to reach *the more civilized part* of Arabia, which begins at Burnt Island. From this onward the people are under a regular government, and, as their country is pastoral, they keep herds of cattle and camels.

21. Beyond this tract, and on the shore of a bay which occurs at the termination of the left (or east) side of the gulf, is *M o u z a*, an established and notable mart of trade, at a distance

---

A more civilized region begins at an island called Burnt island, which answers to the modern Zebâyir [about lat.  $15^{\circ} 5' N.$ , long.  $42^{\circ} 12' E.$ ], an island which was till recently volcanic.

(21) Beyond this is the great emporium called *M o u z a*, [lat.  $13^{\circ} 43' N.$ , long.  $43^{\circ} 5' 14'' E.$ ] situated in a bay near the termination of the Gulf, and at a distance from *B e r e n i k ê* of 12,000 stadia. Here the population consists almost entirely of merchants and mariners, and the place is in the highest degree commercial. The commodities of the country are rich and numerous (though this is denied by Pliny), and there is a great traffic in Indian articles brought from *B a r u g a z a* (Bharoch). This port, once the most celebrated and most frequented in Yemen, is now the village *Musa* about twenty-five miles north from *Mokhâ*, which has replaced it as a port, the foundation of which dates back no more than 400 years ago. "Twenty miles inland from *Mokhâ*," says Vincent, "Niebuhr discovered a *Musa* still existing, which he with great

south from Berenikê of not more than 12,000 stadia. The whole place is full of Arabian ship-masters and common sailors, and is absorbed in the pursuits of commerce, for with ships of its own fitting out, it trades with the marts beyond the Straits on the opposite coast, and also with Barugaza.

22. Above this a three days' journey off lies the city of Sauê, in the district called Mopharitis. It is the residence of Kholaibos, the despot of that country.

---

probability supposes to be the ancient mart now carried inland to this distance by the recession of the coast." [He must have confounded it with Jebel Musa, due east of Mokhâ, at the commencement of the mountain country.] It is a mere village badly built. Its water is good, and is said to be drunk by the wealthier inhabitants of Mokhâ. Bochart identified Mouza with the Meshah mentioned by Moses.

(22) The *Periplus* notices two cities that lay inland from Mouza—the 1st Sauê, the Savê of Pliny (VI. xxvi., 104), and also of Ptolemy (VI. vii., p. 411), who places it at a distance of 500 stadia S. E. of Mouza. The position and distance direct us to the city of Taaes, which lies near a mountain called Saber. Sauê belonged to a district called Mapharitis or Mophareitês, a name which appears to survive in the modern Mharras, which designates a mountain lying N. E. from Taaes. It was ruled by Kholaibos (Arabicé—Khaleb), whom our author calls a tyrant,

23. A journey of nine days more conducts us to Saphar, the metropolis of Khariba'el, the rightful sovereign of two contiguous tribes, the Homêrites and the Sabaïtai, and, by means of frequent embassies and presents, the friend of the Emperors.

---

and who was therefore probably a Sheikh who had revolted from his lawful chief, and established himself as an independent ruler.

(23) The other city was Saphar, the metropolis of the Homêritai, *i.e.* the Himari—the Arabs of Yemen, whose power was widely extended, not only in Yemen but in distant countries both to the East and West. Saphar is called Sapphar by Ptolemy (VI. vii.), who places it in 14° N. lat. Philostorgios calls it Tapharon, and Stephen of Byzantium Tarphara. It is now Dhafar or Dsoffar or Zaphar. In Edrisi (I. p. 148) it appears as Dhofar, and he thus writes of it:—"It is the capital of the district Jahsseb. It was formerly one of the greatest and most famous of cities. The kings of Yemen made it their residence, and there was to be seen the palace of Zeidan. These structures are now in ruins, and the population has been much decreased, nevertheless the inhabitants have preserved some remnants of their ancient riches." The ruins of the city and palace still exist in the neighbourhood of Jerim, which Niebuhr places in 14° 30' N. lat. The distance from Saué to Saphar in the *Periplus* is a nine days' journey. Niebuhr accomplished it however in six. Perhaps, as Müller suggests, the nine days' journey is from



24. The mart of M o u z a has no harbour, but its sea is smooth, and the anchorage good, owing to the sandy nature of the bottom. The commodities which it imports are—

Πορφύρα, διάφορος καὶ χυδαία—Purple cloth, fine and ordinary.

Ἰματισμοὶς Ἀραβικὸς χειριδωτὸς, ὅτε ἀπλοῦς καὶ ὁ κοινὸς καὶ σκοτουλάτος καὶ διάχρυσος—Garments made up in the Arabian fashion, some plain and common, and others wrought in needlework and inwoven with gold.

Κρόκος—Saffron.

Κύπερος—The aromatic rush Kyperos. (Turmeric?)

Ὀθόνιον—Muslins.

Ἀβόλλαι—Cloaks.

Λώδικες οὐ πολλαί, ἀπλοὶ τε καὶ ἐντόπιοι—Quilts, in small quantity, some plain, others adapted to the fashion of the country.

Ζῶναι σκιεταί—Sashes of various shades of colour.

Μύρον μέτριον—Perfumes, a moderate quantity.

Χρῆμα ἱκανόν—Specie as much as is required.

Οἶνος—Wine.

Σίτος οὐ πολὺς—Corn, but not much.

---

M o u z a to S a p h a r. The sovereign of Saphar is called by our author Kharibaél, a name which is not found among the Himyaritic kings known from other sources. In Ptolemy the region is called Elisarôn, from a king bearing that name.

(24) Adjacent to the Homeritai, and subject to them when the *Periplus* was written, were the Sabaeans, so famous in antiquity for their wealth,

The country produces a little wheat and a great abundance of wine. Both the king and the despot above mentioned receive presents consisting of horses, pack-saddle mules, gold plate, silver plate embossed, robes of great value, and utensils of brass. Mouza exports its own local products—myrrh of the finest quality that has oozed in drops from the trees, both the Gabiræan and Mincean kinds; white marble (or alabaster), in addition to commodities brought from the other side of the Gulf, all such as were enumerated at Adouli. The most favourable season for making a voyage to Mouza is the month of September,—that is Thoth,—but there is nothing to prevent it being made earlier.

25. If on proceeding from Mouza you sail by the coast for about a distance of 300 stadia,

luxury and magnificence. Their country, the Sheba of Scripture, was noted as the land of frankincense. Their power at one time extended far and wide, but in the days of our author they were subject to the Homerites ruled over by Kharibaël, who was assiduous in courting the friendship of Rome.

(25) At a distance of 300 stadia beyond Mouza we reach the straits where the shores of Arabia and Africa advance so near to each other that the passage between them has only, according to the *Periplus*, a width of 60 stadia, or  $7\frac{1}{2}$  miles. In the midst of the passage lies the island of Diôdôros (now Perim), which is about  $4\frac{1}{2}$  miles long by 2 broad, and rises 230 feet above the level of the

there occurs, where the Arabian mainland and the opposite coast of Barbaria at Aualitês now approach each other, a channel of no great length which contracts the sea and encloses it within narrow bounds. This is 60 stadia wide, and in crossing it you come midway upon the island of Diôdôros, to which it is owing that the passage of the straits is in its neighbourhood exposed to violent winds which blow down from the adjacent mountains. There is situate upon the shore of the straits an Arabian village subject to the same ruler (as Mouza), Okêlis by name, which is not so much a mart of commerce as a place for anchorage and supplying water, and where those who are bound for the interior first land and halt to refresh themselves.

---

sea. The straits, according to Moresby, are  $14\frac{1}{2}$  geographical miles wide at the entrance between Bab-el-Mandab Cape (near which is Perim) and the opposite point or volcanic peak called Jib el Sijan. The larger of the two entrances is 11 miles wide, and the other only  $1\frac{1}{2}$ . Strabo, Agathêmeros, and Pliny all agree with the *Periplus* in giving 60 stadia as the breadth of the straits. The first passage of those dreaded straits was regarded as a great achievement, and was naturally ascribed to Sesostris as the voyage though the straits of Kalpê was ascribed to Heraklês.

Situated on the shores of the straits was a place called Okêlis. This was not a mart of commerce, but merely a bay with

26. Beyond Okêlis, the sea again widening out towards the east, and gradually expanding into the open main, there lies, at about the distance of 1,200 stadia, Eudaimôn Arabia, a maritime village subject to that kingdom of which Kharibaël is sovereign—a place with good anchorage, and supplied with sweeter and better water than that of Okêlis, and standing at the entrance of a bay where the land begins to

---

good anchorage and well supplied with water. It is identical with the modern Ghalla or Cella, which has a bay immediately within the straits. Strabo following Artemidoros notes here a promontory called Akila. Pliny (VI. xxxii. 157) mentions an emporium of the same name "ex quo in Indiam navigatur." In xxvi. 104 of the same Book he says: "Indos petentibus utilissimum est ab Oceli egredi." Ptolemy mentions a Pseudokêlis, which he places at the distance of half a degree from the emporium of Okêlis.

(26) At a distance beyond Okêlis of 1,200 stadia is the port of Eudaimôn Arabia, which beyond doubt corresponds to 'Âden, [lat. 12° 45' N., long. 45° 21' E.] now so well-known as the great packet station between Suez and India. The opinion held by some that Aden is the Eden mentioned by the Prophet Ezekiel (xxvii. 23) is opposed by Ritter and Winer. It is not mentioned by Pliny, though it has been erroneously held that the Attanae, which he mentions in the following passage, was Aden. "Homnae

retire inwards. It was called Eudaimôn ('rich and prosperous'), because in bygone days, when the merchants from India did not proceed to Egypt, and those from Egypt did not venture to cross over to the marts further east, but both came only as far as this city, it formed the common centre of their commerce, as Alexandria receives the wares which pass to and fro between Egypt and the ports of the Mediter-

---

et Attanae (v. l. Athanae) quæ nunc oppida maxime celebrari a Persico mari negotiatores dicunt." (vi. 32.) Ptolemy, who calls it simply Arabia, speaks of it as an emporium, and places after it at the distance of a degree and a half Melan Horos, or Black Hill, 17 miles from the coast, which is in long. 46° 59' E. The place, as the *Periplus* informs us, received the name of Eudaimôn from the great prosperity and wealth which it derived from being the great entrepôt of the trade between India and Egypt. It was in decay when that work was written, but even in the time of Ptolemy had begun to show symptoms of returning prosperity, and in the time of Constantine it was known as the 'Roman Emporium,' and had almost regained its former consequence, as is gathered from a passage in the works of the ecclesiastical historian Philostorgios. It is thus spoken of by Edrisi (I. p. 51): "Âden is a small town, but renowned for its seaport whence ships depart that are destined for Sind, India, and China." In the middle ages it became again the centre of the trade between India and

ranean. Now, however, it lies in ruins, the Emperor having destroyed it not long before our own times.

27. To Eudaimôn Arabia at once succeeds a great length of coast and a bay extending 2,000 stadia or more, inhabited by nomadic tribes and Ikthyophagoi settled in villages. On doubling a cape which projects from it you come to another trading seaport, Kanê, which

---

the Red Sea, and thus regained that wonderful prosperity which in the outset had given it its name. In this flourishing condition it was found by Marco Polo, whose account of its wealth, power and influence is, as Vincent remarks, almost as magnificent as that which Agatharkhidês attributed to the Sabæans in the time of the Ptolemies, when the trade was carried on in the same manner. Agatharkhidês does not however mention the place by name, but it was probably the city which he describes without naming it as lying on the White Sea without the straits, whence, he says, the Sabæans sent out colonies or factories into India, and where the fleets from Persis, Karmania and the Indus arrived. The name of Aden is supposed to be a corruption from Eudaimôn.

(27) The coast beyond Aden is possessed partly by wandering tribes, and partly by tribes settled in villages which subsist on fish. Here occurs a bay—that now called Ghubhet-al-Kamar, which extends upwards of 2,000 stadia, and ends in a promontory—that now called Râs-al-Asidah or

is subject to Eleazos, king of the incense country. Two barren islands lie opposite to it, 120 stadia off—one called Orneôn, and the other Troullas. At some distance inland from Kanê is Sabbatha, the principal city of the district, where the king resides. At Kanê is collected all the incense that is produced in the country, this being conveyed to it partly on camels, and partly *by sea* on floats

---

Bâ-l-hâf [lat. 13° 58' N., long 48° 9' S.—a cape with a hill near the fishing village of Gillah]. Beyond this lies another great mart called Kanê. It is mentioned by Pliny, and also by Ptolemy, who assigns it a position in agreement with the indications given in the *Periplus*. It has been identified with the port now called Hisn Ghorâb [lat. 14° 0' N. long. 48° 19' E.]. Not far from this is an island called Halanî, which answers to the Troullas of our author. Further south is another island, which is called by the natives of the adjacent coast Sikkah, but by sailors Jibûs. This is covered with the dung of birds which in countless multitudes have always frequented it, and may be therefore identified with the Orneôn of the *Periplus*. Kanê was subject to Eleazos, the king of the Frankincense Country, who resided at Sabbatha, or as it is called by Pliny (VI. xxxii. 155) Sabota, the capital of the Atramitæ or Adramitæ, a tribe of Sabæans from whom the division of Arabia now known as Hadhramaut takes its name. The position of this city cannot be determined with certainty. Wellsted, who pro-

supported on inflated skins, a local invention, and also in boats. Kanê carries on trade with ports across the ocean—Barugaza, Skythia, and Omana, and the adjacent coast of Persis.

28. From Egypt it imports, like Mouza, corn and a little wheat, cloths for the Arabian

---

ceeded into the interior from the coast near Hisn Ghorab through Wadi Meifah, came after a day's journey and a half to a place called Nakh-el-Hajar, situated in a highly cultivated district, where he found ruins of an ancient city of the Himyarites crowning an eminence that rose gently with a double summit from the fertile plain. The city appeared to have been built in the most solid style of architecture, and to have been protected by a very lofty wall formed of square blocks of black marble, while the inscriptions plainly betokened that it was an old seat of the Himyarites. A close similarity could be traced between its ruins and those of Kanê, to which there was an easy communication by the valley of Meifah. This place, however, can hardly be regarded as Sabatha without setting aside the distances given by Ptolemy, and Wellsted moreover learned from the natives that other ruins of a city of not less size were to be met with near a village called Esan, which could be reached by a three days' journey.—(See Haines, *Mem. of the S. Coast of Arab.*)

(28) With regard to the staple product of this region—frankincense, the *Periplus* informs us that



market, both of the common sort and the plain, and large quantities of a sort that is adulterated; also copper, tin, coral, styrax, and all the other articles enumerated at Mouza. Besides these there are brought also, principally for the king, wrought silver plate, and specie as well as horses and carved images, and plain cloth of a superior quality. Its exports are its indigenous products, frankincense and aloes, and such commodities as it shares in common with other marts on the same coast. Ships sail for this port at the same season of the year as those bound for Mouza, but earlier.

29. As you proceed from Kanê the land

it was brought for exportation to Kanê. It was however in the first place, if we may credit Pliny, conveyed to the Metropolis. He says (xv. 32) that when gathered it was carried into Sabota on camels which could enter the city only by one particular gate, and that to take it by any other route was a crime punished by death. The priests, he adds, take a tithe for a deity named Sabis, and that until this impost is paid, the article cannot be sold.

Some writers would identify Sabbathath with Mariabo (Marab), but on insufficient grounds. It has also been conjectured that the name may be a lengthened form of Saba (Sheba), a common appellation for cities in Arabia Felix. [Müller places Sabbathath at Sawa, lat. 16° 13' N., long. 48° 9' E.]

(29) The next place mentioned by our author

retires more and more, and there succeeds another very deep and far-stretching gulf, Sakhalitês by name, and also the frankincense country, which is mountainous and difficult of access, having a dense air loaded with vapours [and] the frankincense exhaled from the trees. These trees, which are not of any great size or height, yield their incense in the form of a concretion on the bark, just as several of our trees in Egypt exude gum. The incense is collected by the hand of the king's slaves, and malefactors condemned to this service as a punishment. The country is unhealthy in the extreme :—pestilential even to those who sail along the coast, and mortal to the poor wretches who gather the incense, who also suffer from lack of food, which readily cuts them off.

30. Now at this gulf is a promontory, the greatest in the world, looking towards the east,

---

after Kanê is a Bay called Sakhalitês, which terminates at Suagros, a promontory which looks eastward, and is the greatest cape in the whole world. There was much difference of opinion among the ancient geographers regarding the position of this Bay, and consequently regarding that of Cape Suagros.

(30) Some would identify the latter with Râs-el-Hâd, and others on account of the similarity of the name with Cape Saugra or Saukirah [lat. 18° 8' N., long. 56° 35' E.], where Ptolemy places a city Suagros at a distance of 6 degrees

and called Suagros, at which is a fortress which protects the country, and a harbour, and a magazine to which the frankincense which is collected is brought. Out in the open sea, facing this promontory, and lying between it and the promontory of Arômata, which projects from the opposite coast, though nearer to Suagros, is the island going by the name of Dioskoridês, which is of great extent, but

---

from Kanê. But Suagros is undoubtedly Ras Fartak [lat. 15° 39' N., long. 52° 15' E.], which is at a distance of 4 degrees from Hisn Ghorab, or Kanê, and which, rising to the height of 2,500 feet on a coast which is all low-lying, is a very conspicuous object, said to be discernible from a distance of 60 miles out at sea. Eighteen miles west from this promontory is a village called Saghar, a name which might probably have suggested to the Greeks that of Suagros. Consistent with this identification is the passage of Pliny (VI. 32) where he speaks of the island Dioscoridis (Sokotra) as distant from Suagros, which he calls the utmost projection of the coast, 2,240 stadia or 280 miles, which is only about 30 miles in excess of the real distance, 2,000 stadia.

With regard to the position of the Bay of Sakhalitês, Ptolemy, followed by Marcianus, places it to the East of Suagros. Marinus on the other hand, like the *Periplus*, places it to the west of it. Müller agrees with Fresnel in regarding Sakhlê, mentioned by Ptolemy (VI. vii. 41) as

desert and very moist, having rivers and crocodiles and a great many vipers, and lizards of enormous size, of which the flesh serves for food, while the grease is melted down and used as a substitute for oil. This island does not, however, produce either the grape or corn. The population, which is but scanty, inhabits the north side of the island—that part of it which looks towards the mainland (*of Arabia*). It

---

$1\frac{1}{2}$  degree East of Makalleh [lat.  $14^{\circ} 31' N.$ , long.  $49^{\circ} 7' W.$ ] as the same with Shehr—which is now the name of all that mountainous region extending from the seaport of Makalleh to the bay in which lie the islands of Kurya Murya. He therefore takes this to be in the Regio Sakhalitês, and rejects the opinion of Ptolemy as inconsistent with this determination. With regard to Shehr or Shehar [lat.  $14^{\circ} 38' N.$ , long.  $49^{\circ} 22' E.$ ] Yule (*M. Polo*, II. vol. p. 440, note) says: "Shihr or Shehr still exists on the Arabian Coast as a town and district about 330 miles east of Aden." The name Shehr in some of the oriental geographies includes the whole Coast up to Oman. The hills of the Shehr and Dhafâr districts were the great source of produce of the Arabian frankincense.

The island of Dioskoridês (now Sokotra) is placed by the *Periplus* nearer to Cape Suagros than to Cape Arômeta—although its distance from the former is nearly double the distance from the latter. The name, though in appearance a Greek one, is in reality of Sanskrit origin; from *Dvîpa Sukhâddra*, i.e. *insula fortunata*, 'Island abode

consists of an intermixture of foreigners, Arabs, Indians, and even Greeks, who resort hither for the purposes of commerce. The island produces the tortoise,—the genuine, the land, and the white sort: the latter very abundant, and distinguished for the largeness of its shell; also the mountain sort which is of extraordinary size and has a very thick shell, whereof the under-part cannot be used, being too hard to cut,

---

of Bliss.' The accuracy of the statements made regarding it in the *Periplus* is fully confirmed by the accounts given of it by subsequent writers. Kosmas, who wrote in the 6th century, says that the inhabitants spoke Greek, and that he met with people from it who were on their way to Ethiopia, and that they spoke Greek. "The ecclesiastical historian Nikephoros Kallistos," says Yule, "seems to allude to the people of Sokotra when he says that among the nations visited by the Missionary Theophilus in the time of Constantius, were 'the Assyrians on the verge of the outer Ocean, towards the East . . . whom Alexander the Great, after driving them from Syria, sent thither to settle, and to this day they keep their mother tongue, though all of the blackest, through the power of the sun's rays.' The Arab voyagers of the 9th century say that the island was colonized with Greeks by Alexander the Great, in order to promote the culture of the Sokotrine aloes; when the other Greeks adopted Christianity these did likewise, and they had continued to retain their profession of it. The colonizing by

while the serviceable part is made into money-boxes, tablets, escritaires, and ornamental articles of that description. It yields also the vegetable dye (*κυρδίσαι*) called Indicum (or Dragon's-blood), which is gathered as it distils from trees.

31. The island is subject to the king of the frankincense country, in the same way as Azania is subject to Kharibaël and the despot of Mopharitis. It used to be visited by some (*merchants*) from Mouza, and others on the homeward voyage from Limurikê and Barugaza would occasionally touch at it, importing rice, corn, Indian cotton and female-slaves, who, being rare, always commanded a ready market. In exchange for these commodities they would receive as fresh cargo great quantities of tortoise-shell. The revenues of the island are at the present day farmed out by its sovereigns, who, however, maintain a garrison in it for the protection of their interests.

---

Alexander is probably a fable, but invented to account for facts." (*Marco Polo* II. 401.) The aloe, it may be noted, is not mentioned in the *Periplus* as one of the products of the island. The islanders, though at one time Christians, are now Muhammadans, and subject as of yore to Arabia. The people of the interior are still of distinct race with curly hair, Indian complexion, and regular features. The coast people are mongrels of Arab and mixed descent. Probably in old times

32. Immediately after Suagros follows a gulf deeply indenting the mainland of Omana, and having a width of 600 stadia. Beyond it are high mountains, rocky and precipitous, and inhabited by men who live in caves. The range extends onward for 500 stadia, and beyond where it terminates lies an important harbour called Moskha, the appointed port to

---

civilization and Greek may have been confined to the littoral foreigners. Marco Polo notes that so far back as the 10th century it was one of the stations frequented by the Indian corsairs called Ba w â r i j, belonging to Kachh and Gujarat.

(32) Returning to the mainland the narrative conducts us next to Moskha, a seaport trading with Kanê, and a wintering place for vessels arriving late in the season from Malabar and the Gulf of Khambât. The distance of this place from Suagros is set down at upwards of 1,100 stadia, 600 of which represent the breadth of a bay which begins at the Cape, and is called Omana Al-Kamar. The occurrence of the two names Omana and Moskha in such close connexion led D'Anville to suppose that Moskha is identical with Maskat, the capital of Oman, the country lying at the south-east extremity of Arabia, and hence that Ras-el-Had, beyond which Maskat lies, must be Cape Suagros. This supposition is, however, untenable, since the identification of Moskha with the modern Ausera is complete. For, in the first place, the Bay of Seger, which begins at Cape Fartak, is of exactly the same measure-

which the *Sakhalitik* frankincense is forwarded. It is regularly frequented by a number of ships from Kanê; and such ships as come from Limurikê and Barugaza too late in the season put into harbour here for the winter, where they dispose of their muslins, corn, and oil to the king's officers, receiving in exchange frankincense, which lies in piles throughout the

---

ment across to Cape Thurbot Ali as the Bay of O m a n a, and again the distance from Cape Thurbot Ali [lat.  $16^{\circ} 38' N.$ , long.  $53^{\circ} 3' E.$ ] to Ras-al-Sair, the A u s a r a of Ptolemy, corresponds almost as exactly to the distance assigned by our author from the same Cape to M o s k h a. Moreover Pliny (XII. 35) notices that one particular kind of incense bore the name of *Ausaritis*, and, as the *Periplus* states that M o s k h a was the great emporium of the incense trade, the identification is satisfactory.

There was another Moskha on this coast which was also a port. It lay to the west of Suagros, and has been identified with K e s h i n [lat.  $15^{\circ} 21' N.$  long.  $51^{\circ} 39' E.$ ]. Our author, though correct in his description of the coast, may perhaps have erred in his nomenclature; and this is the more likely to have happened as it scarcely admits of doubt that he had no personal knowledge of South Arabia beyond Kanê and Cape Suagros. Besides no other author speaks of an Omana so far to westward as the position assigned to the Bay of that name. The tract immediately beyond M o s k h a or Ausera is low and fertile,



whole of Sakhalitis without a guard to protect it, as if the locality were indebted to some divine power for its security. Indeed, it is impossible to procure a cargo, either publicly or by connivance, without the king's permission. Should one take furtively on board were it but a single grain, his vessel can by no possibility escape from harbour.

---

and is called D o f a r or Zhafâr, after a famous city now destroyed, but whose ruins are still to be traced between Al-hâfâh and Addahariz. "This Dhafâr," says Yule (*Marco Polo* II. p. 442 note) "or the bold mountain above it, is supposed to be the Sephar of *Genesis* X. 30." It is certain that the Himyarites had spread their dominion as far eastward as this place. Marco Polo thus describes Dhafâr:—"It stands upon the sea, and has a very good haven, so that there is a great traffic of shipping between this and India; and the merchants take hence great numbers of Arab horses to that market, making great profits thereby. . . . Much white incense is produced here, and I will tell you how it grows. The trees are like small fir-trees; these are notched with a knife in several places, and from these notches the incense is exuded. Sometimes, also, it flows from the tree without any notch, this is by reason of the great heat of the sun there." Müller would identify M o s k h a with Zhafâr, and accounts for the discrepancy of designation by supposing that our author had confounded the name M a s k a t, which was the great seat of the traffic in frankincense with

33. From the port of *Moskha* onward to *Asikh*, a distance of about 1,500 stadia, runs a range of hills pretty close to the shore, and at its termination there are seven islands bearing the name of *Zênobios*, beyond which again we come to another barbarous district not subject to any power in Arabia, but to Persis. If when sailing by this coast you stand well out

---

the name of the greatest city in the district which actually produced it. A similar confusion he thinks transferred the name of Oman to the same part of the country. The climate of the incense country is described as being extremely unhealthy, but its unhealthiness seems to have been designedly exaggerated.

(33) Beyond *Moskha* the coast is mountainous as far as *Asikh* and the islands of *Zenobios*—a distance excessively estimated at 1,500 stadia. The mountains referred to are 5,000 feet in height, and are those now called *Subaha*. *Asikh* is readily to be identified with the *Hâsek* of Arabian geographers. *Edrisi* (I. p. 54) says: "Thence (from *Marbat*) to the town of *Hâsek* is a four days' journey and a two days' sail. Before *Hâsek* are the two islands of *Khartan* and *Martan*. Above *Hâsek* is a high mountain named *Sous*, which commands the sea. It is an inconsiderable town but populous." This place is now in ruins, but has left its name to the promontory on which it stood [*Râs Hâsek*, lat. 17° 23' N. long. 55° 20' E. opposite the island of *Hasiki*]. The islands of *Zênobios* are mentioned by *Ptolemy* as seven in

to sea so as to keep a direct course, then at about a distance from the island of Zênobios of 2,000 stadia you arrive at another island, called that of Sarapis, lying off shore, say, 120 stadia. It is about 200 stadia broad and 600 long, possessing three villages inhabited by a *savage* tribe of Ikhtyophagoi, who speak the Arabic language, and whose clothing con-

---

number, and are those called by Edrisi Khartan and Martan, now known as the Kuriyân Muriyân islands. The inhabitants belonged to an Arab tribe which was spread from Hasek to Râs-el-Had, and was called Beit or Beni Jenabi, whence the Greek name. M. Polo in the 31st chapter of his travels "discourseth of the two islands called Male and Female," the position of which he vaguely indicates by saying that "when you leave the kingdom of Kesmacoran (Mekran) which is on the mainland, you go by sea some 500 miles towards the south, and then you find the 2 islands Male and Female lying about 30 miles distant from one another" (See also *Marco Polo*, vol. II. p. 396 note.)

Beyond Asikh is a district inhabited by barbarians, and subject not to Arabia but to Persia. Then succeeds at a distance of 200 stadia beyond the islands of Zenobios the island of Sarapis, (the Ogyris of Pliny) now called Masira [lat. 20° 10' to 20° 42' N., long. 58° 37' to 58° 59' E.] opposite that part of the coast where Oman now begins. The *Periplus* exaggerates both its breadth and its distance from the continent. It was still in-

sists of a girdle made from the leaves of the cocoa-palm. The island produces in great plenty tortoise of excellent quality, and the merchants of Kanê accordingly fit out little boats and cargo-ships to trade with it.

34. If sailing onward you wind round with the adjacent coast to the north, then as you approach the entrance of the Persian Gulf you

---

habited by a tribe of fish-caters in the time of Ebn Batuta, by whom it was visited.

On proceeding from Sarapis the adjacent coast bends round, and the direction of the voyage changes to north. The great cape which forms the south-eastern extremity of Arabia called Râs-el-Ĥad [lat.  $22^{\circ} 33'$  N. long.  $59^{\circ} 48'$  E.] is here indicated, but without being named; Ptolemy calls it Korodamon (VI. vii. 11.)

(34) Beyond it, and near the entrance to the Persian Gulf, occurs, according to the *Periplus*, a group of many islands, which lie in a range along the coast over a space of 2,000 stadia, and are called the islands of Kalaiou. Here our author is obviously in error, for there are but three groups of islands on this coast, which are not by any means near the entrance of the Gulf. They lie beyond Maskat [lat.  $23^{\circ} 38'$  N. long.  $58^{\circ} 36'$  E.] and extend for a considerable distance along the Batinah coast. The central group is that of the Daymâniyeh islands (probably the Damnia of Pliny) which are seven in number, and lie nearly opposite Birkeh [lat.  $23^{\circ} 42'$  N. long.  $57^{\circ} 55'$  E.]. The error, as Müller suggests, may be accounted

fall in with a group of islands which lie in a range along the coast for 2,000 stadia, and are called the islands of Kalaïou. The inhabitants of the adjacent coast are cruel and treacherous, and see imperfectly in the day-time.

35. Near the last headland of the islands of Kalaïou is the mountain called Kalon

---

for by supposing that the tract of country called El Baṭinah was mistaken for islands. This tract, which is very low and extremely fertile, stretches from Birkch [lat.  $23^{\circ} 42'$  N. long.  $57^{\circ} 55'$  E.] onward to Jibba, where high mountains approach the very shore, and run on in an unbroken chain to the mouth of the Persian Gulf. The islands are not mentioned by any other author, for the Calacou insulae of Pliny (VI. xxxii. 150) must, to avoid utter confusion, be referred to the coast of the Arabian Gulf. There is a place called El Kilhât, the Akilla of Pliny [lat.  $22^{\circ} 40'$  N. long.  $59^{\circ} 24'$  E.]—but whether this is connected with the Kalaïou islands of the *Periplus* is uncertain [Conf. *Ind. Ant.* vol. IV. p. 48. El Kilhât, south of Maskat and close to Şûr, was once a great port.]

(35) Before the mouth of the Persian Gulf is reached occurs a height called Kalon (Fair Mount) at the last head of the islands of Papias—*τῶν Παπίου νήσων*. This reading has been altered by Fabricius and Schwanboeck to *τῶν Καλαίου νήσων*. The Fair Mount, according to Vincent, would answer sufficiently to Cape Fillam, if

(Pulcher),<sup>20</sup> to which succeeds, at no great distance, the mouth of the Persian Gulf, where there are very many pearl fisheries. On the left of the entrance, towering to a vast height, are the mountains which bear the name of Asaboi, and directly opposite

---

that be high land, and not far from Fillam are the straits. The great cape which Arabia protrudes at these straits towards Karmania is now called Ras Mussendom. It was seen from the opposite coast by the expedition under Nearkhos, to whom it appeared to be a day's sail distant. The height on that coast is called Semiramis, and also Strongylê from its round shape. Mussendom, the 'Asabôn akron' of Ptolemy, Vincent says, "is a sort of Lizard Point to the Gulf; for all the Arabian ships take their departure from it with some ceremonies of superstition, imploring a blessing on their voyage, and setting afloat a toy like a vessel rigged and decorated, which if it is dashed to pieces by the rocks is to be accepted by the ocean as an offering for the escape of the vessel." [The straits between the island of Mussendom and the mainland are called El Bab, and this is the origin of the name of the Papiæ islands.—Miles' *Jour. R. A. Soc.* N. S. vol. x. p. 168.]

The actual width of the straits is 40 miles. Pliny gives it at 50, and the *Periplus* at 75. Cape Mussendom is represented in the *Periplus* as in

---

<sup>20</sup> "This" (Mons Pulcher) says Major-General Miles, "is Jebel Lahrim or Shaum, the loftiest and most conspicuous peak on the whole cape (Mussendom), being nearly 7,000 feet high."—*Jour. R. As. Soc.* (N.S.) vol. X. p. 168.—Ed.

on the right you see another mountain high and round, called the hill of Semiramis. The strait which separates them has a width of 600 stadia, and through this opening the Persian Gulf pours its vast expanse of waters far up into the interior. At the very head of this gulf

---

Ptolemy by the Mountains of the Asabi which are described as tremendous heights, black, grim, and abrupt. They are named from the tribe of Beni Asab.

We enter now the Gulf itself, and here the *Periplus* mentions only two particulars: the famous Pearl Fisheries which begin at the straits and extend to Bahrein, and the situation of a regular trading mart called Apologos, which lies at the very head of the Gulf on the Euphrates, and in the vicinity of Spasinou Kharax. This place does not appear to be referred to in any other classical work, but it is frequently mentioned by Arabian writers under the name of Oboleh or Obolegh. As an emporium it took the place of Terêdôn or Diridôtis, just as Basra (below which it was situated) under the second Khaliphate took the place of Oboleh itself. According to Vincent, Oboleh, or a village that represents it, still exists between Basra and the Euphrates. The canal also is called the canal of Oboleh. Kharax Pasinou was situated where the Karun (the Eulæus of the ancients) flows into the Pasitigris, and is represented by the modern trading town Muhammarah. It was founded by Alexander the Great, and after its

there is a regular mart of commerce, called the city of Apologos, situate near Pasinou-Kharax and the river Euphrates.

36. If you coast along the mouth of the gulf you are conducted by a six days' voyage to another seat of trade belonging to Persis, called Omana.<sup>21</sup> Barugaza maintains a regular commercial intercourse with both these Persian

---

destruction, was rebuilt by Antiokhos Epiphanes, who changed its name from Alexandria to Antiocheia. It was afterwards occupied by an Arab Chief called Pasines, or rather Spasines, who gave it the name by which it is best known. Pliny states that the original town was only 10 miles from the sea, but that in his time the existing place was so much as 120 miles from it. It was the birth-place of two eminent geographers—Dionysius Periegetes and Isidôros.

(36) After this cursory glance at the great gulf, our author returns to the straits, and at once

---

<sup>21</sup> "The city of Omana is Sohar, the ancient capital of Omana, which name, as is well known, it then bore, and Pliny is quite right in correcting *former writers* who had placed it in Caramania, on which coast there is no good evidence that there was a place of this name. Nearchus does not mention it, and though the author of the *Periplus of the Erythraean Sea* does locate it in Persis, it is pretty evident he never visited the place himself, and he must have mistaken the information he obtained from others. It was this city of Sohar most probably that bore the appellation of Emporium Persarum, in which, as Philostorgius relates, permission was given to Theophilus, the ambassador of Constantine, to erect a Christian church." The *Homua* of Pliny may be a repetition of *Omana* or *Sohar*, which he had already mentioned.—Miles in *Jour. R. As. Soc.* (N. S.) vol. X. pp. 164-5.—Ed.



ports, despatching thither large vessels freighted with copper, sandalwood, beams for rafters, horn, and logs of sasamina and ebony. Omana imports also frankincense from Kané, while it exports to Arabia a particular species of vessels called *madara*, which have their planks sewn together. But both from Apologos and Omana there are exported to Barugaza and to Arabia great quantities of pearl, of mean quality however compared with the Indian sort, together with purple, cloth for the natives, wine, dates in great quantity, and gold and slaves.

37. After leaving the district of Omana

conducts us to the Eastern shores of the Erythraean, where occurs another emporium belonging to Persis, at a distance from the straits of 6 courses or 3,000 stadia. This is Omana. It is mentioned by Pliny (VI. xxxii. 149) who makes it belong to Arabia, and accuses preceding writers for placing it in Karmania.

The name of Omana has been corrupted in the MSS. of Ptolemy into Nommana, Nombana, Kommana, Kombana, but Marcian has preserved the correct spelling. From Omana as from Apologos great quantities of pearl of an inferior sort were exported to Arabia and Barugaza. No part however of the produce of India is mentioned as among its exports, although it was the centre of commerce between that country and Arabia.

(37) The district which succeeds Omana belongs to the Parsidai, a tribe in Gedrosia next neigh-

the country of the Parsidai succeeds, which belongs to another government, and the bay which bears the name of Tera b d o i, from the midst of which a cape projects. Here also is a river large enough to permit the entrance of ships, with a small mart at its mouth called Oraia. Behind it in the interior, at the distance of a seven days' journey from the coast, is the city where the king resides, called Rhambakia. This district, in addition to corn, produces wine, rice, and dates, though in the tract near the sea, only the fragrant gum called bdellium.

---

bours to the Arbitae on the East. They are mentioned by Ptolemy (VI. xx., p. 439) and by Arrian (*Indika* xxvi.) who calls them Pasirees, and notes that they had a small town called Pasira, distant about 60 stadia from the sea, and a harbour with good anchorage called Bagisara. The Promontory of the *Periplûs* is also noted and described as projecting far into the sea, and being high and precipitous. It is the Cape now called Arabah or Urmarah. The Bay into which it projects is called Tera b dôn, a name which is found only in our author. Vincent erroneously identifies this with the Paragôn of Ptolemy. It is no doubt the Bay which extends from Cape Guadel to Cape Monze. The river which enters this Bay, at the mouth of which stood the small mart called Oraia, was probably that which is now called the Akbor. The royal city

38. After this region, where the coast is already deeply indented by gulfs caused by the land advancing with a vast curve from the east, succeeds the seaboard of Skythia, a region which extends to northward. It is very low and flat, and contains the mouths of the Sinthos (Indus), the largest of all the rivers which fall into the Erythraean Sea, and which, indeed, pours into it such a vast body of water that while you are yet far off from the land at its mouth you find the sea turned of a white colour by its waters.

The sign by which voyagers before sighting

---

which lay inland from the sea a seven days' journey was perhaps, as Mannert has conjectured, Ram bakia, mentioned by Arrian (*Anab.* vi. 21) as the capital of the Oreitai or Horitai.

(38) We now approach the mouths of the Indus which our author calls the Sinthos, transliterating the native name of it—Sindhū. In his time the wide tract which was watered by this river in the lower part of its course was called Indoskythia. It derived its name from the Skythian tribes (the Śāka of Sansk.) who after the overthrow of the Graeco-Bactrian empire gradually passed southward to the coast, where they established themselves about the year 120 B. C., occupying all the region between the Indus and the Narmadā. They are called by Dionysios Periegetes Notioi Skythai, the Southern Skythians. Our author mentions two cities which

land know that it is near is their meeting with serpents floating on the water; but higher up and on the coasts of Persia the first sign of land is seeing them of a different kind, called *graii*. [Sansk. *graha*—an alligator.] The river has seven mouths, all shallow, marshy and unfit for navigation except only the middle stream, on which is *Barbarikon*, a trading seaport. Before this town lies a small islet, and behind it in the interior is *Minna-gar*, the metropolis of Skythia, which is governed, however, by Parthian princes, who are perpetually at strife among themselves, expelling each the other.

39. Ships accordingly anchor near *Barbarikê*, but all their cargoes are conveyed by the river up to the king, who resides in the metropolis.

The articles imported into this emporium are—  
ἱματισμὸς ἁπλοῦς ἱκανός—Clothing, plain and in considerable quantity.

---

belonged to them—*Barbarikon* and *Minna-gar*; the former of which was an emporium situated near the sea on the middle and only navigable branch of the Indus. Ptolemy has a *Barbarei* in the Delta, but the position he assigns to it, does not correspond with that of *Barbarikon*. *Minna-gar* was the Skythian metropolis. It lay inland, on or near the banks of the Indus.

(39) Ships did not go up to it but remained at *Barbarikon*, their cargoes being conveyed up the river in small boats. In Ptolemy (VII. i. 61)

ἱματισμός νόθος ὃν πολὺς—Clothing, mixed, not much.

Πολύμιτα—Flowered cottons.

Χρυσόλιθον—Yellow-stone, topazes.

Κοράλλιον—Coral.

Στύραξ—Storax.

Λίβανος—Frankincense (*Lódān*).

Ἐσκέυα—Glass vessels.

Ἀργυρώματα—Silver plate.

Χρῆμα—Specie.

Οἶνος οὐ πολὺς—Wine, but not much.

The exports are :—

Κόστος—Costus, a spice.

Βδέλλα—Bdellium, a gum.

Λύκιον—A yellow dye (*Ruzóí*).

Νάρδος—Spikenard.

Λίθος καλλιᾶνος—Emeralds or green-stones.

Σάπφειρος—Sapphires.

Σηρικὰ δέρματα—Furs from China.

Ὀθόνιον—Cottons.

Νῆμα Σηρικόν—Silk thread.

Ἰνδικὸν μέλαν—Indigo.

---

the form of the name is *B i n a g a r a*, which is less correct since the word is composed of *Min*, the Indian name for the Skythians, and *nagar*, a city. Ritter considers that *Ἐθαθα* is its modern representative, since it is called *Saminagar* by the *Jâdeja* Rajputs who, though settled in *Kachh*, derive their origin from that city. To this view it is objected that *Ἐθαθα* is not near the position which Ptolemy assigns to his *B i n a g a r a*. *Mannert* places it at *B a k k a r*, *D'Anville* at *M a n s u r a*, and *Vincent* at *M e n h a b e r y* mentioned

Ships destined for this port put out to sea when the Indian monsoon prevails—that is, about the month of July or Epiphi. The voyage at this season is attended with danger, but being shorter is more expeditious.

by Edrisi (I. p. 164) as distant two stations or 60 miles from D a b i l, which again was three stations or 90 miles from the mouth of the Indus, that is it lay at the head of the Delta. Our author informs us that in his time M i n a g a r was ruled by Parthian princes. The Parthians (the Parada of Sanskrit writers) must therefore have subverted a Skythian dynasty which must have been that which (as Benfey has shown) was founded by Y e u k a o t s c h i n between the years 30 and 20 B.C.; or about 30 years only after the famous Indian Æra called *Śakābda* (the year of the Śāka) being that in which Vikramāditya expelled the Skythians from Indian soil. The statement of the *Periplus* that Parthian rulers succeeded the Skythian is confirmed by Parthian coins found everywhere in this part of the country. These sovereigns must have been of consequence, or the trade of their country very lucrative to the merchant as appears by the presents necessary to ensure his protection—plate, musical instruments, handsome girls for the Harem, the best wine, plain cloth of high price, and the finest perfumes. The profits of the trade must therefore have been great, but if Pliny's account be true, that every pound laid out in India produced a hundred at Rome, greater exactions than these might easily have been supported.

40. After the river *Sinthos* is passed we reach another gulf, which cannot be easily seen. It has two divisions,—the Great and the Little by name,—both shoal with violent and continuous eddies extending far out from the shore, so that before ever land is in sight ships are often grounded on the shoals, or being caught within the eddies are lost. Over this gulf hangs a promontory which, curving from *Eirion* first to the east, then to the south, and finally to the west, encompasses the gulf called *Barakê*, in the bosom of which lie seven islands. Should a vessel approach the entrance of this gulf, the only chance of escape for those on board is at once to alter their course and stand out to sea, for it is all over with them if they are once fairly within the womb of *Barakê*,

---

(40) The first place mentioned after the Indus is the Gulf of *Eirion*, a name of which traces remain in the modern appellation the *Ran* of *Kachh*. This is no longer covered with water except during the monsoon, when it is flooded by sea water or by rains and inundated rivers. At other seasons it is not even a marsh, for its bed is hard, dry and sandy; a mere saline waste almost entirely devoid of herbage, and frequented but by one quadruped—the wild ass. Burnes conjectured that its desiccation resulted from an upheaval of the earth caused by one of those earthquakes which are so common in that part of India. The *Ran* is connected with the Gulf of *Kachh*,

which surges with vast and mighty billows, and where the sea, tossing in violent commotion, forms eddies and impetuous whirlpools in every direction. The bottom varies, presenting in places sudden shoals, in others being scabrous with jagged rocks, so that when an anchor grounds its cable is either at once cut through, or soon broken by friction at the bottom. The sign by which voyagers know they are approaching this bay is their seeing serpents floating about on the water, of extraordinary size and of a black colour, for those met with lower down and in the neighbourhood of Barugaza are of less size, and in colour green and golden.

41. To the gulf of Barakê succeeds that

which our author calls the Gulf of Barakê. His account of it is far from clear. Perhaps, as Müller suggests, he comprehended under Eirion the interior portion of the Gulf of Kachh, limiting the Gulf of Barakê to the exterior portion or entrance to it. This gulf is called that of Kanthi by Ptolemy, who mentions Barakê only as an island, [and the south coast of Kachh is still known by the name of Kantha]. The islands of the *Periplus* extend westward from the neighbourhood of Navanagar to the very entrance of the Gulf.

(41) To Barakê succeeds the Gulf of Barugaza (Gulf of Khambhât) and the sea-board of the region called Ariakê. The reading of the MS. here *ἡ πρὸς Ἀραβικῆς χώρας* is considered corrupt. Müller substitutes *ἡ ἡπειρος τῆς Ἀριακῆς*



of Barugaza and the mainland of Ariakê, a district which forms the frontier of the kingdom of Mombaros and of all India. The interior part of it which borders on Skythia is called Abêria, and its sea-board Suratrênê. It is a region which produces abundantly corn and rice and the oil of sesamum, butter, muslins and the coarser fabrics which are

---

χώρας, though Mannert and others prefer Λαρικῆς χώρας, relying on Ptolemy, who places Ariakê to the south of Larikê, and says that Larikê comprehends the peninsula (of Gujarât) Barugaza and the parts adjacent. As Ariakê was however previously mentioned in the *Periplus* (sec. 14) in connexion with Barugaza, and is afterwards mentioned (sec. 54) as trading with Muziris, it must no doubt have been mentioned by the author in its proper place, which is here. [Bhagvanlâl Indrajî Pandit has shewn reasons however for correcting the readings into Αβαρικη, the Prakrit form of A par ântikâ, an old name of the western sea board of India.—*Ind. Ant.* vol. VII., pp. 259, 263.] Regarding the name Larikê, Yule has the following note (*Travels of M. Polo* vol. II., p. 353):—"Lâr-Deśa, the country of Lar," properly Lât-deśa, was an early name for the territory of Gujrat and the northern Konkan, embracing Saimur (the modern Chaul as I believe) Thana, and Bharoch. It appears in Ptolemy in the form Larikê. The sea to the west of that coast was in the early Muhammadan times called the sea of Lâr, and the language spoken on its shores is

manufactured from Indian cotton. It has also numerous herds of cattle. The natives are men of large stature and coloured black. The metropolis of the district is *Minnagar*, from which

---

called by *Mas'udi*, *Lâri*. *Abulfeda's* authority, *Ibn Said*, speaks of *Lâr* and *Gujarât* as identical."

*Ariakê* (*Aparântikâ*), our author informs us, was the beginning or frontier of India. That part of the interior of *Ariakê* which bordered on *Skythia* was called *Aberia* or *Abiria* (in the MS. erroneously *Ibêria*). The corresponding Indian word is *Abhîra*, which designated the district near the mouths of the river. Having been even in very early times a great seat of commerce, some (as *Lassen*) have been led to think from a certain similarity of the names that this was the *Ophir* of scripture, a view opposed by *Ritter*. *Abiria* is mentioned by *Ptolemy*, who took it to be not a part of India but of *Indoskythia*. The sea-board of *Ariakê* was called *Surastrênê*, and is mentioned by *Ptolemy*, who says (VII. i. 55) it was the region about the mouths of the *Indus* and the *Gulf of Kanthi*. It answers to the Sanskrit *Surâshtra*. Its capital was *Minnagar*,—a city which, as its name shows, had once belonged to the *Min* or *Skythians*. It was different of course from the *Minnagar* already mentioned as the capital of *Indo-Skythia*. It was situated to the south of *Ozênê* (*Ujjayint*, or *Ujjain*), and on the road which led from that city to the River *Narmadâ*, probably near where *Indôr* now stands. It must have been the capital only for a short time, as *Ptolemy* informs us (II. i. 63) that *Ozênê* was in his time the

cotton cloth is exported in great quantity to Barugaza. In this part of the country there are preserved even to this very day memorials of the expedition of Alexander, old temples, foundations of camps, and large wells. The extent of this coast, reckoned from Barbarikon to the promontory called Papikê, near Astakapra, which is opposite Barugaza, is 3,000 stadia.

---

capital of Tiashanes [probably the Chashtana of Coins and the Cave Temple inscriptions]. From both places a great variety of merchandise was sent down the Narmadâ to Barugaza.

The next place our author mentions is a promontory called Papikê projecting into the Gulf of Khambât from that part of the peninsula of Gujarât which lies opposite to the Barugaza coast. Its distance from Barbarikon on the middle mouth of the Indus is correctly given at 3,000 stadia. This promontory is said to be near Astakapra, a place which is mentioned also by Ptolemy, and which (*Ind. Ant.* vol. V. p. 314) has been identified by Colonel Yule with Hastakavapra (now Hâthab near Bhaunagar), a name which occurs in a copper-plate grant of Dhruvasena I of Valabhi. With regard to the Greek form of this name Dr. Bühler thinks it is not derived immediately from the Sanskrit, but from an intermediate old Prakrit word Hastakampra, which had been formed by the contraction of the syllables *ava* to *a*, and the insertion of a nasal, according to the habits of the Gujarâtis. The loss of the

42. After Papikê there is another gulf, exposed to the violence of the waves and running up to the north. Near its mouth is an island called Baiônês, and at its very head it receives a vast river called the Mais. Those bound for Barugaza sail up this gulf (which has a breadth of about 300 stadia), leaving the island on the left till it is scarcely visible in the horizon, when they shape their course east for the mouth of the river that leads to Barugaza. This is called the Namnadios.

initial, he adds, may be explained by the difficulty which Gujarâtis have now and probably had 1,600 years ago in pronouncing the *spirans* in its proper place. The modern name Hâthab or Hâthap may be a corruption of the shorter Sanskrit form Hastavapra.

(42) Beyond Papikê, we are next informed, there is another gulf running northward into the interior of the country. This is not really another Gulf but only the northern portion of the Gulf of Khambât, which the *Periplus* calls the Gulf of Barugaza. It receives a great river, the Mais, which is easily identified with the Mahi, and contains an island called Baiônês [the modern Peram], which you leave on the left hand as you cross over from Astakapra to Barugaza.

We are now conducted to Barugaza, the greatest seat of commerce in Western India, situated on a river called in the MS. of the *Periplus* the Lamnaios, which is no doubt an erroneous reading for Namados, or Namnados or Namna-

43. The passage into the gulf of Barugaza is narrow and difficult of access to those approaching it from the sea, for they are carried either to the right or to the left, the left being the better passage of the two. On the right, at the very entrance of the gulf, lies a narrow stripe of shoal, rough and beset with rocks. It is called *Hêrônê*, and lies opposite the village of *Kammôni*. On the left side right against this is the promontory of *Papikê*, which lies in front of *Astakapra*, where it is difficult to anchor, from the strength of the current and because the cables are cut through by the sharp rocks at the bottom. But even if the passage into the gulf is secured the mouth of the Barugaza river is not easy to hit, since the coast is low and there are no certain marks to be seen until you are close upon them. Neither, if it is discovered, is it easy to enter, from the presence of shoals at the mouth of the river.

---

dios. This river is the *Narmadâ*. It is called by Ptolemy the *Namadês*.

(43) Barugaza (*Bharoch*) which was 30 miles distant from its mouth, was both difficult and dangerous of access; for the entrance to the Gulf itself was, on the right, beset with a perilous stripe (*tainia*) of rocky shoal called *Hêrônê*, and on the left, (which was the safer course,) the violent currents which swept round the promontory of *Papikê* rendered it unsafe to approach the shore or to cast anchor. The shoal of *Hêrônê* was opposite

44. For this reason native fishermen appointed by Government are stationed with well-manned long boats called *trappaga* and *kotumba* at the entrance of the river, whence they go out as far as *Surastrênê* to meet ships, and pilot them up to *Barugaza*. At the head of the gulf the pilot, immediately on taking charge of a ship, with the help of his own boat's crew, shifts her head to keep her clear of the shoals, and tows her from one fixed station to another, moving with the beginning of the tide, and dropping anchor at certain roadsteads and basins when it ebbs. These basins occur at points where the river is deeper than usual, all the way up to *Barugaza*, which is 300 stadia distant from the mouth of the river if you sail up the stream to reach it.

45. India has everywhere a great abundance of rivers, and her seas ebb and flow with tides of extraordinary strength, which increase with

---

a village on the mainland called *Kammônî*, the *Kamanê* of Ptolemy (VII. i.), who however places it to the north of the river's mouth. Again, it was not only difficult to hit the mouth of the river, but its navigation was endangered by sandbanks and the violence of the tides, especially the high tide called the 'Bore,' of which our author gives a description so particular and so vivid as suffices to show that he was describing what he had seen with his own eyes, and seen moreover for the first time. With regard to the name

the moon, both when new and when full, and for three days after each, but fall off in the intermediate space. About Barugaza they are more violent than elsewhere; so that all of a sudden you see the depths laid bare, and portions of the land turned into sea, and the sea, where ships were sailing but just before, turned without warning into dry land. The rivers, again, on the access of flood tide rushing into their channels with the whole body of the sea, are driven upwards against their natural course for a great number of miles with a force that is irresistible.

46. This is the reason why ships frequenting this emporium are exposed, both in coming and going, to great risk, if handled by those who are unacquainted with the navigation of the gulf or visit it for the first time, since the impetuosity of the tide when it becomes full, having nothing to stem or slacken it, is such that

---

Barugaza the following passage, which I quote from Dr. Wilson's *Indian Castes* (vol. II. p. 113) will elucidate its etymology:—"The Bhārgavas derive their designation from Bhargava, the adjective form of Bhṛigu, the name of one of the ancient Rishis. Their chief habitat is the district of Bharoch, which must have got its name from a colony of the school of Bhṛigu having been early established in this Kshētra, probably granted to them by some conqueror of the district. In the name Barugaza given to it by Ptolemy, we have

anchors cannot hold against it. Large vessels, moreover, if caught in it are driven athwart from their course by the rapidity of the current till they are stranded on shoals and wrecked, while the smaller craft are capsized, and many that have taken refuge in the side channels, being left dry by the receding tide, turn over on one side, and, if not set erect on props, are filled upon the return of the tide with the very first head of the flood, and sunk. But at new moons, especially when they occur in conjunction with a night tide, the flood sets in with such extraordinary violence that on its beginning to advance, even though the sea be calm, its roar is heard by those living near the river's mouth, sounding like the tumult of battle heard far off, and soon after the sea with its hissing waves bursts over the bare shoals.

47. Inland from Barugaza the country is inhabited by numerous races—the Aratrioi,

---

a Greek corruption of Bhṛigukshêtra (the territory of Bhṛigu) or Bhṛigukachha (the tongue-land of Bhṛigu)." Speaking of the Bhārgavas Dr. Drummond, in his *Grammatical Illustrations*, says:—"These Brāhmanas are indeed poor and ignorant. Many of them, and other illiterate Gujarātis, would, in attempting to articulate Bhṛigushêtra, lose the half in coalescence, and call it Bargacha, whence the Greeks, having no *Ch*, wrote it Barugaza."

(47) The account of the 'bore' is followed by an



and the Arakhôsiôï, and the Gandaraioi, and the people of Proklaïs, in which is Boukephalos Alexandria. Beyond these are the Baktrianoï, a most warlike race, governed by their own independent sovereign. It was from these parts Alexander issued to invade India when he marched as far as the Ganges, without, however, attacking Limurikê and the southern parts of the country. Hence up to the present day old *drachmaï* bearing the

---

enumeration of the countries around and beyond Barugaza with which it had commercial relations. Inland are the Aratrioi, Arakhosioi, Gandarioi and the people of Proklais, a province wherein is Boukephalos Alexandria, beyond which is the Baktrian nation. It has been thought by some that by the Aratrioi are meant the Arii, by others that they were the Arâstrâs of Sanskrit called Aratti in the Prakrit, so that the Aratrioi of the *Periplus* hold an intermediate place between the Sanskrit and Prakrit form of the name. Müller however says "if you want a people known to the Greeks and Romans as familiarly as the well-known names of the Arakhosii, Gandarii, Peukelitæ, you may conjecture that the proper reading is ΔΡΑΤΤΩΝ instead of ΑΡΑΤΡΙΩΝ. It is an error of course on the part of our author when he places Boukephalos (a city built by Alexander on the banks of the Hydaspês, where he defeated Pôros), in the neighbourhood of Proklais, that is Pekhely in the neighbourhood of Peshawar. He makes a still more

Greek inscriptions of Apollodotos and Menander are current in Barugaza.

48. In the same region eastward is a city called Ozênê, formerly the capital wherein the king resided. From it there is brought down to Barugaza every commodity for the supply of the country and for export to our own markets—onyx-stones, porcelain, fine muslins, mallow-coloured muslins, and no small quantity of ordinary cottons. At the same time there is brought down to it from the upper country by way of Proklaïs, for transmission to the coast, Kattybourine, Patropapigic, and Kabalitic spikenard, and another kind which reaches it by way of the adjacent province of Skythia; also kostus and bdellium.

49. The imports of Barugaza are—

Οἶνος προηγουμένης Ἰταλικός—Wine, principally Italian.

Καὶ Λαοδικηνός καὶ Ἀραβικός—Laodikean wine and Arabian.

Χαλκός καὶ κασσίτερος καὶ μόλυβδος—Brass or Copper and Tin and Lead.

Κοράλλιον καὶ χρυσόλιθον—Coral and Gold-stone or Yellow-stone.

---

surprising error when he states that Alexander penetrated to the Ganges.

(48) The next place mentioned in the enumeration is Ozênê (Ujjain), which, receiving nard through Proklaïs from the distant regions where it was produced, passed it on to the coast for export to the Western World. This

Ἰματισμοὺς ἀπλοῦς καὶ νόθος πανταῖος—Cloth, plain and mixed, of all sorts.

Πολύμειται ζῶναι πηχυαῖαι—Variegated sashes half a yard wide.

Στύραξ—Storax.

Μελίλωτον—Sweet clover, melilot.

Ὑαλος ἀργή—White glass.

Σανδαράκη—Gum Sandarach.

Στίμμυ—(Stibium) Tincture for the eyes, —*Sármd.*

Δηνάριον χρυσοῦ καὶ ἀργυροῦν—Gold and Silver specie, yielding a profit when exchanged for native money.

Μύρον οὐ βαρύτιμον οὐδὲ πολὺ—Perfumes or unguents, neither costly nor in great quantity.

In those times, moreover, there were imported, as presents to the king, costly silver vases, instruments of music, handsome young women for concubinage, superior wine, apparel, plain but costly, and the choicest unguents. The exports from this part of the country are—

Νάρδος, κόστος, βδέλλα, ἐλέφας—Spikenard, costus, bdellium, ivory.

Ὀνυχίνη λιθία καὶ μουρρίνη—Onyx-stones and porcelain.

Λύκιον—*Ruzot*, Box-thorn.

---

aromatic was a product of three districts, whence its varieties were called respectively the *Kattybourine*, the *Patropapigic* and the *Kabolitic*. What places were indicated by the first two names cannot be ascertained, but the last points undoubtedly to the region round Kâbul, since its inhabitants are called by Ptolemy *Kabolitai*, and Edrisi uses the term *Myrobalanos Kabolinos*

Ὅθιον παντοῖον—Cottons of all sorts.

Σηρικόν—Silk.

Μολόχινον—Mallow-coloured cottons.

Νῆμα—Silk thread.

Πέπερι μακρόν—Long pepper and other articles supplied from the neighbouring ports.

The proper season to set sail for Barugaza from Egypt is the month of July, or Epiphi.

50. From Barugaza the coast immediately adjoining stretches from the north directly to the south, and the country is therefore called Dakhina badês, because Dakhan in the language of the natives signifies *south*. Of this country that part which lies inland towards the east comprises a great space of desert country, and large mountains abounding with all kinds of wild animals, leopards, tigers, elephants, huge snakes, hyenas, and baboons of many different sorts, and is inhabited right across to the Ganges by many and extremely populous nations.

---

for the 'myrobolans of Kâbul.' Nard, as Edrisi also observes, has its proper soil in Thibet.

(50) Barugaza had at the same time commercial relations with the Dekhan also. This part of India our author calls Dakhina badês, transliterating the word Dakshinâpatha—(the Dakshinâ, or the South Country). "Here," says Vincent, "the author of the *Periplus* gives the true direction of this western coast of the Peninsula, and states in direct terms its tendency to the South, while Ptolemy stretches out the whole angle to a straight line, and places the Gulf of

51. Among the marts in this South Country there are two of more particular importance—Paithana, which lies south from Barugaza, a distance of twenty days, and Tagara, ten days east of Paithana, the greatest city in the country. Their commodities are carried down on wagons to Barugaza along roads of extreme difficulty,—that is, from Paithana a great

---

Cambay almost in the same latitude as Cape Comorin.”

(51) In the interior of the Dekhan, the *Periplus* places two great seats of commerce, Paithana, 20 days' journey to the south of Barugaza, and Tagara, 10 days' journey eastward from Paithana. Paithana, which appears in Ptolemy as Baithana, may be identified with Paithana. Tagara is more puzzling. Wilford, Vincent, Mannert, Ritter and others identify it with Dêvâgiri or Deogarh, near Elurâ, about 8 miles from Aurangâbâd. The name of a place called Tagara-pura occurs in a copper grant of land which was found in the island of Salsette. There is however nothing to show that this was a name of Dêvâgiri. Besides, if Paithana be correctly identified, Tagara cannot be Dêvâgiri unless the distances and directions are very erroneously given in the *Periplus*. This is not improbable, and Tagara may therefore be Junnar (*i.e.* Jûna-nagar = *the old city*), which from its position must always have been an emporium, and its Buddha caves belong to about B. C. 100 to A. D. 150 (see *Archæolog. Surv. of West. India*, vol. III., and Elphinstone's *History of India*, p. 223).

quantity of onyx-stone, and from Tagara ordinary cottons in abundance, many sorts of muslins, mallow-coloured cottons, and other articles of local production brought into it from the parts along the coast. The length of the entire voyage as far as Limurikê is 700 stadia, and to reach Aigialos you must sail very many stadia further.

---

Our author introduces us next to another division of India, that called Limurikê, which begins, as he informs us, at a distance of 7,000 stadia (or nearly 900 miles) beyond Barugaza. This estimate is wide of the mark, being in fact about the distance between Barugaza and the southern or remote extremity of Limurikê. In the Indian segment of the Roman maps called from their discoverer, the *Peutinger Tables*, the portion of India to which this name is applied is called Damirikê. We can scarcely err, says Dr. Caldwell (*Dravid. Gram. Intr.* page 14), in identifying this name with the Tamil country. If so, the earliest appearance of the name Tamil in any foreign documents will be found also to be most perfectly in accordance with the native Tamil mode of spelling the name. Damirike evidently means *Damir-ike* . . . In another place in the same map a district is called Scytia Dymirice; and it appears to have been this word which by a mistake of Δ for Λ Ptolemy wrote *Λυμυρικη*. The D retains its place however in the *Cosmography* of the anonymous geographer of Ravenna, who repeatedly mentions Dimirica as one of the three divisions of India and the one furthest to the East.

52. The local marts which occur in order *along the coast* after Barugaza are Akabarou, Souppara, Kalliena, a city which was raised to the rank of a regular mart in the times of the elder Saraganes, but after

He shows also that the Tamil country must have been meant by the name by mentioning Modura as one of the cities it contained.

(52) Reverting to Barugaza our author next enumerates the less important emporia having merely a local trade which intervenes between it and Dimurikê. These are first Akabarou, Souppara, and Kalliena—followed by Semulla, Mandagora, Palaipatmai, Meligeizara, Buzantion, Toperon, and Turanosboas,—beyond which occurs a succession of islands, some of which give shelter to pirates, and of which the last is called Leukê or White Island. The actual distance from Barugaza to Naoura, the first port of Dimurikê, is 4,500 stadia.

To take these emporia in detail. Akabarou cannot be identified. The reading is probably corrupt. Between the mouths of the Namados and those of the Goaris, Ptolemy interposes Nousaripa, Poulipoula, Ariakê Sadinôn, and Soupara. Nausaripa is Nausari, about 18 miles to the south of Surat, and Soupara is Sûpârâ near Vasâi. Benfey, who takes it to be the name of a region and not of a city, regards it as the Ophir of the Bible—called in the Septuagint *Σαφνρά*. Sôphir, it may be added, is the Coptic name for India. Kalliena is now Kalyâna near

Sandanes became its master its trade was put under the severest restrictions; for if Greek vessels, even by accident, enter its ports, a guard is put on board and they are taken to Barugaza.

53. After Kalliena other local marts oc-

---

Bombay [which must have been an important place at an early date. It is named in the Kanhêri Bauddha Cave Inscriptions]. It is mentioned by Kosmas (p. 337), who states that it produced copper and sesamum and other kinds of logs, and cloth for wearing apparel. The name Sandanes, that of the Prince who sent Greek ships which happened to put into its port under guard to Barugaza, is thought by Benfey to be a territorial title which indicated that he ruled over Ariakê of the Sandineis. [But the older "Saraganes" probably indicates one of the great Śātakarni or Ândhrabhritya dynasty.] Ptolemy does not mention Kallienâ, though he supplies the name of a place omitted in the *Periplus*, namely Dounga (VII. i. 6) near the mouth of the river Bênda.

(53) Semulla (in Ptolemy Timoula and Simulla) is identified by Yule with Chênval or Chaul, a seaport 23 miles south of Bombay; [but Bhagvanlâl Indrajî suggests Chimûla in Trombay island at the head of the Bombay harbour; and this is curiously supported by one of the Kanhêri inscriptions in which Chemûla is mentioned, apparently as a large city, like Supârâ and Kalyâna, in the neighbourhood]. After Simulla Ptolemy mentions Hippokoura [possibly, as suggested by the same,



cur—Sêmulîa, Mandagora, Palaipatmai, Melizeigara, Buzantion, Toparon, and Turannosboas. You come next to the islands called Sêsekreienai and the island

a partial translation of Ghodabandar on the Choda nadi in the Thaṇa strait] and Baltipatna as places still in Ariakê, but Mandagara Buzanteion, Khersonêsos, Armagara, the mouths of the river Nanagouna, and an emporium called Nitra, as belonging to the Pirate Coast which extended to Dimurikê, of which Tundis, he says, is the first city. Ptolemy therefore agrees with our author in assigning the Pirate Coast to the tract of country between Bombay and Goa. This coast continued to be infested with pirates till so late a period as the year 1765, when they were finally exterminated by the British arms. Mandagara and Palaipatma may have corresponded pretty nearly in situation with the towns of Râjapur and Bankut. Yule places them respectively at Bankut and Debal. Melizeigara (Milizêguris or Milizigêris of Ptolemy, VII. i. 95), Vincent identifies with Jaygadh or Sidê Jaygadh. The same place appears in Pliny as Sigerus (VI. xxvi. 100). Buzantium may be referred to about Vijayadrug or Esvantgadh, Toparon may be a corrupt reading for Togaron, and may perhaps therefore be Devagadh which lies a little beyond Vijayadrug. Turannosboas is not mentioned elsewhere, but it may have been, as Yule suggests, the Bandâ or Tirakal river. Müller placed it at Acharê. The first island on this part of the coast is Sindhudrug near Mâlwan,

of the Aigidioi and that of the Kaineitai, near what is called the Khersonêsos, places in which are pirates, and after this the island Leukê (or 'the White'). Then follow Naoura

to which succeeds a group called the Burnt Islands, among which the Vingorla rocks are conspicuous. These are no doubt the Heptanêsia of Ptolemy (VII. i. 95), and probably the Sêsikrienai of the *Periplus*. The island Aigidion called that of the Aigidii may be placed at Goa, [but Yule suggests Angediva south of Sadašivagaḥ, in lat. 14° 45' N., which is better]. Kaineiton may be the island of St. George.

We come next to Naoura in Dimurikê. This is now Honâvar, written otherwise Onore, situated on the estuary of a broad river, the Śarâvatî, on which are the falls of Gêrsappa, one of the most magnificent and stupendous cataracts in the world. If the Nitra of Ptolemy (VII. i. 7) and the Nitria of Pliny be the same as Naoura, then these authors extend the pirate coast a little further south than the *Periplus* does. But if they do not, and therefore agree in their views as to where Dimurikê begins, the Nitra may be placed, Müller thinks, at Mirjan or Komta, which is not far north from Honavar. [Yule places it at Mangalur.] Müller regards the first supposition however as the more probable, and quotes at length a passage from Pliny (VI. xxvi. 104) referring thereto, which must have been excerpted from some *Periplus* like our author's, but not from it as some have thought. "To those bound for India it is most convenient to depart

and Tundis, the first marts of Limurikê, and after these Mouziris and Nelkunda, the seats of Government.

54. To the kingdom under the sway of

from Okelis. They sail thence with the wind Hipalus in 40 days to the first emporium of India, Muziris, which is not a desirable place to arrive at on account of pirates infesting the neighbourhood, who hold a place called Nitrias, while it is not well supplied with merchandize. Besides, the station for ships is at a great distance from the shore, and cargoes have both to be landed and to be shipped by means of little boats. There reigned there when I wrote this Caelobothras. Another port belonging to the nation is more convenient, Neacyndon, which is called Becare (*sic. codd.*, Barace, Harduin and Sillig). There reigned Pandion in an inland town far distant from the emporium called Modura. The region, however, from which they convey pepper to Becare in boats formed from single logs is Cottonara."

(54) With regard to the names in this extract which occur also in the *Periplus* the following passages quoted from Dr. Caldwell's *Dravidian Grammar* will throw much light. He says (Introd. p. 97):—"Muziris appears to be the Muziri of Muziri-kotta. Tyndis is Tunḍi, and the Kynda, of Nelkynda, or as Ptolemy has it, Melkynda, *i. e.* probably Western kingdom, seems to be Kanneṭtri, the southern boundary of Kêrala proper. One MS. of Pliny writes the second part of this word not *Cyndon* but *Canidon*. The first

Kēprobotras<sup>20</sup> Tundis is subject, a village of great note situate near the sea. Mouziris, which pertains to the same realm, is a city at the height of prosperity, frequented as it

of these places was identified by Dr. Gundert, for the remaining two we are indebted to Dr. Burnell.

"Cottonara, Pliny; Kottonarike, *Periplus*, the district where the best pepper was produced. It is singular that this district was not mentioned by Ptolemy. Cottonara was evidently the name of the district. *κοττοναρικον* the name of the pepper for which the district was famous. Dr. Buchanan identifies Cottonara with Kaḍatta-nāḍu, the name of a district in the Calicut country celebrated for its pepper. Dr. Burnell identifies it with Koḷatta-nāḍu, the district about Telli-cherry which he says is the pepper district. *Kadatta* in Malayālam means 'transport, conveyance,' *Nāḍu*, Tam.—Mal., means a district."

"The prince called Kērobothros by Ptolemy (VII. i. 86) is called Kēprobotros by the author of the *Periplus*. The insertion of  $\pi$  is clearly an error, but more likely to be the error of a copyist than that of the author, who himself had visited the territories of the prince in question. He is called Caēlobothras in Pliny's text, but one of the MSS. gives it more correctly as Celobotras. The name in Sanskrit, and in full is 'Keralaputra,' but both *kēra* and *kēla* are Dravidian abbreviations of *kēraḷa*. They are Malayālam however, not Tamil abbreviations, and the district over which Keralaputra ruled is that in which the Malayālam language is now

<sup>20</sup> *Ind. Ant.* vol. I. pp. 309-310.

is by ships from *Ariakê* and Greek ships from *Egypt*. It lies near a river at a distance from Tundis of 500 stadia, whether this is measured from river to river or by the length of the sea

---

spoken" (p. 95). From Ptolemy we learn that the capital of this prince was *Karoura*, which has been "identified with *Karûr*, an important town in the Koimbatur district originally included in the Chêra kingdom. *Karûr* means the black town. . . Ptolemy's word *Karoura* represents the Tamil name of the place with perfect accuracy." Nelkunda, our author informs us, was not subject to this prince but to another called *Pandiôn*. This name, says Dr. Caldwell, "is of Sanskrit origin, and *Pandæ*, the form which Pliny, after Megasthenes, gives in his list of the Indian nations, comes very near the Sanskrit. The more recent local information of Pliny himself, as well as the notices of Ptolemy and the *Periplus*, supply us with the Dravidian form of the word. The Tamil sign of the masc. sing. is *an*, and Tamil inserts *i* euphonicly after *nd*, consequently *Pandiôn*, and still better the plural form of the word *Pandiones*, faithfully represents the Tamil masc. sing. *Pāṇḍiyan*." In another passage the same scholar says: "The Sanskrit *Paṇḍya* is written in Tamil *Pāṇḍiya*, but the more completely tamilized form *Pāṇḍi* is still more commonly used all over southern India. I derive *Pāṇḍi*, as native scholars always derive the word, from the Sanskrit *Pāṇḍu*, the name of the father of the *Pāṇḍava* brothers." The capital of this prince, as Pliny has stated, was *Modura*, which is the Sanskrit *Mathurā* pro-

voyage, and it is 20 stadia distant from the mouth of its own river. The distance of Nelkunda from Mouziris is also nearly 500 stadia, whether measured from river to river or

---

nounced in the Tamil manner. The corresponding city in Northern India, Mathurā, is written by the Greeks Methora.

Nelkunda is mentioned by various authors under varying forms of the name. As has been already stated, it is Melkunda in Ptolemy, who places it in the country of the Aii. In the *Peutingerman Table* it is Nincylde, and in the Geographer of Ravenna, Nilcinna. At the mouth of the river on which it stands was its shipping port Bakare or Becare, according to Müller now represented by Markari (lat. 12° N.) Yule conjectures that it must have been between Kanetti and Kolum in Travancoré. Regarding the trade of this place we may quote a remark from Vincent. "We find," he says, "that throughout the whole which the *Periplus* mentions of India we have a catalogue of the exports and imports only at the two ports of Barugaza and Nelcynda, and there seems to be a distinction fixed between the articles appropriate to each. Fine muslins and ordinary cottons are the principal commodities of the first; tortoise shell, precious stones, silk, and above all pepper, seem to have been procurable only at the latter. This pepper is said to be brought to this port from Cottonara, famous to this hour for producing the best pepper in the world except that of Sumatra. The pre-eminence of these two ports will account for the little that is said of the others by the author, and why he has

by the sea voyage, but it belongs to a different kingdom, that of Pandion. It likewise is situate near a river and at about a distance from the sea of 120 stadia.

55. At the very mouth of this river lies

---

left us so few characters by which we may distinguish one from another."

Our author on concluding his account of Nelkunda interrupts his narrative to relate the incidents of the important discovery of the monsoon made by that Columbus of antiquity Hippalus. This account, Vincent remarks, naturally excites a curiosity in the mind to enquire how it should happen that the monsoon should have been noticed by Nearkhos, and that from the time of his voyage for 300 years no one should have attempted a direct course till Hippalus ventured to commit himself to the ocean. He is of opinion that there was a direct passage by the monsoons both in going to and coming from India in use among the Arabians before the Greeks adopted it, and that Hippalus frequenting these seas as a pilot or merchant, had met with Indian or Arabian traders who made their voyages in a more compendious manner than the Greeks, and that he collected information from them which he had both the prudence and courage to adopt, just as Columbus, while owing much to his own nautical experience and fortitude was still under obligations to the Portuguese, who had been resolving the great problems in the art of navigation for almost a century previous to his expedition.

(55) Nelkunda appears to have been the

another village, Bakarê, to which the ships despatched from Nelkunda come down *empty* and ride at anchor off shore while taking in cargo: for the river, it may be noted, has sunken reefs and shallows which make its navigation difficult. The sign by which those who come hither by sea know they are nearing land is their meeting with snakes, which are here of a black colour, not so long as those already mentioned, like serpents about the head, and with eyes the colour of blood.

56. The ships which frequent these ports are of a large size, on account of the great amount and bulkiness of the pepper and betel of which their lading consists. The imports here are principally—

Χρήματα πλείστα—Great quantities of specie.

Χρυσόλιθα—(Topaz?) Gold-stone, Chrysolite.

Ἰματισμὸς ἀπλοῦς οὐ πολὺς—A small assortment of plain cloth.

Πολύμιτα—Flowered robes.

Στίμμι, κοράλλιον—Stibium, a pigment for the eyes, coral.

Ὕαλος ἀργή χαλκός—White glass, copper or brass.

Κασσίτερος, μόλυβδος—Tin, lead.

Οἶνος οὐ πολὺς, ὥσεί δὲ τοσοῦτον ὅσον ἐν Βαρυγάζοις—Wine but not much, but about as much as at Barugaza.

---

limit of our author's voyage along the coast of India, for in the sequel of his narrative he defines but vaguely the situation of the places which he



Σανδαράκη—Sandarach (*Sindûrd*).

Ἄρσενικόν—Arsenic (Orpiment), yellow sulphuret of arsenic.

Σίτος ὅσος ἀρκέσει τοῖς περὶ το ναυκλήριον, διὰ τὸ μὴ τοὺς ἐμπόρους αὐτῷ χρῆσθαι—Corn, only for the use of the ship's company, as the merchants do not sell it.

The following commodities are brought to it for export:—

Πέπερι μονογενῶς ἐν ἐνὶ τόπῳ τούτων τῶν ἐμπορίων γεννώμενον πολὺ τῇ λεγομένῃ Κοττοναρικῇ—Pepper in great quantity, produced in only one of these marts, and called the pepper of Kottonara.

Μαργαρίτης ἱκανὸς καὶ διάφορος—Pearls in great quantity and of superior quality.

Ἑλέφας—Ivory.

Ὀθόνια Σηρικὰ—Fine silks.

Νάρδος ἡ Γαγγητικὴ—Spikenard from the Ganges.

Μαλάβαθρον—Betel—all brought from countries further east.

Λιθία διαφανὴς παντοία—Transparent or precious stones of all sorts.

Αδάμας—Diamonds.

Ῥάκινθος—Jacinths.

Χελώνη ἥτε Χρυσονησιωτικὴ καὶ ἡ περὶ τὰς νήσους θηρευομένη τὰς προκειμένας αὐτῆς τῆς Λιμυρικῆς—Tortoise-shell from the Golden Island, and another sort which is taken in the islands which lie off the coast of Limuriké.

The proper season to set sail from Egypt for

---

notices, while his details are scanty, and sometimes grossly inaccurate. Thus he makes the Malabar Coast extend southwards beyond Cape Comorin

this part of India is about the month of July—that is, Epiphi.

57. The whole round of the voyage from Kanê and Eudaimôn Arabia, which we have just described, used to be performed in small vessels which kept close to shore and followed its windings, but Hippalos was the pilot who first, by observing the bearings of the ports and the configuration of the sea, discovered the direct course across the ocean; whence as, at the season when our own Etesians are blowing, a periodical wind from the ocean likewise blows in the Indian Sea, this wind, which is the south-west, is, it seems, called in these seas Hippalos [after the name of the pilot who first discovered the *passage by means of it*]. From the time of this discovery to the present day, merchants who sail for India either from Kanê, or, as others do, from Arômata, if Limurikê be their destination, must often change their tack, but if they are bound for Barugaza and Skythia, they are not retarded for more than three days, after which, committing themselves to the monsoon which blows right in the direction of their course, they stand far out to sea, leaving all the gulfs we have mentioned in the distance.

---

as far at least as Kolkhoi (near Tutikorin) on the Coromandel coast, and like many ancient writers, represents Ceylon as stretching westward almost as far as Africa.

58. After Bakarê occurs the mountain called Pyrrhos (or the Red) towards the south, near another district of the country called Paralia (where the pearl-fisheries are which belong to king Pandiôn), and a city of the name of Kolkhôi. In this tract the first place met with is called Balita, which has a good harbour and a village on its shore. Next to this is another place called Komar, where is the cape of the same name and a haven. Those who wish to consecrate the closing part of their lives to religion come hither and bathe and engage themselves to celibacy. 'his is also done by women; since it is related that the

---

(58) The first place mentioned after Bakare is Purrhos, or the Red Mountain, which extends along a district called Paralia. "There are," says Dr. Caldwell (Introd. p. 99), "three Paralias mentioned by the Greeks, two by Ptolemy . . . one by the author of the *Periplus*. The Paralia mentioned by the latter corresponded to Ptolemy's country of the *Ἀῖοι*, and that of the *Καπεοί*, that is, to South Travancore and South Tinnevely. It commenced at the Red Cliffs south of Quilon, and included not only Cape Comorin but also *Κόλχοι*, where the pearl fishing was carried on, which belonged to King Pandion. Dr. Burnell identifies Paralia with Parali, which he states is an old name for Travancore, but I am not quite able to adopt this view." "Paralia," he adds afterwards, "may possibly have corresponded in meaning, if not in sound, to some native word

goddess (*Kumārī*) once on a time resided at the place and bathed. From *Komareī* (towards the south) the country extends as far as *Kolkhoi*, where the fishing for pearls is carried on. Condemned criminals are employed in this service. King *Pandiōn* is the owner of the fishery. To *Kolkhoi* succeeds another coast lying along a gulf having a district in the interior bearing the name of *Argalon*. In this single place are obtained the pearls collected near the island of *Epiodōros*. From it are exported the muslins called *ebargareitides*.

60. Among the marts and anchorages along this shore to which merchants from *Limurikē*

meaning coast,—viz., *Kareī*." On this coast is a place called *Balita*, which is perhaps the *Bamala* of *Ptolemy* (VII. i. 9), which *Mannert* identifies with *Manpalli*, a little north of *Anjenga*.

(60) We now reach the great promontory called in the *Periplus* *Komar* and *Komareī*, *Cape Kumari*. "It has derived its name," says *Caldwell*, "from the Sans. *Kumārī*, a virgin, one of the names of the goddess *Durgā*, the presiding divinity of the place, but the shape which this word has taken is, especially in *komar*, distinctively *Tamilian*." In ordinary *Tamil* *Kumārī* becomes *Kumārī*; and in the vulgar dialect of the people residing in the neighbourhood of the Cape a virgin is neither *Kumārī* nor *Kumārī* but *Kūmār* pronounced *Kōmār*. It is remarkable that this vulgar corruption of the Sanskrit is identical with the name given to the place by the

and the north resort, the most conspicuous are Kamara and Podoukê and Sôpatma, which occur in the order in which we have named them. In these marts are found those native vessels for coasting voyages which trade as far as Limurikê, and another kind called

---

author of the *Periplus* . . . The monthly bathing in honor of the goddess Durgâ is still continued at Cape Comorin, but is not practised to the same extent as in ancient times . . . Through the continued encroachments of the sea, the harbour the Greek mariners found at Cape Comorin and the fort (if *φρουριον* is the correct reading for *βυρίριον* of the MS.) have completely disappeared; but a fresh water well remains in the centre of a rock, a little way out at sea. Regarding Kolkhoi, the next place mentioned after Komari, the same authority as we have seen places it (*Ind. Ant.* vol. VI. p. 80) near Tuticorin. It is mentioned by Ptolemy and in the *Peutinger Tables*, where it is called 'Colcis Indorum'. The Gulf of Manaar was called by the Greeks the Colchic Gulf. The Tamil name of the place Kolkei is almost identical with the Greek. "The place," according to Caldwell, "is now about three miles inland, but there are abundant traces of its having once stood on the coast, and I have found the tradition that it was once the seat of the pearl fishery, still surviving amongst its inhabitants. After the sea had retired from Κόλχοι . . . a new emporium arose on the coast. This was Kâyal, the Cael of Marco Polo. Kâyal in turn became in time too far from the sea . . . and Tuticorin (Tâttrukudî) was raised instead by the

*sangara*, made by fastening together large vessels formed each of a single timber, and also others called *kolandiophōnta*, which are of great bulk and employed for voyages to *Khrusê* and the *Ganges*. These marts import all the commodities which reach *Limurikê* for com-

Portuguese from the position of a fishing village to that of the most important port on the southern Coromandel coast. The identification of *Kolkoi* with *Kolkei* is one of much importance. Being perfectly certain it helps forward other identifications. *Kol.* in *Tamīl* means 'to slay.' *Kei* is 'hand.' It was the first capital of *Pandion*.

The coast beyond *Kolkhoi*, which has an inland district belonging to it called *Argalou*, is indented by a gulf called by *Ptolemy* the *Argarik*—now *Palk Bay*. *Ptolemy* mentions also a promontory called *Kôru* and beyond it a city called *Argeirou* and an emporium called *Salour*. This *Kôru* of *Ptolemy*, *Caldwell* thinks, represents the *Kôlis* of the geographers who preceded him, and the *Koṭi* of *Tamīl*, and identifies it with "the island promontory of *Râmeśvaram*, the point of land from which there was always the nearest access from Southern India to Ceylon." An island occurs in these parts, called that of *Epidôros*, noted for its pearl fishery, on which account *Ritter* would identify it with the island of *Manaar*, which *Ptolemy*, as *Mannert* thinks, speaks of as *Návrynptis* (VII. i. 95). *Müller* thinks, however, it may be compared with *Ptolemy's Kôru*, and so be *Râmésvaram*.

This coast has commercial intercourse not only

mercial purposes, absorbing likewise nearly every species of goods brought from Egypt, and most descriptions of all the goods exported from Limurikê and disposed of on this coast of India.

61. Near the region which succeeds, where

with the Malabar ports, but also with the Ganges and the Golden Khersonese. For the trade with the former a species of canoes was used called *Sangara*. The Malayâlam name of these, Caldwell says, is *Changddam*, in Tulu *Jangdla*, compare Sanskrit *Samghddam* a raft (*Ind. Ant.* vol. I. p. 309). The large vessels employed for the Eastern trade were called *Kolandiophonta*, a name which Caldwell confesses his inability to explain.

Three cities and ports are named in the order of their occurrence which were of great commercial importance, *Kamara*, *Podouke*, and *Sopatma*. *Kamara* may perhaps be, as Müller thinks, the emporium which Ptolemy calls *Khabêris*, situated at the mouth of the River *Khabêros* (now, the Kavery), perhaps, as Dr. Burnell suggests, the modern Kaveripattam. (*Ind. Ant.* vol. VII. p. 40). *Pôdoukê* appears in Ptolemy as *Podouké*. It is *Puduchchêri*, i. e. 'new town,' now well known as Pondicherry; so Bohlen, Ritter, and Benfey. [Yule and Lassen place it at *Pulikât*]. *Sopatma* is not mentioned in Ptolemy, nor can it now be traced. In Sanskrit it transliterates into *Su-patna*, i. e., fair town.

(61) The next place noticed is the Island of Ceylon, which is designated *Palaisimoundou*, with the remark that its former name was

the course of the voyage now bends to the east, there lies out in the open sea stretching towards the west the island now called Palaismoundou, but by the ancients Taprobanê. To cross over to the northern side of it takes a day. In the south part it gradually stretches towards the west till it nearly reaches the opposite coast of Azania. It produces pearl, precious (*transparent*) stones, muslins, and tortoise-shell.

62. (*Returning to the coast,*) not far from the

---

Taprobanê. This is the Greek transliteration of Tâmrarni, the name given by a band of colonists from Magadha to the place where they first landed in Ceylon, and which was afterwards extended to the whole island. It is singular, Dr. Caldwell remarks, that this is also the name of the principal river in Tinnevely on the opposite coast of India, and he infers that the colony referred to might previously have formed a settlement in Tinnevely at the mouth of the Tâmrarni river—perhaps at Kolkei, the earliest residence of the Pândya kings. The passage in the *Periplus* which refers to the island is very corrupt.

(62) Recurring to the mainland, the narrative notices a district called Masalia, where great quantities of cotton were manufactured. This is the Maisôlia of Ptolemy, the region in which he places the mouths of a river the Maisôlos, which Benfey identifies with the Godâvarî, in opposition to others who would make it the Krishnâ, which is perhaps Ptolemy's Tuna. The



three marts we have mentioned lies *Masalia*, the seaboard of a country extending far inland. Here immense quantities of fine muslins are manufactured. From *Masalia* the course of the voyage lies eastward across a neighbouring bay to *Dêsarênê*, which has the breed of elephants called *Bôsarê*. Leaving *Dêsarênê* the course is northerly, passing a variety of barbarous tribes, among which are the *Kirrâdai*, savages whose noses are flattened to the face, and another tribe, that of the *Bargusoi*,

---

name *Maisôlia* is taken from the Sanskrit *Mausala*, preserved in *Machhlipatana*, now *Masulipatam*. Beyond this, after an intervening gulf running eastward is crossed, another district occurs, *Desarênê*, noted for its elephants. This is not mentioned by Ptolemy, but a river with a similar name, the *Dôsarôn*, is found in his enumeration of the rivers which occur between the *Maisôlos* and the Ganges. As it is the last in the list it may probably be, as Lassen supposes, the *Brâhmini*. Our author however places *Desarênê* at a much greater distance from the Ganges, for he peoples the intermediate space with a variety of tribes which Ptolemy relegates to the East of the river. The first of these tribes is that of the *Kirrâdai* (Sanskrit, *Kirâtas*), whose features are of the Mongolian type. Next are the *Bargusoi*, not mentioned by Ptolemy, but perhaps to be identified with the cannibal race he speaks of, the *Barousai* thought by Yule to be possibly the inhabitants of the Nikobar islands, and lastly the

as well as the *Hippioprosôpoi* or *Ma-kroprosôpoi* (the horse faced or long faced men), who are reported to be cannibals.

63. After passing these the course turns again to the east, and if you sail with the ocean to your right and the coast far to your left, you reach the Ganges and the extremity of the continent towards the east called *Khrusê* (the Golden Khersonese). The river of this region called the Ganges is the largest in India; it has an *annual* increase and decrease like the Nile, and there is on it a mart called after it, *Gangê*, through which passes a *considerable* traffic consisting of betel, the Gangetic spike-

---

tribe of the long or horse-faced men who were also cannibals.

(63) When this coast of savages and monsters is left behind, the course lies eastward, and leads to the Ganges, which is the greatest river of India, and adjoins the extremity of the Eastern continent called *Khrusê*, or the Golden. Near the river, or, according to Ptolemy, on the third of its mouths stands a great emporium of trade called *Gangê*, exporting *Malabathrum* and cottons and other commodities. Its exact position there are not sufficient data to determine. *Khrusê* is not only the name of the last part of the continent, but also of an island lying out in the ocean to eastward, not far from the Ganges. It is the last part of the world which is said to be inhabited. The situation of *Khrusê* is differently defined by different ancient authors. It was not known to

nard, pearl, and the finest of all muslins—those called the Gangetic. In this locality also there is said to be a gold mine and a gold coin called *Kaltis*. Near this river there is an island of the ocean called *Khrusê* (or the Golden), which lies directly under the rising sun and at the extremity of the world towards the east. It produces the finest tortoise-shell that is found throughout the whole of the Erythræan Sea.

64. Beyond this region, immediately under the north, where the sea terminates outwards, there lies somewhere in *Thina* a very great city,—not on the coast, but in the interior of the country, called *Thina*,—from which silk, whether in the raw state or spun into thread

---

the Alexandrine geographers. Pliny seems to have preserved the most ancient report circulated regarding it. He says (VI. xxiii. 80): "Beyond the mouth of the Indus are *Chrysê* and *Argyre* abounding in metals as I believe, for I can hardly credit what some have related that the soil consists of gold and silver." Mela (III. 7) assigns to it a very different position, asserting it to be near *Tabis*, the last spur of the range of *Taurus*. He therefore places it where *Eratosthenês* places *Thinai*, to the north of the *Ganges* on the confines of the Indian and *Skythian* oceans. *Ptolemy*, in whose time the *Transgangetic* world was better known, refers it to the peninsula of *Malacca*, the *Golden Kher-sonese*.

(64) The last place which the *Periplus* mentions is *Thinai*, an inland city of the *Thinai* or

and woven into cloth, is brought by land to Barngaza through Baktria, or by the Ganges to Limuriké. To penetrate into Thina is not an easy undertaking, and but few *merchants* come from it, and that rarely. Its situation is under the Lesser Bear, and it is said to be continuous with the remotest end of Pontos, and that part of the Kaspian Sea which adjoins the Maiôtic Lake, along with which it issues by *one and* the same mouth into the ocean.

65. On the confines, however, of Thina i an annual fair is held, attended by a race of men of squat figure, with their face very broad, but mild in disposition, called the Sêsa tai, who in appearance resemble wild animals. They come with their wives and children to this fair, bringing heavy loads of goods wrapped up in mats resembling in outward appearance the early leaves of the vine. Their place of assembly is where their own territory borders with that of Thina i; and here, squatted on the mats on which

---

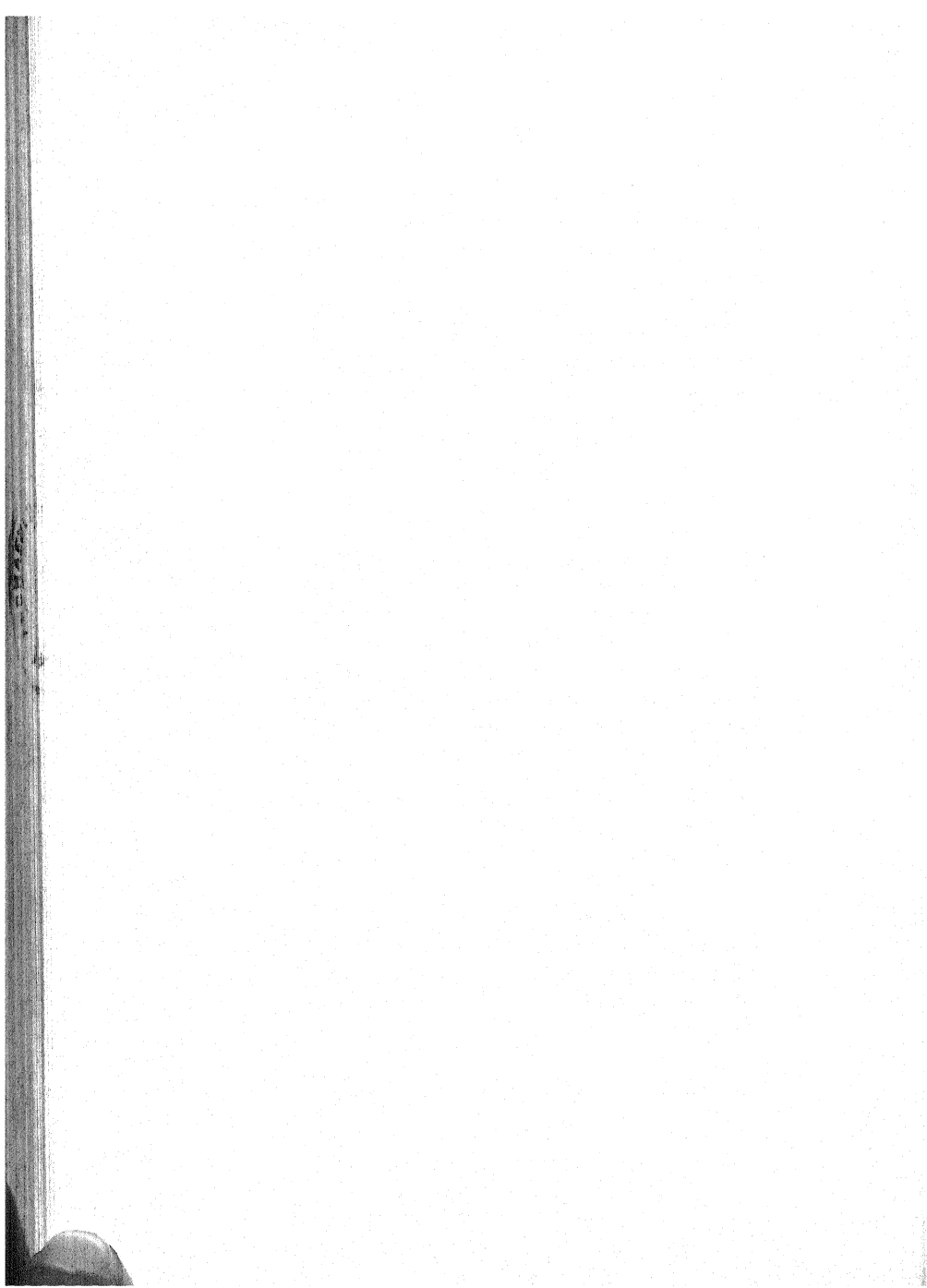
Sina i, having a large commerce in silk and woollen stuffs. The ancient writers are not at all agreed as to its position, Colonel Yule thinks it was probably the city described by Marco Polo under the name of Kenjan-fu (that is Singan-fu or Chauggan,) the most celebrated city in Chinese history, and the capital of several of the most potent dynasties. It was the metropolis of Shi Hwengti of the T'Sin dynasty, properly the first emperor, and whose conquests almost

they exhibit their wares, they feast for several days, after which they return to their homes in the interior. On observing their retreat the people of Thinai, repairing to the spot, collect the mats on which they had been sitting, and taking out the fibres, which are called *petroi*, from the reeds, they put the leaves two and two together, and roll them up into slender balls, through which they pass the fibres extracted from the reeds. Three kinds of Malabathrum are thus made—that of the large ball, that of the middle, and that of the small, according to the size of the leaf of which the balls are formed. Hence there are three kinds of Malabathrum, which after being made up are forwarded to India by the manufacturers.

66. All the regions beyond this are unexplored, being difficult of access by reason of the extreme rigour of the climate and the severe frosts, or perhaps because such is the will of the divine power.

---

intersected those of his contemporary Ptolemy Euergetês—(vide Yule's *Travels of Marco Polo*, vol. II. p. 21).



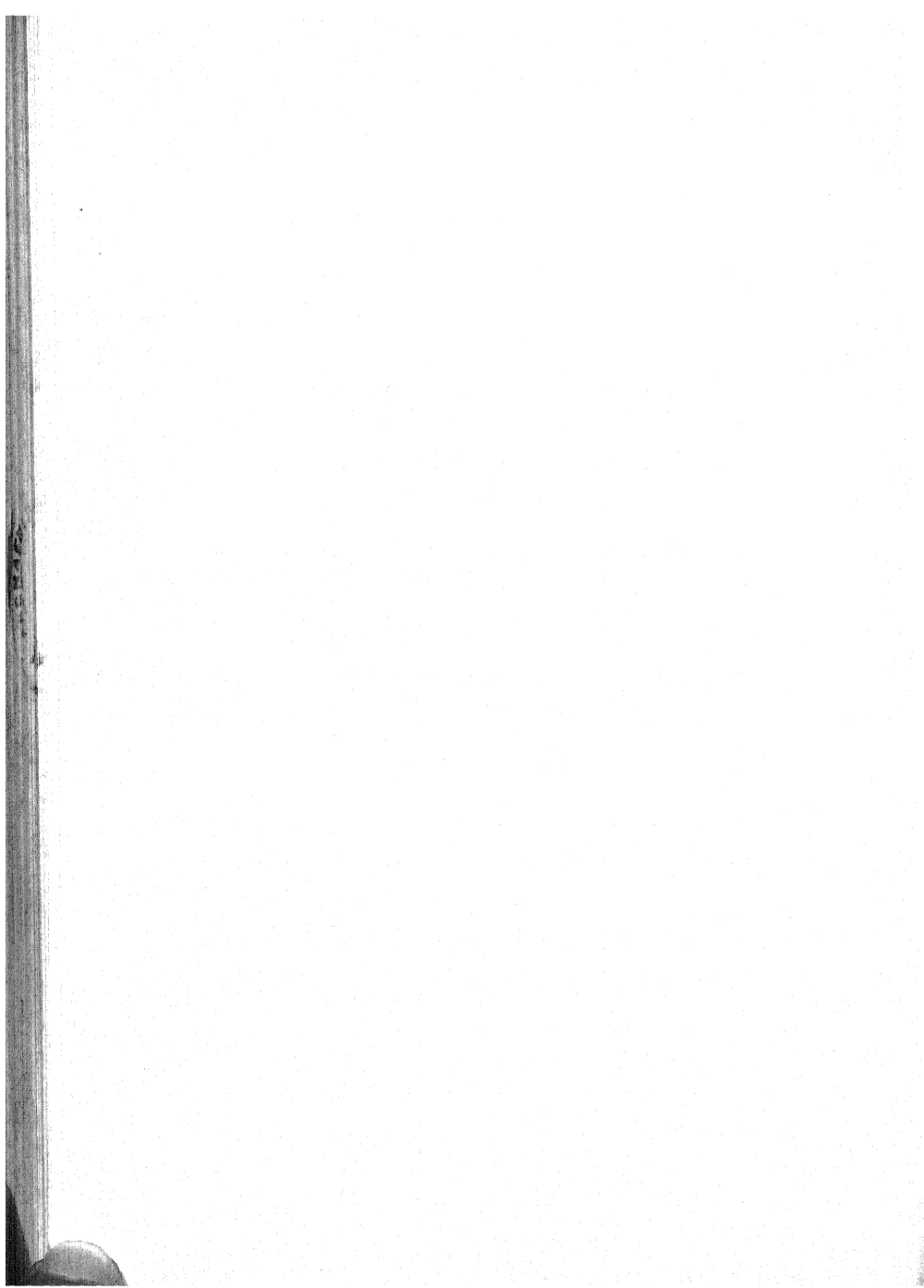
THE  
VOYAGE OF NEARKHOS,  
FROM THE INDUS TO THE HEAD OF THE  
PERSIAN GULF,

AS DESCRIBED IN THE SECOND PART OF  
THE INDIKA OF ARRIAN,

(FROM CHAPTER XVIII. TO THE END.)

TRANSLATED FROM MÜLLER'S EDITION  
(As given in the *Geographi Graeci Minores* : Paris, 1855).

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES.





## THE VOYAGE OF NEARKHOS.

---

### INTRODUCTION.

The coasting voyage from the mouth of the Indus to the head of the Persian Gulf, designed by Alexander the Great, and executed by Nearkhos, may be regarded as the most important achievement of the ancients in navigation. It opened up, as Vincent remarks, a communication between Europe and the most distant countries of Asia, and, at a later period, was the source and origin of the Portuguese discoveries, and consequently the primary cause, however remote, of the British establishments in India. A Journal of this voyage was written by Nearkhos himself, which, though not extant in its original form, has been preserved for us by Arrian, who embodied its contents in his little work on India,<sup>1</sup> which he wrote as a sequel to his history of the expedition of Alexander.

Nearkhos as a writer must be acknowledged to be most scrupulously honest and exact,—for the result of explorations made in modern times along the shores which he passed in the course of his voyage shows that his description of them is accurate even in the most minute particulars. His veracity was nevertheless oppugned in ancient times by Strabo, who unjustly stigmatises the whole class of the Greek writers upon India as mendacious. “Generally speaking,” he says (II. i. 9), “the men who have written upon Indian

---

<sup>1</sup> Written in the Ionic dialect.

affairs were a set of liars. Deimakhos holds the first place in the list, Megasthenês comes next, while Onêsikritos and Nearkhos, with others of the same class, stammer out a few words of truth." (*παραψέλλοντες*). Strabo, however, in spite of this censure did not hesitate to use Nearkhos as one of his chief authorities for his description of India, and is indebted to him for many facts relating to that country, which, however extraordinary they might appear to his contemporaries, have been all confirmed by subsequent observation. It is therefore fairly open to doubt whether Strabo was altogether sincere in his ill opinion, seeing it had but little, if any, influence on his practice. We know at all events that he was too much inclined to undervalue any writer who retailed fables, without discriminating whether the writer set them down as facts, or merely as stories, which he had gathered from hearsay.

In modern times, the charge of mendacity has been repeated by Hardouin and Huet. There are, however, no more than two passages of the *Journal* which can be adduced to support this imputation. The first is that in which the excessive breadth of 200 stadia is given to the Indus, and the second that in which it is asserted that at Malana (situated in  $25^{\circ} 17'$  of N. latitude) the shadows at noon were observed to fall southward, and this in the month of November. With regard to the first charge, it may be supposed that the breadth assigned to the Indus was probably that which it was observed to have when in a state of inundation, and with regard to the second, it may be met by the supposition, which is quite

admissible, that Arrian may have misapprehended in some measure the import of the statement as made by Nearkhos. The passage will be afterwards examined,<sup>2</sup> but in the meantime we may say, with Vincent, that if the difficulty it presents admits of no satisfactory solution, the misstatement ought not, as standing alone, to be insisted upon to the invalidation of the whole work.

But another charge besides that of mendacity has been preferred against the Journal. Dodwell has denied its authenticity. His attack is based on the following passage in Pliny (VI. 23):—*Onesicriti et Nearchi navigatio nec nomina habet mansionum nec spatia. The Journal of Onesicritus and Nearchus has neither the names of the anchorages nor the measure of the distances.* From this Dodwell argues that, as the account of the voyage in Arrian contains both the names and the distances, it could not have been a transcript of the Journal of Nearkhos, which according to Pliny gave neither names nor distances. Now, in the first place, it may well be asked, why the authority of Pliny, who is by no means always a careful writer, should be set so high as to override all other testimony, for instance, that of Arrian himself, who expressly states in the outset of his narrative that he intended to give the account of the voyage which had been written by Nearkhos. In the second place, the passage in question is probably corrupt, or if not, it is in direct conflict with the passage which immediately follows it, and contains Pliny's own summary of the voyage in which little else

---

<sup>2</sup> See *infra*, note 35.

is given than the names of the anchorages and the distances. Dodwell was aware of the inconsistency of the two passages, and endeavoured to explain it away. In this he entirely fails, and there can therefore be no reasonable doubt, that in Arrian's work we have a record of the voyage as authentic as it is veracious.

Of that record we proceed to give a brief abstract, adding a few particulars gathered from other sources.

The fleet with which Nearkhos accomplished the voyage consisted of war-galleys and transports which had been partly built and partly collected on the banks of the river Hydaspes (now the Jhelam), where Alexander had supplied them with crews by selecting from his troops such men as had a knowledge of seamanship. The fleet thus manned sailed slowly down the Hydaspes, the Akesines, and the Indus, its movements being regulated by those of the army, which, in marching down towards the sea, was engaged in reducing the warlike tribes settled along the banks of these rivers. This downward voyage occupied, according to Strabo, ten months, but it probably did not occupy more than nine. The fleet having at length reached the apex of the Delta formed by the Indus remained in that neighbourhood for some time at a place called Pattala, which has generally been identified with *Thaṭha*—a town near to where the western arm of the Indus bifurcates,—but which Cunningham and others would prefer to identify with *Nirankol* or *Haidarâbâd*.<sup>3</sup> From Pattala

---

<sup>3</sup> Geog. of Anc. India, p. 279 sqq.

Alexander sailed down the western stream of the river, where some of his ships were damaged and others destroyed by encountering the Bore, a phenomenon as alarming as it was new to the Greeks.<sup>a</sup> He returned to Pattala, and thence made an excursion down the Eastern stream, which he found less difficult to navigate. On again returning to Pattala he removed his fleet down to a station on the Western branch of the river (at an island called Killouta),<sup>b</sup> which was at no great distance from the sea. He then set out on his return to Persia, leaving instructions with Nearkhos to start on the voyage as soon as the calming of the monsoon should render navigation safe. It was the king's intention to march near to the coast, and to collect at convenient stations supplies for the victualling of the fleet, but he found that such a route was impracticable, and he was obliged to lead his army through the inland provinces which lay between India and his destination, Sûsa.<sup>c</sup> He left Leonnatos, however, behind him in the country of the Oreitai, with instructions to render every assistance in his power to the expedition under Nearkhos when it should reach that part of the coast.

Nearkhos remained in the harbour at Killouta for about a month after Alexander had departed, and then sailed during a temporary lull in the monsoon, as he was apprehensive of being at-

<sup>a</sup> See Arrian's Anab. VI. 19. Καὶ τοῦτο οὕτω πρότερον ἐγνωκόσι τοῖς ἄμφ' Ἀλέξανδρον ἐκπλήξιν μὲν καὶ αὐτὸ οὐ μικρὰν παρέσχε.

<sup>b</sup> See Arrian, ib.

<sup>c</sup> See id. VI. 23, and Strab. xv. ii 3, 4.

tacked by the natives who had been but imperfectly subjugated, and whose spirit was hostile.<sup>7</sup> The date on which he set sail is fixed by Vincent as the 1st of October in the year B.C. 326. He proceeded slowly down the river, and anchored first at a place called Stoura, which was only 100 stadia distant from the station they had quitted. Here the fleet remained for two days, when it proceeded to an anchorage only 30 stadia farther down the stream at a place called Kaumana.<sup>8</sup> Thence it proceeded to Koreâtis (v.l. Koreëstis)—where it again anchored. When once more under weigh its progress was soon arrested by a dangerous rock or bar which obstructed the mouth of the river.<sup>9</sup> After some delay this difficulty was overcome, and the fleet was conducted in safety into the open main, and onward to an island called Krôkala (150 stadia distant from the bar), where it remained at anchor throughout the day following its arrival. On leaving this island Nearkhos had Mount Eiros (now Manora) on his right hand, and a low flat island on his left; and this, as Cunningham remarks, is a very accurate description of the entrance to Karâchi harbour. The fleet was conducted into this harbour, now so well known as the great emporium of the trade of the Indus, and here, as the monsoon was still blowing with great violence, it remained for four and twenty days. The harbour was so commodious and secure that Nearkhos designated it the Port

---

<sup>7</sup> Strab. ib. 5.

<sup>8</sup> This may perhaps be represented by the modern Khâu, the name of one of the western mouths of the Indus.

<sup>9</sup> See *infra*, p. 176, note 17.

of Alexander. It was well sheltered by an island lying close to its mouth, called by Arrian, Bibakta, but by Pliny, Bibaga, and by Philostratos, Biblos.

The expedition took its departure from this station on the 3rd of November. It suffered both from stress of weather and from shortness of provisions until it reached Kôkala on the coast of the Oreitai, where it took on board the supplies which had been collected for its use by the exertions of Leonnatos. Here it remained for about 10 days, and by the time of its departure the monsoon had settled in its favour, so that the courses daily accomplished were now of much greater length than formerly. The shores, however, of the Ikhthyophagoi, which succeeded to those of the Oreitai, were so miserably barren and inhospitable that provisions were scarcely procurable, and Nearkhos was apprehensive lest the men, famished and despairing, should desert the ships. Their sufferings were not relieved till they approached the straits, which open into the Persian Gulf. When within the straits, they entered the mouth of the river Anamis (now the Minâb or Ibrahim river), and having landed, formed a dockyard and a camp upon its banks. This place lay in Har-mozeia, a most fertile and beautiful district belonging to Karmania. Nearkhos, having here learned that Alexander was not more than a 5 days' journey from the sea, proceeded into the interior to meet him, and report the safety of the expedition. During his absence the ships were repaired and provisioned, and therefore soon after his return to the camp he gave orders for the resumption of the voyage. The time spent at Har-

mozeia was one and twenty days. The fleet again under weigh coasted the islands lying at the mouth of the gulf, and then having shaped its course towards the mainland, passed the western shores of Karmania and those of Persis, till it arrived at the mouth of the Sitakos (now the Kara-Agach), where it was again repaired and supplied with provisions, remaining for the same number of days as at the Anamis. One of the next stations at which it touched was Mesembria, which appears to have been situated in the neighbourhood of the modern Bushire. The coast of Persis was difficult to navigate on account of intricate and oozy channels, and of shoals and breakers which frequently extended far out to sea. The coast which succeeded, that of Sousis (from which Persis is separated by the river Arosis or Oroâtis, now the Tâb) was equally difficult and dangerous to navigate, and therefore the fleet no longer crept along the shore, but stood out more into the open sea. At the head of the gulf Sousis bends to westward, and here are the mouths of the Tigris and Euphrates, which appear in those days to have entered the sea by separate channels. It was the intention of Nearkhos to have sailed up the former river, but he passed its mouth unawares, and continued sailing westward till he reached Diridôtis (or Terêdon), an emporium in Babylonia, situated on the Pallacopas branch of the Euphrates. From Diridôtis he retraced his course, and entering the mouth of the Tigris sailed up its stream till he reached the lower end of a great lake (not now existing), through which its current



flowed. At the upper end of this lake was a village called Aginis, said to have been 500 stadia distant from Sousa. Nearkhos did not, as has been erroneously supposed by some, sail up the lake to Aginis, but entered the mouth of a river which flows into its south-eastern extremity, called the Pasitigris or Eulaeus, the Ulai of the Prophet Daniel, now the Karûn. The fleet proceeded up this river, and came to a final anchor in its stream immediately below a bridge, which continued the highway from Persis to Sousa. This bridge, according to Ritter and Rawlinson, crossed the Pasitigris at a point near the modern village of Ahwaz. Here the fleet and the army were happily reunited. Alexander on his arrival embraced Nearkhos with cordial warmth, and rewarded appropriately the splendid services which he had rendered by bringing the expedition safely through so many hardships and perils to its destination. The date on which the fleet anchored at the bridge is fixed by Vincent for the 24th of February B. C. 325, so that the whole voyage was performed in 146 days, or somewhat less than 5 months.

The following tables show the names, positions, &c., of the different places which occurred on the route taken by the expedition :—

## I.

From the Station on the Indus to the Port of Alexander (Karâchi Harbour).

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Distance in Stadia <sup>10</sup>	Lat. N.	Long. E.
1. Station at Killouta.	Near Lari-Bandar.	...	24° 30'	67° 28'
2. Stoura .....	.....	100		
3. Kaumana ...	Khau .....	30		
4. Koreatis ...	.....	20		
5. Herma .....	<i>Bar in the Indus.</i>			
6. Krôkala .....	.....	120		
7. <i>Mount Eiros.</i>	Manora.			
8. <i>Is. unnamed.</i>				
9. The Port of Alexander.	Karâchi ...	...	24° 53'	66° 57'

<sup>10</sup> The Olympic stadium, which was in general use throughout Greece, contained 600 Greek feet  $\approx$  625 Roman feet, or 606½ English feet. The Roman mile contained eight stadia, being about half a stadium less than an English mile. Not a few of the measurements given by Arrian are excessive, and it has therefore been conjectured that he may have used some standard different from the Olympic,—which, however, is hardly probable. See the subject discussed in Smith's Dictionary of Antiquities, S. V. *Stadium*.

## II.

## Coast of the Arabies (Sindh).

Length of the Coast from the Indus to the  
 Arabis R. .... 1000 Stadia.  
 Actual length in miles English ... 80  
 Time taken in its navigation ..... 38 Days.

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Dis- tance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long.E.
1. Port of Alex- ander .....	Karâchi ...	...	24° 53'	66° 57'
2. <i>Bibakta</i> .	.....	60	24° 48'	66° 50'
3. Domai Is. ...	.....	300	24° 44'	66° 34'
4. Saranga.....	.....	...	24° 52'	66° 33'
5. Sakala .....	.....	300	25° 13'	66° 40'
6. Morontobara .....	.....	120	25° 28'	66° 35'
7. <i>Is. unnamed.</i>	Purâli R...			
8. Arabis R. ...				

## III.

## Coast of the Oreitai (Las.)

Length of the coast (Arrian) ..... 1600 Stadia.  
 Do. do. (Strabo) ..... 1800 „  
 Actual length in miles English ..... 100  
 Time taken in its navigation ..... 18 Days.

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Dis- tance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long.E.
1. Pagala .....	.....	200	25° 30'	66° 15'
2. Kabana .....	.....	400	25° 28'	65° 46'
3. Kôkala .....	Near Râs- Katchari.	200	25° 21'	65° 36'
4. Toméros R. .	Maklow or HingulR.	500	25° 16'	65° 15'
5. Malana .....	Râs Malan.	300	25° 18'	65° 7'

## IV.

Coast of the Ikhthyophagoi (Mekran or Beluchistan).

Length of the coast (Arrian) ..... 10,000 Stadia.

Do. do. (Strabo) ..... 7,000 „

Actual length in miles English ..... 480

Time taken in its navigation ..... 20 Days.

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Distance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long. E.
1. Bagisara ...	On Arabah or Hormara Bay	600	25° 12'	64° 31'
2. Pasira .....				
3. Cape unnamed.	Râs Arabah	...	25° 7'	64° 29'
4. Kolta .....	.....	200	25° 8'	64° 27'
5. Kalama .....	Kalami R..	600	25° 21'	63° 59'
6. Karbine Is. .	Asthola or Sangâ-dîp			
7. Kissa in Karbis.	.....	200	25° 22'	63° 37'
8. Cape unnamed.	C. Passence..	...	25° 15'	63° 30'
9. Mosarna ...	Near do.			
10. Balômon ...	.....	750		
11. Barna.....	.....	400	25° 12'	63° 10'
12. Dendrobôsa.	Daram or Duram.	200	25° 11'	62° 45'
13. Kôphas .....	Râs Koppa	400	25° 11'	62° 29'
14. Kuiza.....	Near Râs Ghunse.	800	25° 10'	61° 56'
15. Town unnamed.	On Gwattar Bay.	500		
16. Cape called Bagia.	.....	...	25° 7'	61° 28'
17. Talmena ...	On Chauhar Bay.	1000	25° 24'	60° 40'
18. Kanasis.....	.....	400	25° 24'	60° 12'

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Distance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long. E.
19. Anchorage unnamed.				
20. Kanate .....	Kungoun..	850	25° 25'	59° 15'
21. Tæsi or Troisi.	Near Sudich River.	800	25° 30'	58° 42'
22. Bagasira ...	Girishk ...	300	25° 38'	58° 27'
23. Anchorage unnamed.	.....	1100		

## V

Coast of Karmania (Moghistan and Laristan).

Length of the coast (Arrian and

Strabo) ..... 3,700 Stadia.

Actual length in miles English.. 296

Time taken in its navigation ... 19 Days.

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Distance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long. E.
1. Anchorage unnamed.				
2. Badis .....	Near Cape Bombarek	...	25° 47'	57° 48'
3. Anchorage unnamed.	.....	800		
4. <i>Cape Maketa in Arabia</i> ...	<i>Cape Musesdom.</i>			
5. Neoptana ...	Nr. Karun.	700	26° 57'	57° 1'
6. Anamis R....	Minâb R..	100	27° 11'	57° 6'
7. <i>Organa Is.</i> ..	<i>Ornus or Djerun.</i>			
8. Oarakta Is. 2 anchorages	Kishm ...	300		

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Dis- tance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long. E.
9. <i>Island dist. from it 40 stadia.</i>	<i>Angar or Hanjam.</i>			
10. Island 300 stadia from mainland.	Tombo.....	400	26° 20'	55° 20'
11. <i>Pylora Is. ...</i>	<i>Polior Is. ...</i>	...	26° 20'	54° 35'
12. <i>Sisidôné ...</i>	<i>Mogos P ...</i>			
13. Tarsia .....	C. Djard...	300	26° 20'	54° 21'
14. Kataia Is. ...	Kenn .....	300	26° 32'	54°

## VI.

## Coast of Persis (Farsistan).

Length of Coast.....4,400 Stadia.

Actual length in miles English ... 382

Time taken in its navigation..... 31 Days.

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Dis- tance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long. E.
1. Ila and Kai-kander Is..	Inderabia Island.	400	26° 38'	53° 35'
2. Island with Pearl Fishery.				
3. Another anchorage here.	.....	40		
4. Mount Okhos	.....	...	26° 59'	53° 20'
5. Apostana ...	.....	450	27° 1'	52° 55'
6. Bay unnamed.	On it is Nabend.	400	27° 24'	52° 25'
7. Gogana at mouth of Areon R.	Konkan ...	600	27° 48'	52°

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Dis- tance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long. E.
8. Sitakos .....	Kara-			
	Agach R.	800		
9. Hieratis.....	.....	750	28° 52'	50° 45'
10. Heratemis R. near it.				
11. Podagron, R.				
12. Mesambria. .	Near Bu- shire.	...	29°	50° 45'
13. Taškê on	Taaug .....	200	29° 14'	50° 30'
	Granis, R.			
14. Rhogonis, R.	.....	200	29° 27'	50° 29'
15. Brizana, R. .	.....	400	29° 57'	50° 15'
16. Arosis or	River Tâb.	...	30° 4'	49° 30'
	Oroat, R.			

## VII.

## Coast of Sousis (Khuzistan.)

Length of the Coast..... 2000 Stadia.  
 Time taken in its navigation ..... 3 Days.

Ancient name.	Modern name.	Dis- tance in Stadia.	Lat. N.	Long E.
1. Kataderbis R.	.....	500	30° 16'	49°
2. Margastana Is	.....	600		
3. Anchorage unnamed.				
4. Diridôtis, the end of the sea voyage.	Near Jebel Sanâm.	900	30° 12'	47° 35'

## TRANSLATION.

XVIII. When the fleet formed for Alexander upon the banks of the Hydaspes was now ready, he provided crews for the vessels by collecting all the Phœnikians and all the Kyprians and Egyptians who had followed him in his Eastern campaigns, and from these he selected such as were skilled in seamanship to manage the vessels and work the oars. He had besides in his army not a few islanders familiar with that kind of work, and also natives both of Ionia and of the Hellespont. The following officers he appointed as Commanders of the different galleys<sup>11</sup> :—

Makedonians.

Citizens of Pella.

1. Hephaistiôn, son of Amyntor.
2. Leonnatos, son of Anteias.
3. Lysimakhos, son of Agathoklês.
4. Asklepiodôros, son of Timander.
5. Arkhôn, son of Kleinias.

---

<sup>11</sup> This list does not specify those officers who performed the voyage, but such as had a temporary command during the passage down the river. The only names which occur afterwards in the narrative are those of Arkhias and Onésikritos. Nearkhos, by his silence, leaves it uncertain whether any other officers enumerated in his list accompanied him throughout the expedition. The following are known not to have done so: Hephaistion, Leonnatos, Lysimakhos, Ptolemy, Krateros, Attalos and Peukestas. It does not clearly appear what number of ships or men accompanied Nearkhos to the conclusion of the voyage. If we suppose the ships of war only fit for the service, 30 galleys might possibly contain from two to three thousand men, but this estimation is uncertain.

See Vincent, l. 118 sqq.



6. Demonikos, son of Athenaios.
7. Arkhias, son of Anaxidotos.
8. Ophellas, son of Seilénos.
9. Timanthés, son of Pantiadés.  
Of Amphipolis.
10. Nearkhos, son of Androtimos, who wrote a  
narrative of the voyage.
11. Laomedôn, son of Larikhos.
12. Androsthénés, son of Kallistratos.  
Of Oresis.
13. Krateros, son of Alexander.
14. Perdikkas, son of Orontes.  
Of Eórdaiia.
15. Ptolemaios, son of Lagos.
16. Aristonous, son of Peisaios.  
Of Pydna.
17. Metrôn, son of Epikharmos.
18. Nikarkhidés, son of Simos.  
Of Stymphaia.
19. Attalos, son of Andromenés.  
Of Mieza.
20. Peukestas, son of Alexander.  
Of Alkomenai.
21. Peithôn, son of Krateuas.  
Of Aigai.
22. Leonnatos, son of Antipater.  
Of Alôros.
23. Pantoukhos, son of Nikolaós.  
Of Beroia.
24. Mylleas, son of Zôilos.  
All these were Makedonians.  
Greeks,—of Larisa :
25. Médios, son of Oxythemis.  
Of Kardia.

26. Eumenês, son of Hierônymos.  
Of Kôs.
27. Kritoboulos, son of Plato.  
Of Magnêsia :
28. Thoas, son of Ménodôros.
29. Maiander, son of Mandrogenês.  
Of Teos :
30. Andrôn, son of Kabêlas.  
Of Soloi in Cyprus :
31. Nikokleês, son of Pasikratês.  
Of Salamis in Cyprus :
32. Nithaphôn, son of Pnutagoras.
- A Persian was also appointed as a Trierarch :
33. Bagoas, son of Pharnoukhês.

The Pilot and Master of Alexander's own ship was Onêsikritos of Astypalaia, and the Secretary-General of the fleet Euagoras, the son of Eukleôn, a Corinthian. Nearkhos, the son of Androtîmos, a Kretan by birth, but a citizen of Amphipolis on the Strymôn was appointed as Admiral of the expedition.

When these dispositions had been all completed, Alexander sacrificed to his ancestral gods, and to such as had been indicated by the oracle; also to Poseidôn and Amphitritê and the Nêreids, and to Okeanos himself, and to the River Hydaspês, from which he was setting forth on his enterprise; and to the Akesinês into which the Hydaspês pours its stream, and to the Indus which receives both these rivers. He further celebrated the occasion by holding contests in music and gymnastics, and by distributing to the whole army, rank by rank, the sacrificial victims.

XIX. When all the preparations for the voyage

had been made, Alexander ordered Krateros, with a force of horse and foot, to go to one side of the Hydaspês; while Hephaistiôn commanding a still larger force, which included 200 elephants, should march in a parallel line on the other side. Alexander himself had under his immediate command the body of foot guards called the Hypaspists, and all the archers, and what was called the companion-cavalry,—a force consisting in all of 8,000 men. The troops under Krateros and Hephaistiôn marching in advance of the fleet had received instructions where they were to wait its arrival. Philip, whom he had appointed satrap of this region, was despatched to the banks of the Akesinês with another large division, for by this time he had a following of 120,000 soldiers,<sup>12</sup> including those whom he had himself led up from the sea-coast, as well as the recruits enlisted by the agents whom he had deputed to collect an army, when he admitted to his ranks barbarous tribes of all countries in whatever way they might be armed. Then weighing anchor, he sailed down the Hydaspês to its point of junction with the Akesinês. The ships numbered altogether 1800, including the long narrow war galleys, the round-shaped roomy merchantmen, and the transports for carrying horses and provisions to feed the army. But how the fleet sailed down the rivers, and what tribes Alexander conquered in the course of the voyage, and how he was in danger among the Malli,<sup>13</sup> and

<sup>12</sup> So also Plutarch in the *Life of Alexander* (C.66) says that in returning from India Alexander had 120,000 foot and 15,000 cavalry.

<sup>13</sup> Sansk. Malava. The name is preserved in the modern Moultan.

how he was wounded in their country, and how Peukestas and Leonnatos covered him with their shields when he fell,—all these incidents have been already related in my other work, that which is written in the Attic dialect.<sup>14</sup> My present object is to give an account of the coasting voyage which Nearkhos accomplished with the fleet when starting from the mouths of the Indus he sailed through the great ocean as far as the Persian Gulf, called by some the Red Sea.

XX. Nearkhos himself has supplied a narrative of this voyage, which runs to this effect. Alexander, he informs us, had set his heart on navigating the whole circuit of the sea which extends from India to Persia, but the length of the voyage made him hesitate, and the possibility of the destruction of his fleet, should it be cast on some desert coast either quite harbourless or too barren to furnish adequate supplies; in which case a great stain tarnishing the splendour of his former actions would obliterate all his good fortune. His ambition, however, to be always doing something new and astonishing prevailed over all his scruples. Then arose a difficulty as to what commander he should choose, having genius sufficient for working out his plans, and a difficulty also with regard to the men on ship-board how he could overcome their fear, that in being despatched on such a service they were recklessly sent into open peril. Nearkhos here tells us that Alexander consulted him on the choice of a commander, and that when the king had mentioned

---

<sup>14</sup> Anab. VI. 11.

one man after another, rejecting all, some because they were not inclined to expose themselves for his sake to danger, others because they were of a timid temper, others because their only thought was how to get home, making this and that objection to each in turn, Nearkhos then proffered his own services in these terms: "I, then, O king, engage to command the expedition, and, under the divine protection, will conduct the fleet and the people on board safe into Persia, if the sea be that way navigable, and the undertaking within the power of man to perform." Alexander made a pretence of refusing the offer, saying that he could not think of exposing any friend of his to the distresses and hazard of such a voyage, but Nearkhos, so far from withdrawing his proposal, only persisted the more in pressing its acceptance upon him. Alexander, it need not be said, warmly appreciated the promptitude to serve him shown by Nearkhos, and appointed him to be commander-in-chief of the expedition. When this became known, it had a great effect in calming the minds of the troops ordered on this service and on the minds of the sailors, since they felt assured that Alexander would never have sent forth Nearkhos into palpable danger unless their lives were to be preserved. At the same time the splendour with which the ships were equipped, and the enthusiasm of the officers vying with each other who should collect the best men, and have his complement most effective, inspired even those who had long hung back with nerve for the work, and a good hope that success would crown the undertaking. It added to the cheer-

fulness pervading the army that Alexander himself sailed out from both the mouths of the Indus into the open main when he sacrificed victims to Poseidôn and all the other sea-deities, and presented gifts of great magnificence to the sea; and so the men trusting to the immeasurable good fortune which had hitherto attended all the projects of Alexander, believed there was nothing he might not dare—nothing but would to him be feasible.

XXI. When the Etesian winds,<sup>15</sup> which continue all the hot season blowing landward from the sea, making navigation on that coast impracticable, had subsided, then the expedition started on the voyage in the year when Kephsidros was Archon at Athens, on the 20th day of the month Boëdromion according to the Athenian Kalendar, but as the Makedonians and Asiatics reckon \* \* in the 11th year of the reign of Alexander.<sup>16</sup> Nearchos, before putting to

---

<sup>15</sup> The general effect of the monsoon Nearchos certainly knew; he was a native of Crete, and a resident at Amphipolis, both which lie within the track of the annual or Etesian winds, which commencing from the Hellespont and probably from the Euxine sweep the Egæan sea, and stretching quite across the Mediterranean to the coast of Africa, entered through Egypt to Nubia or Ethiopia. Arrian has accordingly mentioned the monsoon by the name of the Etesian winds; his expression is remarkable, and attended with a precision that does his accuracy credit. These Etesian winds, says he, do not blow from the north in the summer months as with us in the Mediterranean, but from the South. On the commencement of winter, or at latest on the setting of the Pleiades, the sea is said to be navigable till the winter solstice (*Anab. VI. 21-1*) Vincent I. 43 sq.

<sup>16</sup> The date here fixed by Arrian is the 2nd of October 326 B.C., but the computation now generally accepted refers the event to the year after to suit the chronology of Alexander's subsequent history (see Clinton's *F. Hell. II.* pp. 174 and 563, 3rd ed.). There was an Archon called

sea sacrifices to Zeus the Preserver, and celebrates, as Alexander had done, gymnastic games. Then clearing out of harbour they end the first day's voyage by anchoring in the Indus at a creek called Stoura, where they remain for two days. The distance of this place from the station they had just left was 100 stadia. On the third day they resumed the voyage, but proceeded no further than 30 stadia, coming to an anchor at another creek, where the water was now salt, for the sea when filled with the tide ran up the creek, and its waters even when the tide receded commingled with the river. The name of this place was Kau-mana. The next day's course, which was of 20 stadia only, brought them to Koreätis, where they once more anchored in the river. When again under weigh their progress was soon interrupted, for a bar was visible which there obstructed the mouth of the Indus; and the waves were heard breaking with furious roar upon its strand which was wild and rugged. Observing, however, that the bar at a particular part was soft, they made a cutting through this, 5 stadia long, *at low water*; and on the return of the flood-tide carried the ships through by the passage thus formed into the

---

Kephisidoros in office in the year B.C. 323-322; so Arrian has here either made a mistake, or perhaps an Archon of the year 326-325 may have died during his tenure of office, and a substitute called Kephisidōros been elected to fill the vacancy. The *lacuna* marked by the asterisks has been supplied by inserting the name of the Makedonian month Dios. The Ephesians adopted the names of the months used by the Makedonians, and so began their year with the month Dios, the first day of which corresponds to the 24th of September. The 20th day of Boedromion of the year B.C. 325 corresponded to the 21st of September.

open sea.<sup>17</sup> Then following the winding of the coast they ran a course of 120 stadia, and reach Krókala,<sup>18</sup>

<sup>17</sup> Regarding the sunken reef encountered by the fleet after leaving Koreatis, Sir Alexander Burnes says: "Near the mouth of the river we passed a rock stretching across the stream, which is particularly mentioned by Nearchus, who calls it a *dangerous rock*, and is the more remarkable since there is not even a stone below Tatta in any other part of the Indus." The rock, he adds, is at a distance of six miles up the Pitti. "It is vain," says Captain Wood in the narrative of his *Journey to the Source of the Omus*, "in the delta of such a river (as the Indus), to identify existing localities with descriptions handed down to us by the historians of Alexander the Great. . . . (but) Burnes has, I think, shown that the mouth by which the Grecian fleet left the Indus was the modern Pitti. The 'dangerous rock' of Nearchus completely identifies the spot, and as it is still in existence, without any other within a circle of many miles, we can wish for no stronger evidence." With regard to the canal dug through this rock, Burnes remarks: "The Greek admiral only availed himself of the experience of the people, for it is yet customary among the natives of Sind to dig shallow canals, and leave the tides or river to deepen them; and a distance of five stadia, or half a mile, would call for not great labour. It is not to be supposed that sandbanks will continue unaltered for centuries, but I may observe that there was a large bank contiguous to the island, between it and which a passage like that of Nearchus might have been dug with the greatest advantage." The same author thus describes the mouth of the Pitti:—"Beginning from the westward we have the Pitti mouth, an embouchure of the Buggaur, that falls into what may be called the Bay of Karáchi. It has no bar, but a large sandbank, together with an island outside prevent a direct passage into it from the sea, and narrow the channel to about half a mile at its mouth."

<sup>18</sup> All inquirers have agreed in identifying the Kolaka of Ptolemy, and the sandy island of Krokola where Nearchus tarried with his fleet for one day, with a small island in the bay of Karáchi. Krokala is further described as lying off the mainland of the Arabii. It was 150 stadia, or 17½ miles, from the western mouth of the Indus,—which agrees exactly with the relative positions of Karáchi and the mouth of the Ghára river, if, as we may fairly assume, the present coast-line has advanced five or six miles during the twenty-one centuries that have elapsed since the death of Alexander. The identification is confirmed by the fact that the district in which Karáchi is situated is called Karkalla to this day. Cunningham *Geog. of An. India*, I. p. 306.



a sandy island where they anchored and remained all next day. The country adjoining was inhabited by an Indian race called the Arabies, whom I have mentioned in my longer work, where it is stated that they derive their name from the River Arabis, which flows through their country to the sea, and parts them from the Oreitai.<sup>19</sup> Weighing from Krokala they had on their right hand a mountain which the natives called Eiros, and on their left a flat island almost level with the sea, and so near the mainland to which it runs parallel that the intervening channel is extremely narrow. Having quite cleared this passage they come to anchor in a well-sheltered harbour, which Nearkhos, finding large and commodious, designated Alexander's Haven. This harbour is protected by an island lying about 2 stadia off from its entrance. It is called Bibakta, and all the country round about Sangada.<sup>20</sup> The existence of the harbour is due altogether to the island which opposes a barrier to the violence of the sea. Here heavy gales blew from seaward for many days without intermission, and Nearkhos

<sup>19</sup> The name of the Arabii is variously written,—Arabites, Arbii, Arabies, Arbies, Aribes, Arbiti. The name of their river has also several forms,—Arabis, Arabius, Artabis, Artabius. It is now called the Purâli, the river which flows through the present district of Las into the bay of Sonmiyâni. The name of the Oreitai in Curtius is Horitæ. Cunningham identifies them with the people on the Aghor river, whom he says the Greeks would have named Agoritæ or Aoritæ, by the suppression of the guttural, of which a trace still remains in the initial aspirate of 'Horitæ.' Some would connect the name with Haur, a town which lay on the route to Firabaz, in Mekkân.

<sup>20</sup> This name Sangada, D'Anville thought, survived in that of a race of noted pirates who infested the shores of the gulf of Kachh, called the Sangadians or Sangarians.

fearing lest the barbarians might, some of them, combine to attack and plunder the camp, fortified his position with an enclosure of stones. Here they were obliged to remain for 24 days. The soldiers, we learn from Nearkhos, caught mussels and oysters, and what is called the razor-fish, these being all of an extraordinary size as compared with the sorts found in our own sea.<sup>21</sup> He adds that they had no water to drink but what was brackish.

XXII. As soon as the monsoon ceased they put again to sea, and having run fully 60 stadia came to anchor at a sandy beach under shelter of a desert island that lay near, called Domai.<sup>22</sup> On the shore itself there was no water, but 20 stadia inland it was procured of good quality. The following day they proceeded 300 stadia to Saranga, where they did not arrive till night. They anchored close to the shore, and found water at a distance of about 8 stadia from it. Weighing from Saranga they reach Sakala, a desert place, and anchored. On leaving it they passed two rocks so close to each other that the oar-blades of the galleys grazed both, and after a course of 300 stadia they came to anchor at Morontobara.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>21</sup> "The pearl oyster abounds in 11 or 12 fathoms of water all along the coast of Scinde. There was a fishery in the harbour of Kurrachee which had been of some importance in the days of the native rulers."—*Wanderings of a Naturalist in India*, p. 36.

<sup>22</sup> This island is not known, but it probably lay near the rocky headland of Irus, now called M a n o r á, which protects the port of Karáchi from the sea and bad weather.

<sup>23</sup> "The name of Morontobara," says Cunningham, "I would identify with Muári, which is now applied to the headland of Rás Muári or Cape Monze, the last point of the Pab range of mountains. Bára, or Bári, means a

The harbour here was deep and capacious, and well sheltered all round, and its waters quite tranquil, but the entrance into it was narrow. In the native language it was called Women's Haven, because a woman had been the first sovereign of the place. They thought it a great achievement to have passed those two rocks in safety, for when they were passing them the sea was boisterous and running high. They did not remain in Morontobara, but sailed the day after their arrival, when they had on their left hand an island which sheltered them from the sea, and which lay so near to the mainland that the intervening channel looked as if it had been artificially formed. Its length from one end to the other was 70 stadia.<sup>24</sup> The shore was woody and the island throughout over-grown with trees of every description. They were not able to get fairly through this passage

---

roadstead or haven; and Moranta is evidently connected with the Persian *Mard* a man, of which the feminine is still preserved in Kásmíri as *Mahrin* a woman. From the distances given by Arrian, I am inclined to fix it at the mouth of the Bahar rivulet, a small stream which falls into the sea about midway between Cape Monze and Sonmiyáni." *Women's Haven* is mentioned by Ptolemy and Ammianus Marcellinus. There is in the neighbourhood a mountain now called M o r, which may be a remnant of the name Morontobari. The channel through which the fleet passed after leaving this place no longer exists, and the island has of course disappeared.

<sup>24</sup> The coast from Karáchi to the Puráli has undergone considerable changes, so that the position of the intermediate places cannot be precisely determined. "From Cape Monze to Sonmiyáni," says Blair, "the coast bears evident marks of having suffered considerable alterations from the encroachments of the sea. We found trees which had been washed down, and which afforded us a supply of fuel. In some parts I saw imperfect creeks in a parallel direction with the coast. These might probably be the vestiges of that narrow channel through which the Greek galleys passed."

till towards daybreak, for the sea was not only rough, but also shoal, the tide being at ebb. They sailed on continuously, and after a course of 120 stadia anchored at the mouth of the river Arabis, where there was a spacious and very fine haven.<sup>25</sup> The water here was not fit for drinking, for the sea ran up the mouths of the Arabis. Having gone, however, about 40 stadia up the river, they found a pool from which, having drawn water, they returned to the fleet. Near the harbour is an island high and bare, but the sea around it supplied oysters and fish of various kinds.<sup>26</sup> As far as this, the country was possessed by the Arabies,

<sup>25</sup> Ptolemy and Marcian enumerate the following places as lying between the Indus and the Arabis: Rhizana, Kolamba, Women's Haven, Phagiaura, Arbis. Ptolemy does not mention the Oreitai, but extends the Arabii to the utmost limit of the district assigned to them in Arrian. He makes, notwithstanding the river Arabis to be the boundary of the Arabii. His Arabis must therefore be identified not with the *Pôrâli*, but with the *Kurmut*, called otherwise the *Rumra* or *Kalami*, where the position of Arrian's Kalama must be fixed. Pliny (vi. 25) places a people whom he calls the Arbii between the Oritae and Karmania, assigning as the boundary between the Arbii and the Oritae the river Arbis.

<sup>26</sup> The Arabis or Purâli discharges its waters into the bay of Sonmiyâni. "Sonmiyâni," says Kempthorne, "is a small town or fishing village situated at the mouth of a creek which runs up some distance inland. It is governed by a Sheikh, and the inhabitants appear to be very poor, chiefly subsisting on dried fish and rice. A very extensive bar or sandbank runs across the mouth of this inlet, and none but vessels of small burden can get over it even at high water, but inside the water is deep." The inhabitants of the present day are as badly off for water as their predecessors of old. "Everything," says one who visited the place, "is scarce, even water, which is procured by digging a hole five or six feet deep, and as many in diameter, in a place which was formerly a swamp; and if the water oozes, which sometimes it does not, it serves them that day, and perhaps the next, when it turns quite brackish, owing to the nitrous quality of the earth."

the last Indian people living in this direction; and the parts beyond were occupied by the Oreitai.<sup>27</sup>

XXIII. On weighing from the mouths of the Arabis, they coasted the shores of the Oreitai, and after running 200 stadia reached Pagala,<sup>28</sup> where there was a surf but nevertheless good anchorage. The crew were obliged to remain on board, a party, however, being sent on shore to procure water. They sailed next morning at sunrise, and after a course of about 430 stadia, reached Kabana<sup>29</sup> in the evening, where they anchored at some distance from the shore, which was a desert; the violence of the surf by which the vessels were much tossed preventing them from landing. While running the last course the fleet had been caught in a heavy gale blowing from seaward, when two galleys and a transport foundered. All the men, however, saved themselves by swimming, as the vessels at the time of the disaster were sailing close to the shore. They weighed

---

<sup>27</sup> Strabo agrees with Arrian in representing the Oreitai as non-Indian. Cunningham, however, relying on statement made by Curtius, Diodorus and the Chinese pilgrim Hwen Thsang, a most competent observer, considers them to be of Indian origin, for their customs, according to the Pilgrim, were like those of the people of Kachh, and their written characters closely resembled those of India, while their language was only slightly different. The Oreitai as early as the 6th century B.C. were tributary to Darius Hystaspes, and they were still subject to Persia nearly 12 centuries later when visited by Hwen Thsang.—*Geog. of An. Ind.* pp. 304 sqq.

<sup>28</sup> Another form is Pegadae, met with in Philostratos, who wrote a work on India.

<sup>29</sup> To judge from the distances given, this place should be near the stream now called Agbor, on which is situated Harkānā. It is probably the Koiamba of Ptolemy.

from Kabana about midnight, and having proceeded 200 stadia arrived at Kôkala, where the vessels *could not be drawn on shore*, but rode at anchor out at sea. As the men, however, had suffered severely by confinement on board,<sup>30</sup> and were very much in want of rest, Nearkhos allowed them to go on shore, where he formed a camp, fortifying it in the usual manner for protection against the barbarians. In this part of the country Leonnatos, who had been commissioned by Alexander to reduce the Oreitai and settle their affairs, defeated that people and their allies in a great battle, wherein all the leaders and 6,000 men were slain, the loss of Leonnatos, being only 15 of his horse, besides a few foot-soldiers, and *one man of note* Apollophanês, the satrap of the Gedrosians.<sup>31</sup> A full account, however, of these transactions is given in my other work, where it is stated that for this service Leonnatos had a golden crown placed upon his head by Alexander in presence of the Makedonian army. Agreeably to orders given by Alexander, corn had been here collected for the victualling of the vessels, and stores sufficient to last for 10 days were put on board. Here also such ships as had been damaged during the

---

<sup>30</sup> "In vessels like those of the Greeks, which afforded neither space for motion, nor convenience for rest, the continuing on board at night was always a calamity. When a whole crew was to sleep on board, the suffering was in proportion to the confinement."—Vincent, I. p. 209 note.

<sup>31</sup> In another passage of Arrian (Anab. VI. 27, 1.) this Apollophanês is said to have been deposed from his satrapy, when Alexander was halting in the capital of Gedrosia. In the Journal Arrian follows Nearkhos, in the History, Ptolemy or Aristobûlus.—Vincent.

voyage were repaired, while all the mariners that Nearkhos considered deficient in fortitude for the enterprise, he consigned to Leonnatos to be taken on by land, but at the same time he made good his complement of men by taking in exchange others more efficient from the troops under Leonnatos.

XXIV. From this place they bore away with a fresh breeze, and having made good a course of 500 stadia anchored near a winter torrent called the Toméros, which at its mouth expanded into an estuary.<sup>32</sup> The natives lived on the marshy ground near the shore in cabins close and suffocating. Great was their astonishment when they descried the fleet approaching, but *they were not without courage*, and collecting in arms on the shore, drew up in line to attack the strangers when landing. They carried thick spears about 6 cubits long, not headed with iron, but what was as good, hardened at the point by fire. Their number was about 600, and when Nearkhos saw that they stood their ground prepared to fight, he ordered his vessels to advance, and then to anchor just within bowshot of the shore, for he had noticed that the thick spears of the barbarians were adapted only for close fight, and were by no means formidable as missiles. He then issued his directions: those men that were lightest equipped, and the most active and best at swim-

<sup>32</sup> From the distances given, the Toméros must be identified with the Maklow or Hingal river; some would, however, make it the Bhusál. The form of the name in Pliny is Tomberus, and in Mela—Tubero. These authors mention another river in connection with the Toméros,—the Arosapes or Arusaces.

ming were to swim to shore at a given signal: when any one had swum so far that he could stand in the water he was to wait for his next neighbour, and not advance against the barbarians until a file could be formed of three men deep: that done, they were to rush forward shouting the war-cry. The men selected for this service at once plunged into the sea, and swimming rapidly touched ground, still keeping due order, when forming in file, they rushed to the charge, shouting the war-cry, which was repeated from the ships, whence all the while arrows and missiles from engines were launched against the enemy. Then the barbarians terrified by the glittering arms and the rapidity of the landing, and wounded by the arrows and other missiles, against which they had no protection, being all but entirely naked, fled at once without making any attempt at resistance. Some perished in the ensuing flight, others were taken prisoners, and some escaped to the mountains. Those they captured had shaggy hair, not only on their head but all over their body; their nails resembled the claws of wild beasts, and were used, it would seem, instead of iron for dividing fish and splitting the softer kinds of wood. Things of a hard consistency they cut with sharp stones, for iron they had none. As clothing they wore the skins of wild beasts, and occasionally also the thick skins of the large sorts of fish.<sup>33</sup>

XXV. After this action they draw the ships on

---

<sup>33</sup> Similar statements are made regarding this savage race by Curtius IX. 10, 9; Diodoros XVII, 105; Pliny VI. 28; Strabo p. 720; Philostratos V. Ap. III., 57. Cf. Agatharkhides *passim*.—*Müller*.



shore and repair all that had been damaged. On the 6th day they weighed again, and after a course of 300 stadia reached a place called Malana, the last on the coast of the Oreitai.<sup>34</sup> In the interior these people dress like the Indians, and use similar weapons, but differ from them in their language and their customs. The length of the coast of the Arabies, measured from the place whence the expedition had sailed, was about 1,000 stadia, and the extent of the coast of the Oreitai 1,600 stadia. Nearkhos mentions that as they sailed along the Indian coast (for the people beyond this are not Indians), their shadows did not fall in the usual direction, for when they stood out a good way to the southward, their shadows appeared to turn and fall southward.<sup>35</sup> Those constellations,

<sup>34</sup> Its modern representative is doubtless Râs Malin, Malen or Moran.

<sup>35</sup> Such a phenomenon could not of course have been observed at Malana, which is about 2 degrees north of the Tropic, and Nearkhos, as has been already noticed (Introd. p. 155), has on account mainly of this statement been represented as a mendacious writer. Schmieder and Gosselin attempt to vindicate him by suggesting that Arrian in copying his journal had either missed the meaning of this passage, or altered it to bring it into accordance with his own geographical theories. Müller, however, has a better and probably the correct explanation to offer. He thinks that the text of Nearkhos which Arrian used contained passages interpolated from Onâsikritos and writers of his stamp. The interpolations may have been inserted by the Alexandrian geographers, who, following Eratosthenes, believed that India lay between the Tropics. In support of this view it is to be noted that Arrian's account of the shadow occurs in that part of his work where he is speaking of Malana of the Oreitai, and that Pliny (VIII. 75) gives a similar account of the shadows that fall on a mountain of a somewhat similar name in the country of that very people. His words are: *In Indiae gente, Oretum Mons est Maleus nomine, iuxta quem umbræ aestate in Austrum, hieme in Septentrionem*

moreover, which they had been accustomed to see high in the heavens, were either not visible at all, or were seen just on the verge of the horizon, while the Polar constellations which had formerly been always visible now set and soon afterwards rose again. In this Nearkhos appears to me to assert nothing improbable, for at Syênê in Egypt they show a well in which, when the sun is at the Tropic, there is no shadow at noon. In Meroë also objects project no shadow at that particular time. Hence it is probable that the shadow is subject to the same law in India which lies to the south, and more especially in the Indian ocean, which extends still further to the southward.

XXVI. Next to the Oreitai lies Gedrosia,<sup>36</sup> an inland province through which Alexander led his army, but this with difficulty, for the region was so desolate that the troops in the whole course of the expedition never suffered such direful extremities as on this march. But all the particulars

---

*jaciuntur.* Now Pliny was indebted for his knowledge of Mons Maleus to Baeton, who places it however not in the country of the Oreitai but somewhere in the lower Gangetic region among the Suari and Monedes. It would thus appear that what Baeton had said of *Mount Maleus* was applied to *Malana* of the Oreitai, no doubt on account of the likeness of the two names. Add to this that the expression in the passage under consideration, *for the people beyond this (Malana) are not Indians*, is no doubt an interpolation into the text of the Journal, for it makes the Oreitai to be an Indian people, whereas the Journal had a little before made the Arabies to be the last people of Indian descent living in this direction.

<sup>36</sup> This country, which corresponds generally to Mekran, was called also Kedrosia, Gadrosia, or Gadrusia. The people were an Arianian race akin to the Arakhosii, Arii, and Drangiani.

relating to this I have set down in my larger work (VI. 22-27). The seaboard below the Gedrosians is occupied by a people called the Ikthyo-phagi, and along this country the fleet now pursued its way. Weighing from Malana about the second watch they ran a course of 600 stadia, and reached Bagisára. Here they found a commodious harbour, and at a distance of 60 stadia from the sea a small town called Pasira, whence the people of the neighbourhood were called Pasireës.<sup>37</sup> Weighing early next morning they had to double a headland which projected far out into the sea, and was high and precipitous. Here having dug wells, and got only a small supply of bad water, they rode at anchor that day because a high surf prevented the vessels approaching the shore. They left this place next day, and sailed till they reached Kolta after a course of 200 stadia.<sup>38</sup> Weighing thence at daybreak they reached Kalama, after a course of

---

<sup>37</sup> Bagisara, says Kempthorne, "is now known by the name of *Arabah* or *Hormarah* Bay, and is deep and commodious with good anchorage, sheltered from all winds but those from the southward and eastward. The point which forms this bay is very high and precipitous, and runs out some distance into the sea. A rather large fishing village is situated on a low sandy isthmus about one mile across, which divides the bay from another. . . . The only articles of provision we could obtain from the inhabitants were a few fowls, some dried fish, and goats. They grow no kind of vegetable or corn, a few water-melons being the only thing these desolate regions bring forth. Sandy deserts extend into the interior as far as the eye can reach, and at the back of these rise high mountains." The *Rhapua* of Ptolemy corresponds to the Bagisara or Pasira of Arrian, and evidently survives in the present name of the bay and the headland of *Arabah*.

<sup>38</sup> Kolta.—A place unknown. It was situated on the western side of the isthmus which connects *Râs Araba* with the main land.

600 stadia, and there anchored.<sup>39</sup> Near the beach was a village around which grew a few palm-trees, the dates on which were still green. There was here an island called Karbinê, distant from the shore about 100 stadia.<sup>40</sup> The villagers by way

<sup>39</sup> A different form is Kaluboi. Situated on the river now called Kalamî, or Kumra, or Kurmut, the Arabis of Ptolemy, who was probably misled by the likeness of the name to Karbis as the littoral district was designated here.

<sup>40</sup> Other forms—Karnine, Karmina. The coast was probably called Karnin, if Karnis is represented in Kurmat. The island lying twelve miles off the mouth of the Kalamî is now called Astola or Sanga-dip, which Kempthorne thus describes:—"Ashtola is a small desolate island about four or five miles in circumference, situated twelve miles from the coast of Mekran. Its cliffs rise rather abruptly from the sea to the height of about 300 feet, and it is inaccessible except in one place, which is a sandy beach about one mile in extent on the northern side. Great quantities of turtle frequent this island for the purpose of depositing their eggs. Nearchus anchored off it, and called it Karnine. He says also that he received hospitable entertainment from its inhabitants, their presents being cattle and fish; but not a vestige of any habitation now remains. The Arabs come to this island, and kill immense numbers of these turtles,—not for the purpose of food, but they traffic with the shell to China, where it is made into a kind of paste, and then into combs, ornaments, &c., in imitation of tortoise-shell. The carcasses caused a stench almost unbearable. The only land animals we could see on the island were rats, and they were swarming. They feed chiefly on the dead turtle. The island was once famous as the rendezvous of the Jowassimee pirates." Vincent quotes Blair to this effect regarding the island:—"We were warned by the natives at Passende that it would be dangerous to approach the island of Asthola, as it was enchanted, and that a ship had been turned into a rock. The superstitious story did not deter us; we visited the island, found plenty of excellent turtle, and saw the rock alluded to, which at a distance had the appearance of a ship under sail. The story was probably told to prevent our disturbing the turtle. It has, however, some affinity to the tale of Nearchus's transport." As the enchanted island mentioned afterwards (chap. xxxi.), under the name of Nceala, was 100 stadia distant from the coast, it was probably the same as Karnine.

of showing their hospitality brought presents of sheep and fish to Nearkhos, who says that the mutton had a fishy taste like the flesh of sea birds for the sheep fed on fish, there being no grass in the place. Next day they proceeded 200 stadia, and anchored off a shore near which lay a village called Kissa, 30 stadia inland.<sup>41</sup> That coast was however called Karbis. There they found little boats such as might belong to miserably poor fishermen, but the men themselves they saw nothing of, for they had fled when they observed the ships dropping anchor. No corn was here procurable, but a few goats had been left, which were seized and put on board, for in the fleet provisions now ran short. On weighing they doubled a steep promontory, which projected about 150 stadia into the sea, and then put into a well-sheltered haven called Mosarna, where they anchored. Here the natives were fishermen, and here they obtained water.<sup>42</sup>

XXVII. From this place they took on board, Nearkhos says, as pilot of the fleet, a Gedrosian called Hydrakês, who undertook to conduct them as far as Karmania.<sup>43</sup> Thenceforth until they

<sup>41</sup> Another form of the name is Kysa.

<sup>42</sup> The place according to Ptolemy is 900 stadia distant from the Kalamî river, but according to Marcianus 1,300 stadia. It must have been situated in the neighbourhood of Cape Passence. The distances here are so great exaggerated that the text is suspected to be corrupt or disturbed. From Mosarna to Kophas the distance is represented as 1,750 stadia, and yet the distance from Cape Passence to Râs Koppa (the Kophas of the text) is barely 500 stadia. According to Ptolemy and Marcian Karmania begins at Mosarna, but according to Arrian much further westward, at Badis near Cape Jask.

<sup>43</sup> "From the name given to this pilot I imagine that he was an inhabitant of Hydriakus, a town near the bay

reached the Persian Gulf, the voyage was more practicable, and the names of the stations more familiar. Departing from Mosarna at night, they sailed 750 stadia, and reached the coast of Balômon. They touched next at Barna, which was 400 stadia distant.<sup>44</sup> Here grew many palm trees, and here was a garden wherein were myrtles and flowers from which the men wove chaplets for their hair.<sup>45</sup> They saw now for the first time cultivated trees, and met with natives in a condition above that of mere savages. Leaving this they followed the winding of the coast, and arrived at Dendrobosa, where they anchor in the open sea.<sup>46</sup> They weighed from this about midnight, and after a course of about 400 stadia gained the haven of

---

of Churber or Chewabad. . . . Upon the acquisition of Hydrakes or the Hydrakan two circumstances occur, that give a new face to the future course of the voyage, one is the very great addition to the length of each day's course; and the other, that they generally weighed during the night: the former depending upon the confidence they acquired by having a pilot on board; and the latter on the nature of the land breeze."—Vincent I., p. 244.

<sup>44</sup> This place is called in Ptolemy and Marcianus Badera or Bodera, and may have been situated near the Cape now called Chemaui Bunder. It is mentioned under the form Balara by Philostratus (Vit. Apoll. III. 56), whose description of the place is in close agreement with Arrian's.

<sup>45</sup> *τῇσι κόμῃσιν*. Another reading, not so good however, is, *τῇσι κομήτησιν* for the village women, but the Greeks were not likely to have indulged in such gallantry. Wearing chaplets in the hair on festive occasions was a common practice with the Greeks. Cf. our author's Anab. V. 2. 8.

<sup>46</sup> In Ptolemy a place is mentioned called Derenoibila, which may be the same as this. The old name perhaps survives in the modern Darâm or Duram, the name of a highland on part of the coast between Cape Passence and Cape Guadel.

Kôphas.<sup>47</sup> The inhabitants were fishermen possessed of small and wretched boats, which they did not manage with oars fastened to a row-lock according to the Grecian manner, but with paddles which they thrust on this side, and on that into the water, like diggers using a spade. They found at this haven plenty of good water. Weighing about the first watch they ran 800 stadia, and put into Kyiza, where was a desert shore with a high surf breaking upon it.<sup>48</sup> They were accordingly obliged to let the ships ride at anchor and take their meal on board. Leaving this they ran a course of 500 stadia, and came to a small town built on an eminence not far from the shore. On turning his eyes in that direction Nearkhos noticed that the land had some appearance of being cultivated, and thereupon addressing Arkhias (who was the son of Anaxidotos of Pella, and sailed in the Commander's galley, being a Makedonian of distinction) pointed out to him

---

<sup>47</sup> The name appears to survive in a cognominal Cape—Râs Coppa. The natives use the same kind of boat to this day; it is a curve made of several small planks nailed or sewn together in a rude manner with cord made from the bark of date trees and called *kair*, the whole being then smeared over with dammer or pitch.—*Kemphorne*.

<sup>48</sup> According to Ptolemy and Marcianus this place lay 400 stadia to the west of the promontory of Alambator (now Râs Guadel). Some trace of the word may be recognized in Râs Ghunse, which now designates a point of land situated about those parts. Arrian passes Cape Guadel without notice. "We should be reasonably surprised at this," says Vincent (I. 248), "as the doubling of a cape is always an achievement in the estimation of a Greek navigator; but having now a native pilot on board, it is evident he took advantage of the land-breeze to give the fleet an offing. This is clearly the reason why we hear nothing in Arrian of Ptolemy's Alabagium, or Alambateir, the prominent feature of this coast."

that they must take possession of the place, as the inhabitants would not willingly supply the army with food. It could not however be taken by assault, a tedious siege would be necessary, and they were already short of provisions. But the country was one that produced corn as the thick stubble which they saw covering the fields near the shore clearly proved. This proposal being approved of by all, he ordered Arkhias to make a feint of preparing the fleet, all but one ship to sail, while he himself, pretending to be left behind with that ship, approached the town as if merely to view it.

XXVIII. When he approached the walls the inhabitants came out to meet him, bringing a present of tunny-fish broiled in pans (the first instance of cookery among the Ikhthyophagi, although these were the very last of them), accompanied with small cakes and dates. He accepted their offering with the proper acknowledgments, but said he wished to see their town, which he was accordingly allowed to enter. No sooner was he within the gates than he ordered two of his archers to seize the portal by which they had entered, while he himself with two attendants and his interpreter mounting the wall hard by, made the preconcerted signal, on seeing which the troops under Arkhias were to perform the service assigned to them. The Makedonians, on seeing the signal, immediately ran their ships towards land, and without loss of time jumped into the sea. The barbarians, alarmed at these proceedings, flew to arms. Upon this Nearkhos ordered his interpreter to proclaim that if they wished their city to be preserved from pillage they must supply his army



with provisions. They replied that they had none, and proceeded to attack the wall, but were repulsed by the archers with Nearkhos, who assailed them with arrows from the summit of the wall. Accordingly, when they saw that their city was taken, and on the point of being pillaged, they at once begged Nearkhos to take whatever corn they had, and to depart without destroying the place. Nearkhos upon this orders Arkhias to possess himself of the gates and the ramparts adjoining, and sends at the same time officers to see what stores were available, and whether these would be all honestly given up. The stores were produced, consisting of a kind of meal made from fish roasted, and a little wheat and barley, for the chief diet of these people was fish with bread added as a relish. The troops having appropriated these supplies returned to the fleet, which then hauled off to a cape in the neighbourhood called Bagia, which the natives regarded as sacred to the sun.<sup>49</sup>

XXIX. They weighed from this cape about midnight, and having made good a course of 1,000 stadia, put into Talmena, where they found a harbour with good anchorage.<sup>50</sup> They sailed

<sup>49</sup> *The little town attacked by Nearchus* lay on Gwattar Bay. The promontory in its neighbourhood called Bagia is mentioned by Ptolemy and Marcianus, the latter of whom gives its distance from Kyiza at 250 stadia, which is but half the distance as given by Arrian. To the west of this was the river Kaudryaces or Hydriaces, the modern Baghwar Dasti or Muhani river, which falls into the Bay of Gwattar.

<sup>50</sup> A name not found elsewhere. To judge by the distance assigned, it must be placed on what is now called Chaubar Bay, on the shores of which are three towns, one being called Tiz,—perhaps the modern representative of Tisa, a place in those parts mentioned by Ptolemy, and which may have been the Talmena of Arrian.

thence to Kanasis, a deserted town 400 stadia distant, where they find a well ready-dug and wild palm-trees.<sup>51</sup> These they cut down, using the tender heads to support life since provisions had again run scarce. They sailed all day and all night suffering great distress from hunger, and then came to an anchor off a desolate coast. Nearkhos fearing lest the men, if they landed, would in despair desert the fleet, ordered the ships to be moved to a distance from shore. Weighing from this they ran a course of 850 stadia, and came to anchor at Kanate, a place with an open beach and some water-courses.<sup>52</sup> Weighing again, and making 800 stadia, they reach Taoi, where they drop anchor.<sup>53</sup> The place contained some small and wretched villages, which were deserted by the inhabitants upon the approach of the fleet. Here the men found a little food and dates of the palm-tree, beside seven camels left by the villagers which were killed for food. Weighing thence about daybreak they ran a course of 300 stadia, and came to anchor at Dagasira, where the people were nomadic.<sup>54</sup> Weighing again they sailed all night and all day without intermission, and having thus accomplished a course of 1,100

<sup>51</sup> The name is not found elsewhere. It must have been situated on a bay enclosed within the two headlands Râs Fuggem and Râs Godem.

<sup>52</sup> Kanate probably stood on the site of the modern Kungoun, which is near Râs Kalat, and not far from the river Bunt.

<sup>53</sup> Another and the common form is Troisi. The villages of the Taoi must have been where the Sudich river enters the sea. Here Ptolemy places his Kommana or Nommana and his follower Marcian his Ommana. See ante p. 104 note.

<sup>54</sup> The place in Ptolemy is called Agrispolis,—in Marcianus, Agrisa. The modern name is Girishk.

stadia, left behind them the nation of the Ikhthyophagi, on whose shores they had suffered such severe privations. They could not approach the beach on account of the heavy surf, but rode at anchor out at sea. In navigating the Ikhthyophagi coast the distance traversed was not much short of 10,000 stadia. The people, as their name imports, live upon fish. Few of them, however, are fishermen, and what fish they obtain they owe mostly to the tide at whose reflux they catch them with nets made for this purpose. These nets are generally about 2 stadia long, and are composed of the bark (or fibres) of the palm, which they twine into cord in the same way as the fibres of flax are twined. When the sea recedes, hardly any fish are found among the dry sands, but they abound in the depressions of the surface where the water still remains. The fish are for the most part small, though some are caught of a considerable size, these being taken in the nets. The more delicate kinds they eat raw as soon as they are taken out of the water. The large and coarser kinds they dry in the sun, and when properly dried grind into a sort of meal from which they make bread. This meal is sometimes also used to bake cakes with. The cattle as well as their masters fare on dried fish, for the country has no pastures, and hardly even a blade of grass. In most parts crabs, oysters and mussels add to the means of subsistence. Natural salt is found in the country, \* \* \* from these they make oil.<sup>55</sup>

---

<sup>55</sup> Schmieder suggests that instead of the common reading here *ἀπὸ τούτων ἔλαιον ποίουσιν* Arrian may have written *ἀπὸ θύνων ε. π.* they make oil from thunnies, i. e. use the fat for oil.

Certain of their communities inhabit deserts where not a tree grows, and where there are not even wild fruits. Fish is their sole means of subsistence. In some few places, however, they sow with grain some patches of land, and eat the produce as a viand of luxury along with the fish which forms the staple of their diet. The better class of the population in building their houses use, instead of wood, the bones of whales stranded on the coast, the broadest bones being employed in the framework of the doors. Poor people, and these are the great majority, construct their dwellings with the backbones of fish.<sup>56</sup>

XXX. Whales of enormous size frequent the outer ocean, besides other fish larger than those found in the Mediterranean. Nearkhos relates that when they were bearing away from Kyiza, the sea early in the morning was observed to be blown up into the air as if by the force of a whirlwind. The men greatly alarmed enquired of the pilots the nature and cause of this phenomenon, and were informed that it proceeded from the blowing of the whales as they sported in the sea. This report did not quiet their alarm, and through astonishment they let the oars drop from their hands. Nearkhos, however, recalled them to duty, and encouraged them by his presence, ordering the prows of those vessels that were near him to be turned as in a sea-fight towards the creatures as they approached, while the rowers were just then to shout as loud as they could the *alala*,

---

<sup>56</sup> "This description of the natives, with that of their mode of living and the country they inhabit, is strictly correct even to the present day."—Kempthorne.

and swell the noise by dashing the water rapidly with the oars. The men thus encouraged on seeing the preconcerted signal advanced to action. Then, as they approached the monsters, they shouted the *alala* as loud as they could bawl, sounded the trumpets, and dashed the water noisily with the oars. Thereupon the whales, which were seen ahead, plunged down terror-struck into the depths, and soon after rose astern, when they vigorously continued their blowing. The men by loud acclamations expressed their joy at this unexpected deliverance, the credit of which they gave to Nearkhos, who had shown such admirable fortitude and judgment.

We learn further, that on many parts of the coast whales are occasionally stranded, being left in shallow water at ebb-tide, and thus prevented from escaping back to sea, and that they are sometimes also cast ashore by violent storms. Thus perishing, their flesh rots away, and gradually drops off till the bones are left bare. These are used by the natives in the construction of their huts, the larger ribs making suitable bearing beams, and the smaller serving for rafters. The jaw-bones make arches for the door-ways, for whales are sometimes five and twenty *orguice* (fathoms) in length.<sup>57</sup>

XXXI. When they were sailing along the Ikhtyophagi coast, they were told about an island which was said to be about 100 stadia dis-

---

<sup>57</sup> Strabo (XV. ii. 12, 13) has extracted from Nearkhos the same passage regarding whales. See Nearchi fragm. 25. Cf Onesikritos (fr. 30) and Orthagoras in Aelian. N. An. XVII. 6; Diodor. XVII, 106; Curtius X. 1, 11.

tant from the mainland, and uninhabited. Its name was Nosala, and it was according to the local tradition sacred to the sun. No one willingly visited this island, and if any one was carried to it unawares, he was never more seen. Nearkhos states that a transport of his fleet, manned with an Egyptian crew, disappeared not far from this island, and that the pilots accounted for their disappearance by saying that they must have landed on the island in ignorance of the danger which they would thereby incur. Nearkhos, however, sent a galley of 30 oars to sail round the island, instructing the men not to land, but to approach as near as they could to the shore, and hail the men, shouting out the name of the captain or any other name they had not forgotten. No one answered to the call, and Nearkhos says that he then sailed in person to the island, and compelled his company much against their will to go on shore. He too landed, and showed that the story about the island was nothing but an empty fable. Concerning this same island he heard also another story, which ran to this effect: it had been at one time the residence of one of the Nereids, whose name, he says, he could not learn. It was her wont to have intercourse with any man who visited the island, changing him thereafter into a fish, and casting him into the sea. The sun, however, being displeased with the Nereid, ordered her to remove from the island. She agreed to do this, and seek a home elsewhere, but stipulated that she should be cured of her malady. To this condition the sun assented, and then the Nereid, taking pity upon

the men whom she had transformed into fish, restored them to their human shape. These men were the progenitors of the Ikhtyophagi, the line of succession remaining unbroken down to the time of Alexander. Now, for my part I have no praise to bestow on Nearkhos for expending so much time and ingenuity on the not very difficult task of proving the falsehood of these stories, for, to take up antiquated fables merely with a view to prove their falsehood, I can only regard as a contemptible piece of folly.<sup>58</sup>

XXXII. To the Ikhtyophagi succeed the Gadrôsi, who occupy a most wretched tract of country full of sandy deserts, in penetrating which Alexander and his army were reduced to the greatest extremities, of which an account is to be found in my other work. But this is an inland region, and therefore when the expedition left the Ikhtyophagi, its course lay along Karmania.<sup>59</sup> Here, when they first drew towards shore,

<sup>58</sup> The story of the Nereid is evidently an Eastern version of the story of the enchantress Kirkê. The island here called Nosala is that already mentioned under the name of Karkine, now Asthola.

<sup>59</sup> Karmania extended from Cape Jask to Râs Nabend, and comprehended the districts now called Moghostân, Kirman, and Lâristan. Its metropolis, according to Ptolemy, was Karmana, now Kirman, which gives its name to the whole province. The first port in Karmania reached by the expedition was in the neighbourhood of Cape Jask, where the coast is described as being very rocky, and dangerous to mariners on account of shoals and rocks under water. Kempthorne says: "The cliffs along this part of the coast are very high, and in many places almost perpendicular. Some have a singular appearance, one near Jask being exactly of the shape of a quoin or wedge; and another is a very remarkable peak, being formed by three stones, as if placed by human hands, one on the top of the other. It is very high, and has the resemblance of a chimney."

they could not effect a landing, but had to remain all night on board anchored in the deep, because a violent surf spread along the shore and far out to sea. Thereafter the direction of their course changed, and they sailed no longer towards sunset, but turned the heads of the vessels more to the north-west. Karmania is better wooded and produces better fruit than the country either of the Ikththyophagi or the Oreitai. It is also more grassy, and better supplied with water. They anchor next at Badis, an inhabited place in Karmania, where grew cultivated trees of many different kinds, with the exception of the olive, and where also the soil favoured the growth of the vine and of corn.<sup>60</sup> Weighing thence they ran 800 stadia, and came to an anchor off a barren coast, whence they descried a headland projecting far out into the sea, its nearest extremity being to appearance about a day's sail distant. Persons acquainted with those regions asserted that this cape belonged to Arabia, and was called Maketa, whence cinnamon and other products were exported to the Assyrians.<sup>61</sup> And from this coast where

---

<sup>60</sup> Badis must have been near where the village of Jask now stands, beyond which was the promontory now called Râs Kerazi or Keroot or Bombarak, which marks the entrance to the Straits of Ormus. This projection is the Cape Karpella of Ptolemy. Badis may be the same as the Kanthatis of this geographer.

<sup>61</sup> Maketa is now called Cape Mesandum in Omân. It is thus described by Palgrave in the Narrative of his Travels through Central and Eastern Arabia (Vol. II. pp. 316-7). The afternoon was already far advanced when we reached the headland, and saw before us the narrow sea-pass which runs between the farthest rocks of Mesandum and the mainland of the Cape. This strait is called the "Bab" or "gate:" it presents an imposing spectacle, with lofty precipices on either side, and the water flowing deep and black



the fleet was now anchored, and from the headland which they saw projecting into the sea right opposite, the gulf in my opinion (which is also that of Nearkhos) extends up into the interior, and is probably the Red Sea. When this headland was now in view Onesikritos, *the chief pilot*, proposed that they should proceed to explore it, and by so shaping their course, escape the distressing passage up the gulf; but Nearkhos opposed this proposal. Onesikritos, he said, must be wanting in ordinary judgment if he did not know with what design Alexander had sent the fleet on this voyage. He certainly had not sent it, because there were no proper means of conducting the whole army safely by land, but his express purpose was to obtain a knowledge of the coasts they might pass on their voyage, together with the harbours and islets, and to have the bays that might occur explored, and to ascertain whether there were towns bordering on the ocean, and whether the countries were habitable or desert. They ought not therefore to lose sight of this object, seeing that they were now near the end of their toils, and especially that they were no longer in want of the necessary supplies for prosecuting the voyage.

---

below; the cliffs are utterly bare and extremely well adapted for shivering whatever vessels have the ill luck to come upon them. Hence and from the ceaseless dash of the dark waves, the name of "Mesandum" or "Anvil," a term seldom better applied. But this is not all, for some way out at sea rises a huge square mass of basalt of a hundred feet and more in height sheer above the water; it bears the name of "Salamah," or "safety," a euphemism of good augury for "danger." Several small jagged peaks, just projecting above the surface, cluster in its neighbourhood; these bear the endearing name of "Benât Salamah," or "Daughters of Salamah."

He feared, moreover, since the headland stretched towards the south, lest they should find the country there a parched desert destitute of water and insufferably hot. This argument prevailed, and it appears to me that by this counsel Nearkhos saved the expedition, for all accounts represent this cape and the parts adjacent as an arid waste where water cannot possibly be procured.

XXXIII. On resuming the voyage they sailed close to land, and after making about 700 stadia anchored on another shore called Neoptana.<sup>62</sup> From this they weighed next day at dawn, and after a course of 100 stadia anchored at the mouth of the river Anamis<sup>63</sup> in a country called Har-mozeia.<sup>64</sup> Here at last they found a hospitable

---

<sup>62</sup> This place is not mentioned elsewhere, but must have been situated somewhere, in the neighbourhood of the village of Karun.

<sup>63</sup> The Anamis, called by Pliny the Ananis, and by Ptolemy and Mela the Andanis, is now the Minâb or Ibrahim River.

<sup>64</sup> Other forms—Hormazia, Armizia regio. The name was transferred from the mainland to the island now called Ormus, when the inhabitants fled thither to escape from the Moghals. It is called by Arrian Organa (chap. xxxvii.) The Arabians called it Djerun, a name which it continued to bear up to the 12th century. Pliny mentions an island called Oguris, of which perhaps Djerun is a corruption. He ascribes to it the honour of having been the birthplace of Erythres. The description, however, which he gives of it is more applicable to the island called by Arrian (chap. xxxvii.) Oârakta (now Kishm) than to Ormus. Arrian's description of Harmozia is still applicable to the region adjacent to the Minâb. "It is termed," says Kempthorne, "the Paradise of Persia. It is certainly most beautifully fertile, and abounds in orange groves, orchards containing apples, pears, peaches, and apricots, with vineyards producing a delicious grape, from which was made at one time a wine called Amber rosolia, generally considered the white wine of Kishma; but no wine is made here now." The old name of Kishma—Oârakta—is preserved in one of its modern names, Vrokt or Brokt.

region, one which was rich in every production except only the olive. Here accordingly they landed, and enjoyed a welcome respite from their many toils—heightening their pleasure by calling to remembrance what miseries they had suffered at sea and in the Ikhthyophagi country, where the shores were so sterile, and the natives so brute-like, and where they had been reduced to the last extremities of want. Here, also, some of them in scattered parties, leaving the encampment on the shore, wandered inland searching for one thing and another that might supply their several requirements. While thus engaged, they fell in with a man who wore a Greek mantle, and was otherwise attired as a Greek and spoke the Greek language. Those who first discovered him declared that tears started to their eyes, so strange did it appear, after all they had suffered, to see once more a countryman of their own, and to hear the accents of their native tongue. They asked him whence he came, and who he was. He replied that he had straggled from the army of Alexander, and that the army led by Alexander in person was not far off. On hearing this they hurry the man with shouts of tumultuous joy to the presence of Nearkhos, to whom he repeated all that he had already said, assuring him that the army and the king were not more than a 5 days' march distant from the sea. The Governor of the province, he added, was on the spot, and he would present him to Nearkhos, and he presented him accordingly. Nearkhos consulted this person regarding the route he should take in order to reach the king, and then they all went off, and made

their way to the ships. Early next morning the ships by orders of Nearkhos were drawn on shore, partly for repair of the damages which some of them had suffered on the voyage, and partly because he had resolved to leave here the greater part of his army. Having this in view, he fortified the roadstead with a double palisade, and also with an earthen rampart and a deep ditch extending from the banks of the river to the dockyard where the ships were lying.

XXXIV. While Nearkhos was thus occupied, the Governor being aware that Alexander was in great anxiety about the fate of this expedition, concluded that he would receive some great advantage from Alexander should he be the first to apprise him of the safety of the fleet and of the approaching visit of Nearkhos. Accordingly he hastened to Alexander by the shortest route, and announced that Nearkhos was coming from the fleet to visit him. Alexander, though he could scarcely believe the report, nevertheless received the tidings with all the joy that might have been expected.

Day after day, however, passed without confirmation of the fact, till Alexander, on comparing the distance from the sea with the date on which the report had reached him, at last gave up all belief in its truth, the more especially as several of the parties which he had successively despatched to find Nearkhos and escort him to the camp, had returned without him, after going a short distance, and meeting no one, while others who had prosecuted the search further, and failed to find Nearkhos and his company were still absent. He therefore

ordered the Governor into confinement for having brought delusive intelligence and rendered his vexation more acute by the disappointment of his hopes, and indeed his looks and perturbation of mind plainly indicated that he was pierced to the heart with a great grief. Meanwhile, however, one of the parties that had been despatched in search of Nearkhos, and his escort being furnished with horses and waggons for their accommodation, fell in on the way with Nearkhos and Arkhias, who were followed by five or six attendants. At first sight they recognized neither the admiral himself nor Arkhias, so much changed was their appearance, their hair long and neglected, their persons filthy, encrusted all over with brine and shrivelled, their complexion sallow from want of sleep and other severe privations. On their asking where Alexander was, they were told the name of the place. Arkhias then, perceiving who they were, said to Nearkhos—"It strikes me, Nearkhos, these men are traversing the desert by the route we pursue, for no other reason than because they have been sent to our relief. True, they did not know us, but that is not at all surprising, for our appearance is so wretched that we are past all recognition. Let us tell them who we are, and ask them why they are travelling this way." Nearkhos, thinking he spoke with reason, asked the men whither they were bound. They replied that they were searching for Nearkhos and the fleet. "Well! I am Nearkhos," said the admiral, "and this man here is Arkhias. Take us under your conduct, and we will report to Alexander the whole history of the expedition."

XXXV. They were accordingly accommodated

in the waggons, and conducted to the camp. Some of the horsemen, however, wishing to be the first to impart the news, hastened forward, and told Alexander that Nearkhos himself, and Arkhias with him, and five attendants, would soon arrive, but to enquiries about the rest of the people in the expedition they had no information to give. Alexander, concluding from this that all the expedition had perished except this small band, which had been unaccountably saved, did not so much feel pleasure for the preservation of Nearkhos and Arkhias as distress for the loss of his whole fleet. During this conversation Nearkhos and Arkhias arrived. It was not without difficulty Alexander after a close scrutiny recognized who the hirsute, ill-clad men who stood before him were, and being confirmed by their miserable appearance in his belief that the expedition had perished, he was still more overcome with grief. At length he held out his hand to Nearkhos, and leading him apart from his attendants and his guards he burst into tears, and wept for a long time. Having, after a good while, recovered some composure, "Nearkhos!" he says, "since you and Arkhias have been restored to me alive, I can bear more patiently the calamity of losing all my fleet; but tell me now, in what manner did the vessels and my people perish." "O my king!" replied Nearkhos, "the ships are safe and the people also, and we are here to give you an account of their preservation." Tears now fell much faster from his eyes than before, but they were tears of joy for the salvation of his fleet which he had given up for lost. "And where are now my ships," he then

enquired. "They are drawn up on shore," replied Nearkhos, "on the beach of the river Anamis for repairs." Upon this Alexander, swearing by Zeus of the Greeks and Ammon of the Libyans, declared that he felt happier at receiving these tidings than in being the conqueror of all Asia, for, had the expedition been lost, the blow to his peace of mind would have been a counterpoise to all the success he had achieved.

XXXVI. But the Governor whom Alexander had put into confinement for bringing intelligence that appeared to be false, seeing Nearkhos in the camp, sunk on his knees before him, and said: "I am the man who brought to Alexander the news of your safe arrival. You see how I am situated." Nearkhos interceded with Alexander on his behalf, and he was then liberated. Alexander next proceeded to offer a solemn sacrifice in gratitude for the preservation of his fleet unto Zeus the Preserver, and Heraklēs, and Apollo the Averter of Destruction, and unto Poseidōn, and every other deity of ocean. He celebrated likewise a contest in gymnastics and music, and exhibited a splendid procession wherein a foremost place was assigned to Nearkhos. Chaplets were wreathed for his head, and flowers were showered upon him by the admiring multitude. At the end of these proceedings the king said to Nearkhos, "I do not wish you, Nearkhos, either to risk your life or expose yourself again to the hardships of sea-voyaging, and I shall therefore send some other officer to conduct the expedition onward to Sousa." But Nearkhos answered, and said: "It is my duty, O king! as it is also my

desire, in all things to obey you, but if your object is to gratify me in some way, do not take the command from me until I complete the voyage by bringing the ships in safety to Sousa. I have been trusted to execute that part of the undertaking in which all its difficulty and danger lay; transfer not, then, to another the remaining part, which hardly requires an effort, and that, too, just at the time when the glory of final success is ready to be won." Alexander scarcely allowed him to conclude his request, which he granted with grateful acknowledgment of his services.<sup>65</sup> Then he sent him down again to the coast with only a small escort, believing that the country through which he would pass was friendly. He was not permitted however to pursue his way to the coast without opposition, for the barbarians, resenting the action of Alexander in deposing their satrap, had gathered in full force and seized all the strongholds of Karmania before Tlepolemos, the newly appointed Governor, had yet succeeded in fully establishing his authority.<sup>66</sup> It happened therefore that several times in the course of a day Nearkhos encountered bands of the insurgents with whom he had to do battle. He therefore hurried forward without lingering by the way, and reached the coast in safety, though not without severe toil and difficulty. On arriv-

---

<sup>65</sup> Diodôros (XVII. 106) gives quite a different account of the visit of Nearkhos to Alexander.

<sup>66</sup> The preceding satrap was Sibyrtios, the friend of Megasthenès. He had been transferred to govern the Gadrosians and the Arakhotians.



ing he sacrificed to Zeus the Preserver, and celebrated gymnastic games.

XXXVII. These pious rites having been duly performed, they again put to sea, and, after passing a desolate and rocky island, arrived at another island, where they anchored. This was one of considerable size and inhabited, and 300 stadia distant from Harmozeia, the harbour which they had last left. The desert island was called Organa, and that where they anchored Oärakta.<sup>67</sup> It produced vines, palm-trees, and corn. Its length is 800 stadia. Mazênês, the chief of this island, accompanied them all the way to Sousa, having volunteered to act as pilot of the fleet. The natives of the island professed to point out the tomb of the very first sovereign of the country, whose name they said was Erythrês, after whom the sea in that part of the world was called the Erythraean.<sup>68</sup> Weighing thence their course lay

<sup>67</sup> As stated in Note 64, Organa is now *Ormuz*, and Oarakta, *Kishm*. Ormuz, once so renowned for its wealth and commerce, that it was said of it by its Portuguese occupants, that if the world were a golden ring, Ormuz would be the diamond signet, is now in utter decay. "I have seen," says Palgrave (II. 319), the abasement of Tyre, the decline of Surat, the degradation of Goa: but in none of those fallen seaports is aught resembling the utter desolation of Ormuz." A recent traveller in Persia (Binning) thus describes the coast: "It presents no view but sterile, barren, and desolate chains of rocks and hills: and the general aspect of the Gulf is dismal and forbidding. Moore's charming allusions to Oman's sea, with its 'banks of pearl and palmy isles' are unfortunately quite visionary; for uglier and more unpicturesque scenery I never beheld." — *Two Years' Travel in Persia*, I. pp. 136, 137.

<sup>68</sup> For the legend of Erythres see Agatharkhides De Mari Eryth. I. 1-4 and Strabo XVI. iv. 20. The Erythraean Sea included the Indian Ocean, the Persian Gulf, and the Red Sea, the last being called also the Arabian Gulf, when it was necessary to distinguish it from the Erythraean

along the island, and they anchored on its shores at a place whence another island was visible at a distance of about 40 stadia. They learned that it was sacred to Poseidón, and inaccessible.<sup>69</sup> Next morning, as they were putting out to sea, the ebb-tide caught them with such violence that three of the galleys were stranded on the beach, and the rest of the fleet escaped with difficulty from the surf into deep water. The stranded vessels were however floated off at the return of the tide, and the day after rejoined the fleet. They anchored at another island distant from the mainland somewhere about 300 stadia, after running a course of 400 stadia. Towards daybreak they resumed the voyage, passing a desert island which lay on

in general. It can hardly be doubted that the epithet *Erythraean* (which means *red*, Greek *ἐρυθρός*) first designated the Arabian Gulf or Red Sea, and was afterwards extended to the seas beyond the Straits by those who first explored them. The Red Sea was so called because it washed the shores of Arabia, called *the Red Land* (Edom), in contradistinction to Egypt, called *the Black Land* (Kemi), from the darkness of the soil deposited by the Nile. Some however thought that it received its name from the quantity of red coral found in its waters, especially along the eastern shores, and Strabo says (*loc. cit.*): "Some say that the sea is red from the colour arising from reflexion either from the sun, which is vertical, or from the mountains, which are red by being scorched with intense heat; for the colour it is supposed may be produced by both of these causes. Ktesias of Knidos speaks of a spring which discharges into the sea a red and ochrous water."—Cf. Eustath. *Comment.* 38.

<sup>69</sup> This island is that now called *Angar*, or *Hanjam*, to the south of Kishm. It is described as being nearly destitute of vegetation and uninhabited. Its hills, of volcanic origin, rise to a height of 300 feet. The other island, distant from the mainland about 300 stadia, is now called the Great Tombo, near which is a smaller island called Little Tombo. They are low, flat, and uninhabited. They are 25 miles distant from the western extremity of Kishm.

their left, called Pylôra, and anchored at Sisidônê, a small town which could supply nothing but water and fish.<sup>70</sup> Here again the natives were fish eaters, for the soil was utterly sterile. Having taken water on board, they weighed again, and having run 300 stadia, anchored at Tarsia, the extremity of a cape which projects far into the sea. The next place of anchorage was Kataia, a desert island, and very flat.<sup>71</sup> It was said to be sacred to Hermês and Aphroditê. The length of this course was 300 stadia. To this island sheep and goats are annually sent by the people of the adjoining continent who consecrate them to Hermês and Aphroditê. These animals were to be seen running about in a wild state, the effect of time and the barren soil.

XXXVIII. Karmania extends as far as this island, but the parts beyond appertain to Persia. The extent of the Karmanian coast was 3,700

---

<sup>70</sup> The island of Pylora is that now called Polior. Sisidone appears in other forms—Prosidodone, pro-Sidodone, pros Sidone, pros Dodone. Kempthorne thought this was the small fishing village now called Mogoş, situated in a bay of the same name. The name may perhaps be preserved in the name of a village in the same neighbourhood, called Dnan Tarsia—now Râs-el-Djard—described as high and rugged, and of a reddish colour.

<sup>71</sup> Kataia is now the island called Kaes or Kenn. Its character has altered, being now covered with dwarf trees, and growing wheat and tobacco. It supplies ships with refreshment, chiefly goats and sheep and a few vegetables. "At morning," says Binning (I. 137), "we passed Polior, and at noon were running along the South side of the Isle of Keesh, called in our maps Kenn; a fertile and populous island about 7 miles in length. The inhabitants of this, as well as of every other island in the Gulf, are of Arab blood—for every true Persian appears to hate the very sight of the sea."

stadia.<sup>72</sup> The people of this province live like the Persians, on whom they border, and they have similar weapons and a similar military system. When the fleet left the sacred island, its course lay along the coast of Persis, and it first drew to land at a place called Ila, where there is a harbour under cover of a small and desert island called Kaikander.<sup>73</sup> The distance run was 400 stadia. Towards daybreak they came to another island which was inhabited, and anchored thereon. Nearkhos notices that there is here a fishery for pearl as there is in the Indian Sea.<sup>74</sup> Having sailed along the shores of the promontory in which this island terminates, a distance of about 40 stadia, they came to an anchor upon its shores. The next anchorage was in the vicinity of a lofty hill called Okhos, where the harbour was well sheltered and the inhabitants were fishermen.<sup>75</sup> Weighing thence they ran a course of

---

<sup>72</sup> The boundary between Karmania and Persis was formed by a range of mountains opposite the island of Kataia. Ptolemy, however, makes Karmania extend much further, to the river Bagradas, now called the Naban or Nabend.

<sup>73</sup> Kaikander has the other forms—Kekander, Kikander, Kaskandrus, Karkundrus, Karskandrus, Sasækander. This island, which is now called Inderabia, or Andaravia, is about four or five miles from the mainland, having a small town on the north side, where is a safe and commodious harbour. The other island mentioned immediately after is probably that now called Busheab. It is, according to Kempthorne, a low, flat island, about eleven miles from the mainland, containing a small town principally inhabited by Arabs, who live on fish and dates. The harbour has good anchorage even for large vessels.

<sup>74</sup> The pearl oyster is found from Ras Musendom to the head of the Gulf. There are no famed banks on the Persian side, but near Bushire there are some good ones.

<sup>75</sup> Apostana was near a place now called Schevar. It is thought that the name may be traced in Dahra

400 stadia, which brought them to Apostana, where they anchored. At this station they saw a great many boats, and learned that at a distance of 60 stadia from the shore there was a village. From Apostana they weighed at night, and proceeded 400 stadia to a bay, on the borders of which many villages were to be seen. Here the fleet anchored under the projection of a cape which rose to a considerable height.<sup>76</sup> Palm-trees and other fruit-bearing trees similar to those of Greece, adorned the country round. On weighing thence they sailed in a line with the coast, and after a course of somewhere about 600 stadia reached Gógana, which was an inhabited place, where they anchored at the mouth of a winter torrent called the Areôn. It was difficult to anchor, for the approach to the mouth of the river was by a narrow channel, since the ebbing of the tide had left shoals which lay all round in a circle.<sup>77</sup> Weighing thence they gained, after running as many as 800 stadia, the mouth of another river called the Sitakos, where also it was troublesome to anchor. Indeed all along the coast of Persis the fleet had to be navigated through shoals and breakers and oozy channels.

---

A h b ā n, an adjacent mountain ridge of which Okhos was probably the southern extremity.

<sup>76</sup> This bay is that on which Naban or Nabend is now situated. It is not far from the river called by Ptolemy the Bagradas. The place abounds with palm-trees as of old.

<sup>77</sup> Gógana is now Konkan or Konaun. The bay lacks depth of water; a stream still falls into it—the Areon of the text. To the north-west of this place in the interior lay Pasargada, the ancient capital of Persia, and the burial-place of Kyros, in the neighbourhood of Murghāb, a place to the N. E. of Shiraz (30° 24' N. 56° 29' E.).

At the Sitakos they took on board a large supply of provisions, which under orders from the king had been collected expressly for the fleet. They remained at this station one-and-twenty days in all, occupied in repairing and kareening the ships, which had been drawn on shore for the purpose.<sup>78</sup>

XXXIX. Weighing thence they came to an inhabited district with a town called Hieratis, after accomplishing a distance of 750 stadia. They anchored in a canal which drew its waters from a river and emptied into the sea, and was called Heratemis.<sup>79</sup> Weighing next morning about sunrise, and sailing by the shore, they reached a winter torrent called the Padargos, where the whole place was a peninsula, wherein were many gardens and all kinds of trees that bear fruit. The name of the place was Mesam-

---

<sup>78</sup> The Sitakos has been identified with the Kara Agach, Mand, Mund or Kakee river, which has a course of 300 miles. Its source is near Kodyan, which lies N. W. of Shiraz. At a part of its course it is called the Kewar River. The meaning of its name is *black wood*. In Pliny it appears as the Sitiogannus. *Sitakon* was probably the name as Nearkhos heard it pronounced, as it frequently happens that when a Greek writer comes upon a name like an oblique case in Greek, he invents a nominative for it. With regard to the form of the name in Pliny, 'g' is but a phonetic change instead of 'k'. The 'i' is probably an error in transcription for 't'. The Sitakos is probably the Brisoana of Ptolemy, which can have no connexion with the later-mentioned Brizana of our author. See *Report on the Persian Gulf* by Colonel Ross, lately issued. Pliny states that from the mouth of the Sitiogus an ascent could be made to Pasargada, in seven days; but this is manifestly an error.

<sup>79</sup> The changes which have taken place along the coast have been so considerable that it is difficult to explain this part of the narrative consistently with the now existing state of things.

bria.<sup>80</sup> Weighing from Mesambria and running a course of about 200 stadia, they reach Taôké on the river Granis, and there anchor. Inland from this lay a royal city of the Persians, distant from the mouths of the river about 200 stadia.<sup>81</sup> We learn from Nearkhos that on their way to Taôké a stranded whale had been observed from the fleet, and that a party of the men having rowed alongside of it, measured it and brought back word that it had a length of 50 cubits. Its skin, they added, was clad with scales to a depth of about a cubit, and thickly clustered over with parasitic mussels, barnacles, and seaweed. The monster, it was also noticed, was attended by a great number of dolphins, larger than are ever seen in the Mediterranean. Weighing from Taôké they proceeded to Rhogonis, a winter torrent, where they anchored in a safe harbour.<sup>82</sup> The course thither was one of 200 stadia. Weighing

<sup>80</sup> The peninsula, which is 10 miles in length and 3 in breadth, lies so low that at times of high tide it is all but submerged. The modern Abu-Shahr or Bushir is situated on it.

<sup>81</sup> Nearkhos, it is probable, put into the mouth of the river now called by some the Kisht, by others the Boshavir. A town exists in the neighbourhood called Gra or Gran, which may have received its name from the Granis. The royal city (or rather palace), 200 stadia distant from this river, is mentioned by Strabo, xv. 3, 3, as being situate on the coast. Ptolemy does not mention the Granis. He makes Taôké to be an inland town, and calls all the district in this part Taôkéné. Taôké may be the Touag mentioned by Idrisi, which is now represented by Konar Takhta near the Kisht.

<sup>82</sup> Rhogonis.—It is written Rhogomanis by Ammianus Marcellinus, who mentions it as one of the four largest rivers in Persia, the other three being the Vatrachitis, Brisoana, and Bagrada. It is the river at the mouth of which is Bender-Righ or Regh, which is considered now as in the days of Nearkhos to be a day's sail from Bushire.

thence, and running 400 stadia, they arrived at another winter torrent, called Brizana, where they land and form an encampment. They had here difficulty in anchoring because of shoals and breakers and reefs that showed their heads above the sea. They could therefore enter the roads only when the tide was full; when it receded, the ships were left high and dry.<sup>83</sup> They weighed with the next flood tide, and came to anchor at the mouth of a river called the Arosis, the greatest, according to Nearkhos, of all the rivers that in the course of his voyage fell into the outer ocean.<sup>84</sup>

XL. The Arosis marks the limit of the possessions of the Persians, and divides them from the Susians. Above the Susians occurs an independent race called the Uxians, whom I have described in my other work (*Anab.* VII. 15, 3) as robbers. The length of the Persian coast is 4,400 stadia. Persis, according to general report, has three different climates,<sup>85</sup> for that part of it which lies along the Erythraean sea, is sandy and barren

---

<sup>83</sup> "The measures here are neglected in the Journal, for we have only 800 stadia specified from Mesambria to Brizana, and none from Brizana to the Arosis; but 800 stadia are short of 50 miles, while the real distance from Mesambria (Bushir) to the Arosis with the winding of the coast is above 140. In these two points we cannot be mistaken, and therefore, besides the omission of the interval between Brizana and the Arosis, there must be some defect in the Journal for which it is impossible now to account." —Vincent. I. p. 405.

<sup>84</sup> Another form of the name of this river is the Oroätis. It answers to the Zarotis of Pliny, who states that the navigation at its mouth was difficult, except to those well acquainted with it. It formed the boundary between Persis and Susiana. The form Oroätis corresponds to the Zend word *aurwat* 'swift.' It is now called the Tâb.

<sup>85</sup> On this point compare Strabo, bk. xv. 3, 1.



from the violence of the heat, while the part which succeeds enjoys a delightful temperature, for there the mountains stretch towards the pole and the North wind, and the region is clothed with verdure and has well-watered meadows, and bears in profusion the vine and every fruit else but the olive, while it blooms with gardens and pleasure parks of all kinds, and is permeated with crystal streams and abounds with lakes, and lake and stream alike are the haunts of every variety of water-fowl, and it is also a good country for horses and other yoke cattle, being rich in pasture, while it is throughout well-wooded and well-stocked with game. The part, however, which lies still further to the North is said to be bleak and cold, and covered with snow, so that, as Nearkhos tells us, certain ambassadors from the Euxine Sea, after a very brief journey, met Alexander marching forward to Persis, whereat Alexander being greatly surprised, they explained to him how very inconsiderable the distance was.<sup>86</sup> I have already stated that the immediate neighbours to the Susians are the Uxians, just as the Mardians, a race of robbers, are next neighbours to the Persians, and the Kossaeans to the Medes. All these tribes Alexander subdued, attacking them in the winter time when their country was, as they imagined, inaccessible. He then founded cities to reclaim them from their wandering life, and encouraged them to till their lands and devote themselves to agriculturo. At the

---

<sup>86</sup> It has been conjectured that the text here is imperfect. Schmieder opines that the story about the ambassadors is a fiction.

same time he appointed magistrates armed with the terrors of the law to prevent them having recourse to violence in the settlement of their quarrels. On weighing from the Arosis the expedition coasted the shores of the Susians. The remainder of the voyage, Nearkhos says, he cannot describe with the same precision; he can but give the names of the stations and the length of the courses, for the coast was full of shoals and beset with breakers which spread far out to sea, and made the approach to land dangerous. The navigation thereafter was of course almost entirely restricted to the open sea. In mentioning their departure from the mouth of the river where they had encamped on the borders of Persis, he states that they took there on board a five days' supply of water, as the pilots had brought to their notice that none could be procured on the way.

XLI. A course of 500 stadia having been accomplished, their next anchorage was in an estuary, which swarmed with fish, called Kataderbis, at the entrance of which lay an island called Margastana.<sup>87</sup> They weighed at daybreak, the ships sailing out in single file through shoals. The direction of the shoal was indicated by stakes fixed both on the right and the left side, just as posts are erected as signals of danger in the passage between the island of Leukadia and Akarnania to prevent vessels grounding on the shoals. The shoals of Leukadia, however, are of firm sand, and

---

<sup>87</sup> The bay of Kataderbis is that which receives the streams of the Mensureh and Dorak; at its entrance lie two islands, Bunah and Deri, one of which is the Margastana of Arrian.

it is thus easy to float off vessels should they happen to strand, but in this passage there is a deep mud on both sides of such tenacity that if vessels once touched the bottom, they could not by any appliances be got off; for, if they thrust poles into the mud to propel the vessels, these found no resistance or support, and the people who got overboard to ease them off into navigable water found no footing, but sunk in the mud higher than the waist. The fleet proceeded 600 stadia, having such difficulties of navigation to contend with, and then came to an anchor, each crew remaining in their own vessel, and taking their repast on board. From this anchorage they weighed in the night, sailing on in deep water till about the close of the ensuing day, when, after completing a course of 900 stadia, they dropped anchor at the mouth of the Euphrates near a town in Babylonia called Diridôtis—the emporium of the sea-borne trade in frankincense and all the other fragrant productions of Arabia.<sup>55</sup> The distance from the mouth of the Euphrates up stream to Babylon is, according to Nearkhos, 3,300 stadia.

XLII. Here intelligence having been received that Alexander was marching towards Sousa, they retraced their course from Diridôtis so as to join

---

<sup>55</sup> Diridôtis is called by other writers Terdon, and is said to have been founded by Nabukhodonosor. Mannert places it on the island now called Bubian; Colonel Chesney, however, fixes its position at Jebel Sanâm, a gigantic mound near the Pallacopas branch of the Euphrates, considerably to the north of the embouchure of the present Euphrates. Nearkhos had evidently passed unawares the stream of the Tigris and sailed too far westward. Hence he had to retrace his course, as mentioned in the next chapter.

him by sailing up the Pasitigris. They had now Sousis on their left hand, and were coasting the shores of a lake into which the Tigris empties itself, a river, which flowing from Armenia past Nineveh, a city once of yore great and flourishing, encloses between itself and the Euphrates the tract of country which from its position between the two rivers is called Mesopotamia. It is a distance of 600 stadia from the entrance into the lake up to the river's mouth at Aginis, a village in the province of Sousis, distant from the city of Sousa 500 stadia. The length of the voyage along the coast of the Sousians to the mouth of the Pasitigris was 2,000 stadia.<sup>59</sup> Weighing from the

---

<sup>59</sup> This is the Eulæus, now called the Karûn, one arm of which united with the Tigris, while the other fell into the sea by an independent mouth. It is the Ulai of the prophet Daniel. *Pas* is said to be an old Persian word, meaning *small*. By some writers the name *Pasitigris* was applied to the united stream of the Tigris and Euphrates, now called the *Shat-el-Arab*. The courses of the rivers and the conformation of the country in the parts here have all undergone great changes, and hence the identification of localities is a matter of difficulty and uncertainty. The following extract from Strabo will illustrate this part of the narrative:—

Polycletus says that the Choaspes, and the Eulæus, and the Tigris also enter a lake, and thence discharge themselves into the sea; that on the side of the lake is a mart, as the rivers do not receive the merchandize from the sea, nor convey it down to the sea, on account of dams in the river, purposely constructed; and that the goods are transported by land, a distance of 800 stadia, to Susis: according to others, the rivers which flow through Susis discharge themselves by the intermediate canals of the Euphrates into the single stream of the Tigris, which on this account has at its mouth the name of Pasitigris. According to Nearchus, the sea-coast of Susis is swampy, and terminates at the river Euphrates; at its mouth is a village which receives the merchandize from Arabia, for the coast of Arabia approaches close to the mouths of the Euphrates and the Pasitigris; the whole intermediate space

mouth of this river they sailed up its stream through a fertile and populous country, and having proceeded 150 stadia dropped anchor, awaiting the return of certain messengers whom Nearkhos had sent off to ascertain where the king was. Nearkhos then presented sacrifices to the gods their preservers, and celebrated games, and full of gladness were the hearts of all that had taken part in the expedition. The messengers having returned with tidings that Alexander was approaching, the fleet resumed its voyage up the river, and anchored near the bridge by which Alexander intended to lead his army to Sousa. In that same place the troops were reunited, when sacrifices were offered by Alexander for the preservation of his ships and his men, and games were celebrated. Nearkhos, whenever he was seen among the troops, was decorated by them with garlands and pelted with flowers. There also both Nearkhos and Leonnatos were crowned by Alexander with golden diadems—Nearkhos for the safety of the expedition by sea, and Leonnatos for the victory which he had gained over the *Orcitai* and the neighbouring barbarians. It was thus that the expedition which had begun its voyage from the mouths of the Indus was brought in safety to Alexander.

---

occupied by a lake which receives the Tigris. On sailing up the *Pasitigris* 150 stadia is a bridge of rafts leading to Susa from Persis, and is distant from Susa 60 (600 ?) stadia ; the *Pasitigris* is distant from the *Oroitis* about 2,000 stadia ; the ascent through the lake to the mouth of the Tigris is 600 stadia ; near the mouth stands the Susian village *Aginis*, distant from Susa 500 stadia ; the journey by water from the mouth of the *Enphrates* up to Babylon, through a well-inhabited tract of country, is a distance of more than 3,000 stadia."—Book xv. 3, *Bohn's trans.*

XLIII. Now<sup>90</sup> the parts which lie to the right of the Erythræan<sup>91</sup> Sea beyond the realms of Babylonia belong principally to Arabia, which extends in one direction as far as the sea that washes the shores of Phœnikia and Syrian Palestine, while towards sunset it borders on the Egyptians in the direction of the Mediterranean Sea. Egypt is penetrated by a gulf which extends up from the great ocean, and as this ocean is connected with the Erythræan Sea, this fact proves that a voyage could be made all the way from Babylon to Egypt by means of this gulf. But, owing to the heat and utter sterility of the coast, no one has ever made this voyage, except, it may be, some chance navigator. For the troops belonging to the army of Kambysés, which escaped from Egypt, and reached Sousa in safety, and the troops sent by Ptolemy, the son of Lagos, to Seleukos Nikatôr to Babylon, traversed the Arabian isthmus in eight days altogether.<sup>92</sup> It was a waterless and sterile region, and they had to cross it mounted on swift camels carrying water, travelling only by night, the heat by day being so fierce that they could not expose themselves in the open air. So far are the parts lying beyond this region, which we have spoken of as an isthmus extending from the Arabian Gulf to the Erythræan Sea

---

<sup>90</sup> The 3rd part of the *Indika*, the purport of which is to prove that the southern parts of the world are uninhabitable, begins with this chapter.

<sup>91</sup> Here and subsequently meaning the Persian Gulf.

<sup>92</sup> It is not known when or wherefore Ptolemy sent troops on this expedition.

from being inhabited, that even the parts which run up further to the north are a desert of sand. Moreover, men setting forth from the Arabian Gulf in Egypt, after having sailed round the greater part of Arabia to reach the sea which washes the shores of Persis and Sousa, have returned, after sailing as far along the coast of Arabia as the water they had on board lasted them, and no further. The exploring party again which Alexander sent from Babylon with instructions to sail as far as they could along the right-hand coast of the Erythraean Sea, with a view to examine the regions lying in that direction, discovered some islands lying in their route, and touched also at certain points of the mainland of Arabia. But as for that cape which Nearkhos states to have been seen by the expedition projecting into the sea right opposite to Karmania, there is no one who has been able to double it and gain the other side. But if the place could possibly be passed, either by sea or by land, it seems to me that Alexander, being so inquisitive and enterprising, would have proved that it could be passed in both these ways. But again Hanno the Libyan, setting out from Carthage, sailed out into the ocean beyond the Pillars of Hercules, having Libya on his left hand, and the time until his course was shaped towards the rising sun was five-and-thirty days; but when he steered southward he encountered many difficulties from the want of water, from the scorching heat, and from streams of fire that fell into the sea. Kyrênê, no doubt, which is situated in a some-

what barren part of L i b y a, is verdant, possessed of a genial climate, and well watered, has groves and meadows, and yields abundantly all kinds of useful animals and vegetable products. But this is only the case up to the limits of the area within which the fennel-plant can grow, while beyond this area the interior of Kyrênê is but a desert of sand.

So ends my narrative relating to A l e x a n d e r, the son of Philip the Makedonian.

---



# INDEX.

## CHIEFLY GEOGRAPHICAL.

*Abbreviations.*—B. Bay, C. Cape, G. Gulf, Is. Island or Islands, M. Mountain, R. River.

Common names are printed in *Italics*. Many proper names which in the usual orthography begin with C, will be found under K.

A	Page		Page
Abalites.....	51, 54, 55, 57	Akesines R. (Chenâb R.)	156, 170, 171
Aberia or Abiria .....	113	Alabagium C., <i>see</i> Alam-	
Abhira .....	114	bator.	
<i>Abolla</i> .....	38	<i>Alabaster</i> .....	34
Abu-Fatima C. ....	43	Alalaïou Is. ....	48, 49
Abu-Shahr, <i>see</i> Bushire.		Alambator C. ....	191 n.
Acharê .....	129	Alexander, Port of, <i>see</i>	
Adel .....	53	Karâchi.	
Aden, <i>see</i> Eudaimôn-		Alexander the Great	
Arabia.		<i>passim</i> .	
Adouli, 12—39 <i>passim</i> .	45—49	Alexandria.....	76
Adramitê .....	87	<i>Aloes</i> .....	15, 93, 94
Agbor R. ....	177 n.	Anamis R. . 159 n., 202 n., 207	
Aginis .....	161, 220, 221 n.	Ananis R., <i>see</i> Anamis R.	
Agriophagoi .....	43	Andanis R., <i>see</i> Anamis	
Agrisa, <i>see</i> Agrispolis.		R.	
Agrispolis .....	194 n.	Angediva Is. ....	130
Ahile C. ....	59	Anger Is. ....	210 n.
Ahwaz .....	161	Annesley B. ....	45, 48, 49
Aigialos .....	126	Antarah C. ....	58
Aigidioi .....	130	Antigonê .....	41
Aii .....	134, 139	Aparantikâ .....	113
Aka'bah G. ....	74	Apokopa .....	62, 65, 66, 67
Akabaron .....	127	Apollodotos.....	121
Akannai .....	21, 54, 58, 59		



Page	Page
Bankut..... 129	Brisoāna R..... 214 n., 215 n.
Banna ..... 63	Brizana R..... 216 n.
Barakó G. .... 111, 112	Brokt Is. .... 202 n.
Barbara, <i>see</i> Berbera.	Bubian Is. .... 219
Barbarei ..... 103	Buna Is. .... 218
Barbaria ..... 42, 43, 62	Bunth R. .... 194 n.
Barbarikon... 12—38 <i>passim</i> .	Burnt Island ..... 78
..... 108, 115	Busheal Is. .... 212 n.
Bargusoi ..... 145	<i>Butter</i> ..... 12
Baricaza ..... 57	Byzantion..... 127, 129
Barna ..... 190	
Barousai ..... 145	
Barygaza... 10, 39 <i>passim</i> .	
..... 64, 78, 88, 96, 116—120	
Barygaza G. .... 112, 117	
Basra ..... 103	
Batinah..... 100, 101	
<i>Bdellium</i> ..... 16	
Becare ..... 131, 134	
Benda R. .... 128	
Berbera ..... 58	
Berenike..... 1, 3, 9, 41,	
..... 42, 74, 75, 78	
Berenike (in Barbaria)... 50	
Betel ..... 23, 25	
Bharoch, <i>see</i> Barygaza.	
Bhaunagar ..... 115	
Bhusal R., <i>see</i> Tomêros R.	
Bibakta Is. .... 159, 177	
Biblos Is., <i>see</i> Bibakta Is.	
Binagara, <i>see</i> Minnagar.	
Birkeh ..... 100	
Bombarak C. .... 200	
Borah..... 59	
Bore (of rivers) 119, 120, 157	
Boshavir R., <i>see</i> Kisht.	
Boukephalos Alexandreia 121	
<i>Brass</i> ..... 31	
	C
	Cael ..... 141
	Caelobothras ..... 6, 131
	Calaeon Insulae ..... 101
	Calcutta ..... 20
	<i>Cannibals</i> ..... 146
	Canary Is. .... 20
	Carfouna ..... 57
	Carthage ..... 223
	Ceylon, <i>see</i> Taprobane.
	Chaubar B..... 193 n.
	Chauggan..... 148
	Chaul ..... 113, 128
	Cheval ..... 128
	Chewabad, <i>see</i> Churber.
	Chimula ..... 128 n.
	China ..... 188 n.
	Choaspes R. .... 220 n.
	Choda R. .... 129
	Chryse Is. .... 147
	<i>Chrysolite</i> ..... 37
	Churber B. .... 190 n.
	<i>Cinnabar</i> ..... 15, 19, 94
	<i>Cinnamon</i> ..... 18, 19
	Coast Little and Great... 66
	Colcis Indorum ..... 141
	Comorin C. ... 125, 137, 139

	Page		Page
<i>Copper</i> .....	82	<i>Drachmai</i> .....	121, 122
<i>Cottonara</i> .....	131	<i>Dragon's-Blood</i> .....	94
		<i>Drangiani</i> .....	186
<b>D</b>		<b>E</b>	
<i>Dabil</i> .....	110	<i>Eden</i> .....	84
<i>Dagasira</i> .....	194	<i>Eirion G.</i> .....	111
<i>Dahra Asban</i> .....	213 n.	<i>Eiros M.</i> .....	158, 177, 178 n.
<i>Dakhan</i> .....	124	<i>Elanitic Gulf</i> .....	9, 47, 74
<i>Dakhinabades</i> .....	124	<i>El Bab Straits</i> .....	102
<i>Dakshinapatha</i> .....	124	<i>Eleazos</i> .....	87
<i>Damirike</i> .....	126	<i>Elephant C.</i> .....	58
<i>Damnias Is.</i> .....	100	<i>Elephant M.</i> .....	54, 58, 61
<i>Daphnôn</i> .....	59	<i>Elephant R.</i> .....	59
<i>Daphnous</i> .....	53, 61	<i>Elephantinê</i> .....	45
<i>Dehal</i> .....	129	<i>Elephantophagoi</i> .....	44, 51
<i>Deirê or Dêrê</i> .....	51, 54, 60	<i>Elisarôn</i> .....	81
<i>Deimakhos</i> .....	154	<i>El Kilhat</i> .....	101
<i>Delgado C.</i> .....	73	<i>Elurâ</i> .....	125
<i>Dendrobosa</i> .....	190	<i>Epideires</i> .....	57
<i>Deri Is.</i> .....	218 n.	<i>Epiodôros</i> .....	14, 140, 142
<i>Desarênê</i> .....	12, 145	<i>Epiphi</i> (July) .....	64, 110, 124, 138
<i>Devagiri or Deogurh</i> .....	125	<i>Er-rib Is.</i> .....	44
<i>Deymaniyeh Is.</i> .....	100	<i>Erythraean Sea</i> —its extent...1, 209 n., 222 n., why so called .....	209 n.
<i>Dhafar or Dofar</i> .....	80, 81, 97	<i>Erythrês</i> .....	202 n., 209
<i>Diamonds</i> .....	33	<i>Esan</i> .....	88
<i>Dimyrikê</i> .....	12—29 <i>passim</i> . 94, 96, 121, 126	<i>Essina</i> .....	67
<i>Djeran Is., see Ormus Is.</i>		<i>Esvantgaḏh</i> .....	129
<i>Diodôros, Is.</i> .....	47, 48	<i>Etesian Winds</i> .....	138, 174 n.
<i>Diodôros Is., Perim</i> , 57, 82 83		<i>Eudaimôn-Arabia</i> (Aden). 6, 84—86, 138	
<i>Dioskorides Is.</i> .....	15, 26, 27, 29, 91—93	<i>Eulaeus R.</i> .....	103, 220 n., 161
<i>Diospolis</i> .....	27, 34, 50, 53	<i>Eumenes, Grove of</i> .....	57
<i>Disa</i> .....	16	<i>Euphrates R.</i> .....	10, 219, 220
<i>Diset Is., see Diodôros Is.</i>		<i>Eynouna</i> .....	75
<i>Domai Is.</i> .....	178 n.		
<i>Dorak R.</i> .....	218 n.		
<i>Dôsarôn R.</i> .....	145		

[illegible]



Page	Page
Karâchi .....158, 176 n.	Khersonêsos, in India, 129, 130
Karbinê .....188 n., 199 n.	Khori R. .... 58
Karbis ..... 189	Kholaibos..... 79
Karmana, <i>see</i> Kirman.	Khrysé Is. .... 146
Karmania ...10, 35, 86, 199 n.	Kilwa (Quilwa) .....62, 72
Karoura ..... 133	Killouta Is. .... 157
<i>Karpasos</i> ..... 18	Kirrhadia .....23, 145
Karpella C. .... 200	Kirkê ..... 199
Karum R. ....103	Kirman .....199 n.
Karun ..... 202 n.	Kissa ..... 189
Karûn R. .... 220	Kishm Is. ....202 n.
Kâsmîr ..... 20	Kisht R. ....215 n.
Kaspien Sea ..... 148	Kobê ..... 54
Kassia .....18, 19	Koiamba .....180 n., 181 n.
Kataderbis ..... 218 n.	Kokala .....159, 182
Kataia Is. ....211 n., 212 n.	<i>Kolandiophonta</i> ....142, 143
Kâthiawâd ..... 16	Kolatta-nâqû ..... 132
Kaumana..... 153	Kôlis ..... 142
Kaveripattam ..... 143	Kolkei ..... 144
Kavery R. .... 143	Kolkhoi .....14, 138, 141
Kâyal C. .... 141	Koloê ..... 48
Kenjan-fu ..... 148	Kolta .....187 n.
Kenn Is., <i>see</i> Kataia.	Kolum ..... 134
Kêprobtres .....6, 132	Komar C. .... 139
Kêrâla ..... 131	Kommana ..... 194 n.
Keralaputra ..... 132	Komta ..... 130
Kerazi C. .... 200	Konkan or Kanoun.....213 n.
Keroot, <i>see</i> Kerazi C.	Kôphas .....189 n., 191
Keshin ..... 90	Koppa C., <i>see</i> Kôphas.
Kesmacoran (Mekran) ... 99	Koptos .....41, 42, 76
Khaberi ..... 143	Koreatis.....153, 175
Khaberos R. .... 143	Korodaman C. .... 142
Khambat G. ....95, 112, 116	Koru C. .... 142
Kharibaâl .....7, 39, 80 82	Kossaeans ..... 217
Khartan Is. .... 90	<i>Kostus</i> ..... 20
Kheil C. .... 65	Koti ..... 142
Khersonêsos, the Golden. 15, 143, 146	Kottonara .....28, 132

	Page		Page
Kreophagoi .....	00	Madeira Is. ....	20
Krishna R. ....	144	Mahi R., <i>see</i> Mais R.	
Krôkala Is. ....	153, 176	Maiotic Lake .....	148
Kumari (Durga) .....	140, 141	Mais R. ....	116
Kungoun .....	194 n	Maisôlus R. ....	144
Kunokephali .....	61	Makalleh .....	91
Kurmut R. ....	180 n.	Makdoshu (Magadoxo)...	67
Kurya Murya Is. ....	92, 99	Maklow R., <i>see</i> Tomêros R.	
Kyeneion .....	48	Makroprosôpoi .....	140
Kyiza .....	191, 193 n., 196	Malabar.....	10, 95, 137, 143
Kysa, <i>see</i> Kissa.		<i>Malabathrum</i> (Betel) 22, 149	
Kyros .....	213 n.	Malacca .....	147
Kyrênê .....	223, 229	Malana.....	154, 185, 187
		Malao . 17—39 <i>passim</i> . 54, 55	
		Malava.....	171 n.
L		Maleus M. ....	185 n.
Lac .....	13	Malikhos .....	876
Lamnaios R. (Narmadâ		Malin C. ....	185
R.).....	116	Malli .....	171
Lamou Is. ....	68	Manaar G. ....	141, 142
Laccadive Is. ....	15	Mand R., <i>see</i> Sitakos.	
Lar-Desa, <i>see</i> Larikê.		Manda Is.....	68
Larikê .....	113	Mandagora .....	127, 129
Laristan .....	199 n.	Mangalur .....	130
Laurel Grove, the Little. 58		Manora.....	158, 178
Laurel Grove, the Great. 59		Manpulli .....	140
Las .....	177 n.	Mansura .....	109
Lead .....	31	Mapharitis .....	7
Leukê (White) Is. ....	127, 130	Mardians .....	217
Leukê Kômê .....	7—9, 74, 76	Margastana Is. ....	218
Licha .....	60	Mariabo .....	189
Limyrikê, <i>see</i> Dimyrikê.		Markah.....	158
<i>Lycium</i> .....	22	Markari .....	134
Lykia .....	22	Martan Is. ....	98
		Masalia .....	144, 145
M		Masawwa .....	45, 48
Mabber C. ....	65	Masira .....	99
Macer .....	22	Maskat .....	73, 95, 97, 100
Madara .....	105		



Page	Page
Mathurâ ..... 133	Mouza. 9, 38, <i>passim</i> . 54—82,
Mazenes ..... 209	<i>passim</i> .
Medina ..... 75	Monziris 6—39 <i>passim</i> ... 131
Megasthenês ..... 154, 208	Mowilah ..... 75
Mekran ..... 186	Muâri C. .... 178 n
Meligeizara ..... 127, 129	Muhammara ..... 103
Mekilot ..... 24	Muhani R. .... 193 n.
Menander ..... 121	Multan ..... 20, 171 n.
Menhabery ..... 109	Murghâb ..... 213 n.
Menouthias Is. 15, 62, 69—71	Muslin ..... 26
Mensureh R. .... 218	Mussendom or Mesandum
Meroë ..... 45, 46, 186	C. .... 102, 200 n., 212 n.
Mesembria 160, 215 n., 216 n.	Muyiri ..... 131
Mesha ..... 79	Myos Hormos, 9, 40—42,
Mesopotamia ..... 220	74, 75
Mete C. .... 57, 59	Myrrh ..... 24, 25, 29
Methora ..... 134	
Mharras, <i>see</i> Mopharitis.	
Minâb R. .... 159, 202n.	
Minnagar ..... 108—110, 114	
Mirjan ..... 130	
Modura ..... 127, 131, 133	
Moghostan ..... 199 n.	
Moinanakâlû C. .... 72	
Mokha ..... 78	
Mombaros ..... 113	
Momphia Is. .... 69, 71	
Monedes ..... 136 n.	
Monze C. .... 106, 178 n.	
Mopharitis ..... 72, 74, 79	
Moran C., <i>see</i> Malin C.	
Morontobara .. 178 n., 180 n.	
Morarna ..... 189	
Moskha ..... 17, 21, 29, 95, 96	
Moskhophagoi ..... 43, 49	
Mossylon 12—39, <i>passim</i> . 54	
Moundou 17—39, <i>passim</i> .	
54, 57	
	N
	Nabathaea ..... 7, 74, 75
	Nabend C. .... 199
	Nabend or Naban R. ....
	212 n., 213 n.
	Nakb-el-Hajar ..... 88
	Namades R., <i>see</i> Narmadâ
	R.
	Nammadios R., <i>see</i> Nar-
	madâ R.
	Nanagouna R. .... 129
	Naoura ..... 13, 127, 130
	Nard ..... 25, 122
	Narmadâ (Nerbada) R.,
	10, 107, 114, 117, 127
	Nausari ..... 127
	Nausaripa ..... 127
	Neacyndon ..... 131
	Nebaioth, <i>see</i> Nabathaea.
	Neileptolemaios ..... 53

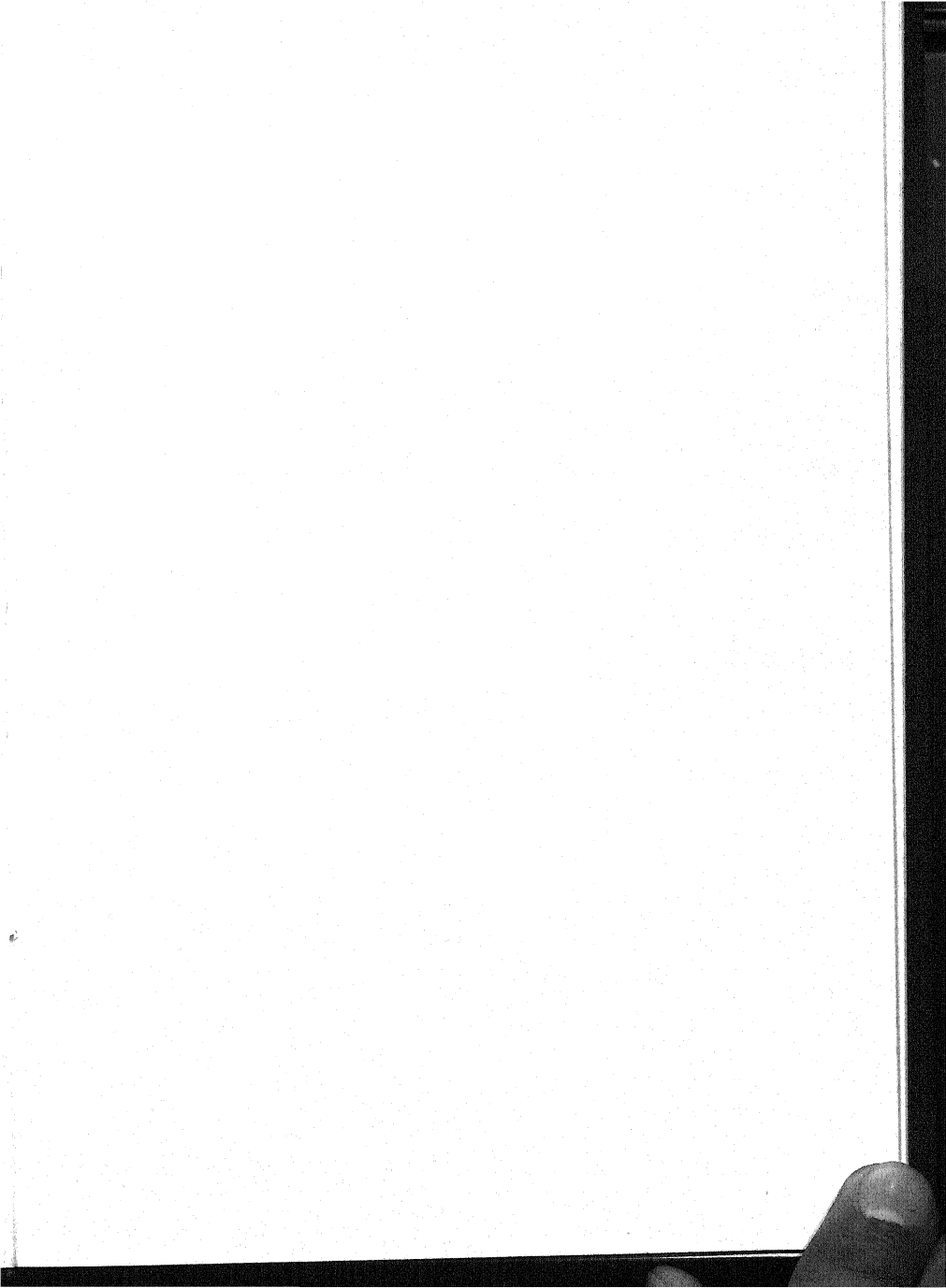


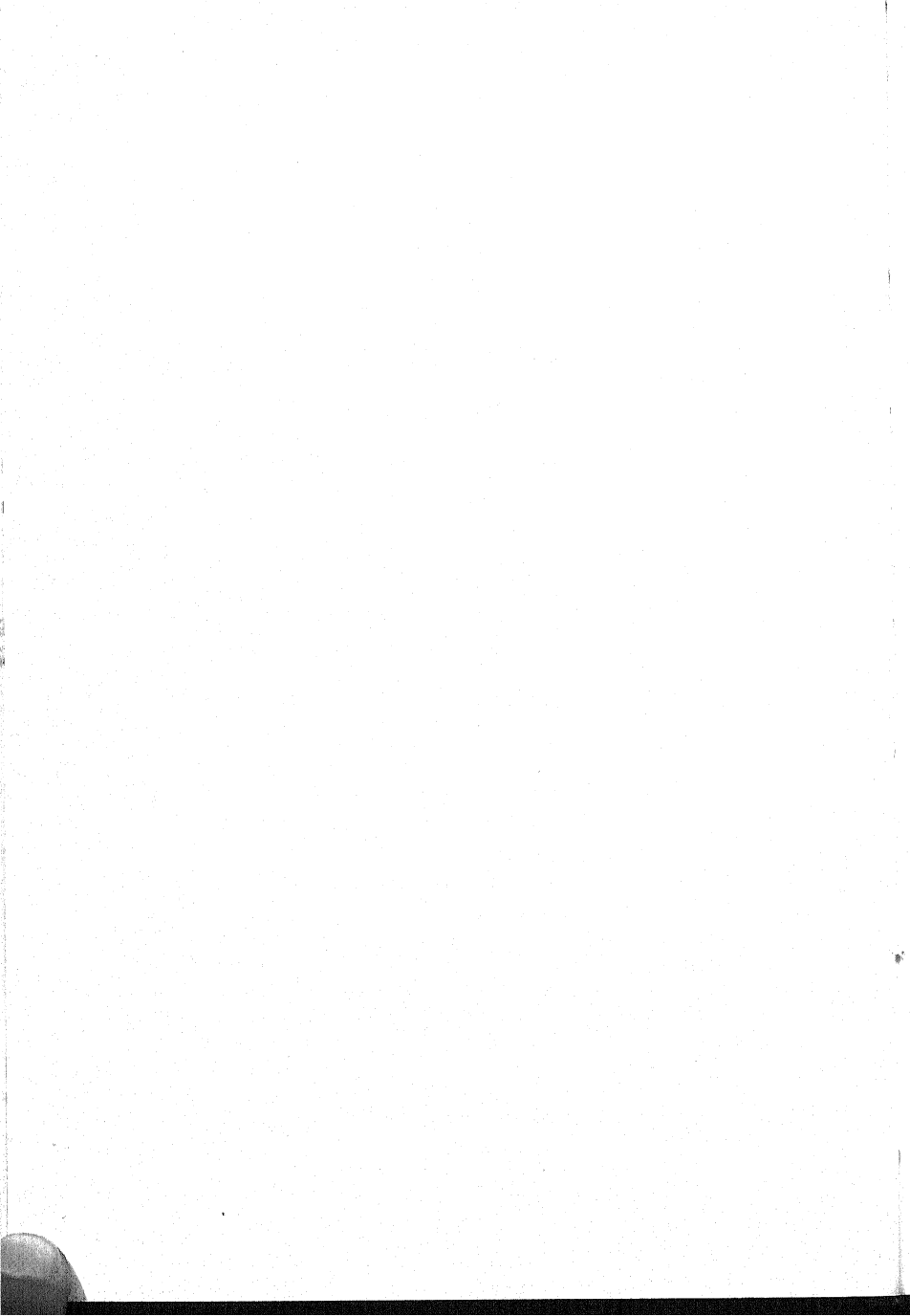
	Page		Page
<i>Pearl Fisheries</i> .....	102,	Ptolemy Philadelphos ...	
	103, 141, 178, 212		40, 41, 44
Pegada, <i>see</i> Pagala.		Puduchcheri .....	143
Pekhely .....	121	Pulikat .....	143
Pemba Is. ....	69	Purâli R. ....	177 n.
<i>Pepper</i> .....	27, 28, 132	Puthangelos, Chase of ...	51
Peram Is. ....	116	Puthangelus .....	61
Perim Is. ....	82	Pylora Is. ....	211 n
Persian Gulf, aspect of.	209n.	Pyralaos Is. ....	68
Persis, Climates of ...	216, 217	Pytholaus .....	61
Persis, Coast of ...	86, 88, 212		
Peshawar .....	121		
Petra .....	75, 76	R	
Phagiaura .....	180 n.	Rajâpur .....	129
Pharan C. ....	74	Rambakia .....	106
Phoenikia .....	222	Râmesvaram C. ....	142
Pirate Coast .....	129	Ran, <i>see</i> Eirion.	
<i>Pirates</i> ...	95, 130, 131, 177, 188	Ras-al-Sair C. ....	96
Piti R. ....	176 n.	Ras-el-Had C. 10, 90, 95,	
Plocamus .....	7, 8		99, 100
Podoukè .....	141, 143	Regh .....	215 n.
Polior Is. ....	211 n.	Rhapsioi .....	73
Polymita .....	30	Rhapta .....	9, 62, 71
Pondicherry .....	143	Rhaptum C. ....	72, 73
Pontos .....	148	Rhapua .....	187 n.
<i>Porcelain, see Fluor-spath.</i>		<i>Rhinoceros</i> .....	14
Poulipoula .....	127	Rhinokoloura .....	76
Pouna C. ....	72	Rhizana .....	180 n.
Prasii .....	24	Rhognis R. ....	215 n.
Prasum C. ....	73	<i>Rice</i> .....	27, 64
Proklais .....	20, 121, 122	Rizophagoi .....	43
Psammitikhos .....	45	Rumrah R., <i>see</i> Kurmut R.	
Pseudokêlis .....	184	Rungpûr .....	23
Psygmus .....	61		
Ptolemais Thêrôn ...	12,		
	15, 43, 45	S	
Ptolemy Energetês .....	47	Sabaea .....	10, 11
Ptolemy Lagos .....	41	Sabæans .....	81, 86
		Sabaïtai .....	80

	Page		Page
Sabbatha .....	87—89	Sesatai .....	23, 143
Saber M. ....	79	Sesekreienai Is. ....	129, 130
Sabota, <i>see</i> Sabbatha.		Sesostriis .....	83
Saghar .....	91	<i>Shadows</i> .....	85 n.
Saimur .....	113	Shat-el-Arab R. ....	220 n.
Sâka .....	107	Shamba .....	70
Sâkâhda .....	110	Sheba .....	82, 89
Sakala .....	178	Shehr .....	93
Sakhalitis Regio .....	97	Shenarif C. ....	60
Sakhalites G. ....	90	Shi-Hwengti .....	148
Sakhlé .....	91	Shiraz .....	213 n.
Salama C., <i>see</i> Mussen-		Sibyrtios .....	208
dom C.		Sigerus .....	129
Saliké (Ceylon) .....	4	Sijan M. ....	83
Salour .....	142	Sikkan Is. ....	87
Salsette Is. ....	125	Simulla .....	128
<i>Sandalwood</i> .....	28	Sinai (Chinese) .....	148
Sandanes .....	128	Sindhu, <i>see</i> Sinthos.	
<i>Sandarake</i> .....	28	Sindhudrug .....	129
Sangada .....	177 n.	Sinthos (Indus R.) ....	107
Sangadîp Is. ....	188 n.	Sisidone .....	211 n.
Sangara .....	142, 143	Sitakos R. ....	160, 214 n.
San Pedro R. ....	53, 59	Sitioganus R., <i>see</i> Sita-	
Saué .....	79, 80	kos R.	
Saugra C. ....	90	Skythia .....	83, 107, 122, 138
Saphar .....	80	Soal R. ....	57
<i>Sapphire</i> .....	36	Sohar .....	104
Saraganes .....	127, 128	Sokotra Is., <i>see</i> Diosko-	
Saranga .....	178	ridês Is.	
Saravati R. ....	130	Somâli .....	66
Sawa .....	89	Sonmiyâni. 177 n., 179 n.,	
Schevar .....	212 n.	180 n.	
Seger M. ....	95	Sôpatma .....	141, 143
Semiramis M. ....	102, 103	Sophr .....	127
Semulla .....	127, 128, 129	Soupara .....	127
Sephar .....	97	Sous M. ....	98
Serapion .....	62, 67	Sousa .....	220, <i>passim</i> .
Serapis Is. ....	15, 99	Sousis, Coast of .....	213

	Page		Page
Spasinou Kharax.....	103, 104	Tejureh G. ....	52, 55
Spermatophagoi.....	43	Tellicherry .....	132
Spikenard, <i>see</i> Nard.		Terabdôn B. ....	106
Stadium, length of.....	163 n.	Terêdôn, <i>see</i> Diridôtis.	
St. George Is. ....	130	Thana .....	113
Stibium .....	32	Thatha .....	109, 156
Storax .....	30	Thibet .....	124
Stoura .....	158, 175	Thina (China) .....	147, 148
Strongylé M. ....	102	Thinai .....	12, 14, 23
Suari .....	106 n.	Thôth.....	52, 82
Subaha M. ....	98	Thurbot Ali C. ....	96
Suche .....	44	Tigre.....	46
Sudich R. ....	194 n.	Tigris R. ....	160
Sugar .....	11, 23, 65	Tiashanes (Chashtana)...	115
Sumatra Is. ....	134	Timoula .....	128
Supârâ .....	127	Tin .....	31
Surat.....	127, 209 n.	Tinnevelly.....	139, 144
Syagros C.....	10, 21, 90, 91, 95	Tirakal R. ....	129
Syrastrênê .....	113, 114	Tisa .....	193 n.
		Tiz .....	193 n.
		Tlepolemos .....	208
		Tombo Is. ....	210 n.
		Tomêros R. ....	183 n.
		Tonike .....	67
		Topaza Is. ....	28
		Toperon .....	127
		Torra or Torre .....	68
		Touag .....	215 n.
		Travancore .....	134, 139
		Troglodytes .....	45, 47
		Troisi .....	194 n.
		Trombay Is. ....	128
		Troullas Is .....	87
		Tunak .....	144
		Tutikorin .....	138, 141
		Tybi .....	52
		Tyndis.....	13, 129, 131
		Tyranosboas .....	127
T			
Taaes .....	79		
Tâb R.....	160, 216 n.		
Tabai.....	16—31 <i>passim</i> .		
Tabis M. ....	147		
Tagara.....	26, 125, 126		
Talmena .....	193		
Tamil .....	126, 127		
Taôkê .....	215 n.		
Tapatege .....	58		
Tapharon, <i>see</i> Sapphar.			
Taprobanê.....	7—33 <i>passim</i> .		
	143, 144		
Tarphara, <i>see</i> Sapphar.			
Tarsia .....	211		

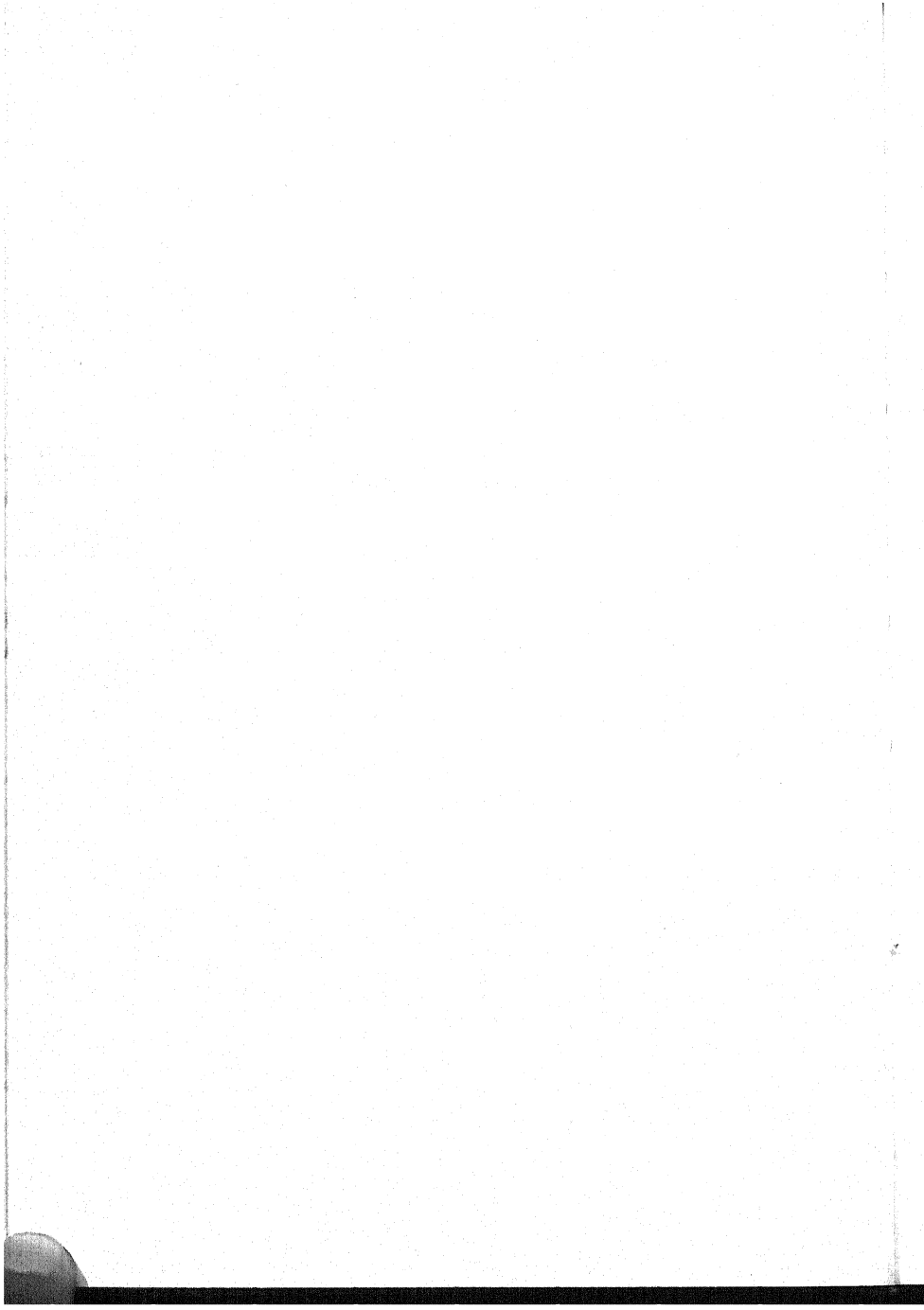
	Page		Page
<b>U</b>		<i>Whales</i> .....	196, 215
Ujjain, <i>see</i> Ozênê.		<i>Wheat</i> .....	28
Ulai R. ....	161	<i>Wine</i> .....	27
Ululah Bunder .....	59		
Urmara C., <i>see</i> Arabah C.		<b>Y</b>	
Uxians .....	216	Yemen .....	78, 80
		Yenbo .....	74
<b>V</b>		Yenkaotschin .....	110
Valabhi .....	115		
Vasâi .....	127	<b>Z</b>	
Vatrachitis R. ....	215 n.	Za Hakale .....	5
Veneris Portus .....	41	Zalegh .....	55
Vijayadrug .....	129	Zanzibar Is. ....	69, 71
Vikramaditya .....	110	Zapphar, <i>see</i> Sapphar.	
Vingorla Rocks .....	130	Zarotis R. ....	216 n.
Vrokt Is., <i>see</i> Brokt Is.		Zeyla .....	54
		Zeyla G. ....	52
<b>W</b>		Zenobios Is. ....	98, 99
Wadi Meifah .....	88	Zhafar .....	97
Wejh .....	75	Zoskales .....	5, 49
		Zouileh .....	55







ANCIENT INDIA AS DESCRIBED  
BY  
KTESIAS THE KNIDIAN



# ANCIENT INDIA

AS DESCRIBED BY

KTĒSIAS<sup>A</sup> THE KNIDIAN;

BEING

A TRANSLATION OF THE ABRIDGEMENT OF HIS "INDIKA"  
BY PHÔTIOS, AND OF THE FRAGMENTS OF THAT  
WORK PRESERVED IN OTHER WRITERS.

BY

J. W. McCRINDLE, M.A., M.R.A.S.,

LATE PRINCIPAL OF THE GOVERNMENT COLLEGE, PATNA,  
LATE FELLOW OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALCUTTA,  
MEMBER OF THE GENERAL COUNCIL OF THE UNIVERSITY  
OF EDINBURGH.

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND INDEX.

---

*Reprinted (with additions)*  
*from the "Indian Antiquary," 1881.*

---

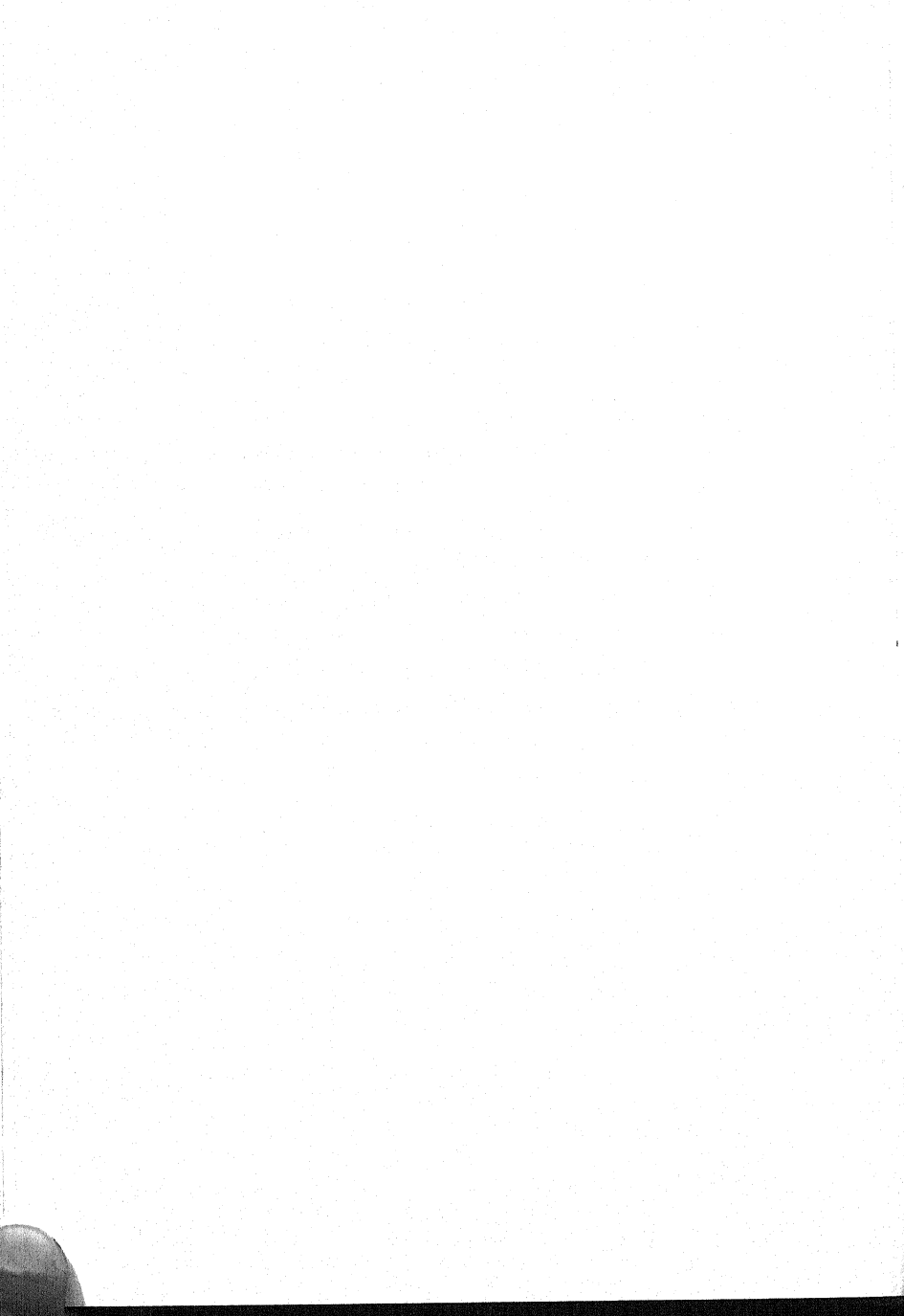


## PREFACE.

---

THIS little book forms the third volume of the series of Annotated Translations of those works of the Classical writers which relate to Ancient India. The volumes already issued contain Translations of the Fragments of Megasthenês—of the *Indika* of Arrian—and of the *Periplus* of the Erythræan Sea; and in those which are to follow will be rendered the Geography of India as given by Strabo and by Ptolemy, and the accounts of the Makedonian Invasion as given by Arrian and by Curtius—and these works will complete the series.

*Upper Norwood : December, 1881.*



# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
Introduction .....	1
THE INDIKA OF KTESIAS:—	
Frag. I. Ecloga in Photii, <i>Bibl.</i> LXXII, p. 144 seqq. ...	7
Frag. II. From Arrian, <i>Anab.</i> Book V. 4, 2.....	34
Frag. III. Strabo, <i>Geog.</i> Book XV. From the <i>Indika</i> of Arrian, 30 .....	35
Frag. IV. Ælian, <i>De Nat. Anim.</i> Book XVII, 29 .....	35
Frag. V. (A) Aristotle, <i>De Gener. Anim.</i> II, 2 .....	36
(B) From the same, towards the end of the 3rd Book of his <i>History of Animals</i>	36
(C) Ælian, <i>De Animal.</i> XVI, 2.	36
Frag. VI. (A) Ælian, <i>De Animal. Nat.</i> XVI, 31 .....	36
(B) Ælian, <i>De Animal. Nat.</i> IV, 32 .....	38
Frag. VII. Tzetzés, <i>Chil.</i> VII, v. 739, from the 3rd Book of the 'Αραβικὸν of Uranius	38

	PAGE
Frag. VIII.	Aristotle, <i>De Hist. Anim.</i>
	II, 1 ..... 38
Frag. IX.	Pausanias ( <i>Boiôt.</i> IX. xxi.
	4), quoting Ktésias ... 39
Frag. X.	Pliny, <i>H. N.</i> VIII, 21
	(al. 30) ..... 40
Frag. XI.	From Ælian, <i>De Animal.</i>
	IV, 21; respecting the
	Indian Martikhora ... 40
Frag. XII. (A)	Antigonos, <i>Mirab. Nar.</i>
	<i>Cong. Hist.</i> c. 182..... 42
	(B) Pliny, <i>Hist. Nat.</i> II, 106. 42
	(C) Ælian, <i>De Anim.</i> XVI, 37 43
Frag. XIII.	Ælian, <i>Nat. Anim.</i> IV, 26. 43
Frag. XIV.	Ælian, <i>Nat. Anim.</i> IV, 27 44
Frag. XV. (A)	Ælian, <i>Nat. Anim.</i> XVI,
	37 ... ..... 46
	(B) Ælian, <i>Nat. Anim.</i> III, 4. 46
	(C) Arist., <i>De Hist. Anim.</i>
	VIII, 28 ..... 46
	(D) Palladius, <i>De Brachman,</i>
	p. 5..... 46
	(E) Pallad., <i>De Brach.</i> , p. 4.. 47
	(F) Antig. <i>Mirab. Nar.</i> 160... 47
	(G) From the work of Sôtiôn 47
	(H) Pliny, XXXI, 2 ..... 47
	(I) Michael. Apostol. <i>Proverb</i>
	XX, 6..... 47
Frag. XVI.	Pliny, <i>Hist. Nat.</i> XVII, 2. 47



	PAGE
Frag. XVII.     Ælian, <i>Nat. Anim.</i> IV,	
36 .....	48
Frag. XVIII.   Ælian, <i>Nat. Anim.</i> IV,	
41 .....	50
Frag. XIX.     Apollonios (Dyskolos),	
<i>Hist. Mirab.</i> XVII..	51
Frag. XX.      Pliny, <i>Hist. Nat.</i>	
XXXVII, 2 .....	51
Frag. XXI.     Tzetzés, <i>Chil.</i> VII, v.	
714 .....	52
Frag. XXII.    Pliny, <i>Hist. Nat.</i> VII, 2	52
Frag. XXIII.   Ælian, IV, 46 .....	52
Frag. XXIV.    Servius the Commen-	
tator on Virgil,	
<i>Æneid</i> I, v. 653 ...	53
Frag. XXV. (A) Ælian, <i>Hist. An.</i> IV, 52	54
(B) Ælian, III, 41 .....	56
Frag. XXVI.    Ælian, <i>Nat. Anim.</i>	
V, 3 .....	56
Frag. XXVII. (A) From Antigonos, <i>Mi-</i>	
<i>rab. Nar. Cong. Hist.</i>	
165 .....	59
(B) From Sôtiôn in scat-	
tered passages where	
he relates marvels	
about rivers, foun-	
tains, and lakes ...	59
(C) Strabo, <i>Geog.</i> XVI, 4..	59
Frag. XXVIII.   Pliny, <i>Hist. Nat.</i>	
XXXI, 2 .....	59

	PAGE
Frag. XXIX. (A) Antigonos, <i>Mirab.</i> <i>Nar. Cong. Hist.</i> c. 182 .....	60
(B) Pliny, <i>Hist. Nat.</i> XXXI, 2 .....	60
Frag. XXX. (A) Tzetzés, <i>Chil.</i> VII, v. 638 .....	60
(B) Pliny, <i>Hist. Nat.</i> VII, 2 .....	61
(C) From the same.....	61
Frag. XXXI. Gellius, <i>Noct. Attic.</i> IX, c. 4.....	62
Frag. XXXII. Frag. IV, from Athênaios, lib. X. [c. 9] .....	64
Frag. XXXIII. Tzetzés, <i>Chil.</i> VIII, v. 987 .....	64
Frag. XXXV. Lucian, <i>Ver. Hist.</i> I, 3 .....	64
Frag. XXXVI. Strabo, <i>Geog.</i> I, 2...	64
Lassen's Review of the Reports of Ktê- sias concerning India.....	65
Appendix, on certain Indian Animals, &c.	92

# ANCIENT INDIA, AS DESCRIBED BY KTÊSIAS.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

### *The Life and Writings of Ktésias.*

To Ktésias belongs the distinction of having been the first writer who gave to the Greeks a special treatise on India—a region concerning which they had, before his time, no further knowledge than what was supplied by the few and meagre notices of it which had appeared in the *Geography* of Hêkataios of Milêtos, and in the *History* of Herodotos. This Ktésias was a native of Knidos, an important Lakedemonian colony situate on the sea coast of Karia, and was the son of Ktésiokhos (or Ktésiarkhos).<sup>1</sup> His family, as we learn from Galen,<sup>2</sup> was a branch of the Asklêpiadai, a caste of priests settled principally in Kôs and Knidos, with whom medicine was an hereditary profession. He was contemporary with Hippokratês, who like himself was an Asklêpiad; but he was very much younger than his illustrious kinsman, though by how many years we know not, as the date of his birth cannot be ascertained. We may conclude, however,

---

<sup>1</sup> V. Tzetz. *Chil.* I. 1; Suidas, *Eudoc.* p. 268; Plutarch. *Artaxerxes*; Lucian. *Ver. Hist.* I. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Tom. V. p. 652, l. 51 ed. Basil.

that he must have risen to eminence by the practice of his art before the year 416 B.C., for about that time he repaired to Persia, probably on the invitation of the king who appointed him physician to the royal court. Here he remained for 17 years, of which the first eleven were spent under Darius II, and the remaining six under his successor Artaxerxês Mnêmôn.<sup>3</sup> He accompanied the latter when he took the field against Cyrus, and, as we learn from Xenophon, cured the wound which his royal master received in the battle of Kunaxa.<sup>4</sup> Soon after this he appears to have left Persia and returned to his own country. This was in the year 398, after which we know nothing of his career.

Ktêsias diversified his professional with literary pursuits and was the author of several works, of which the most important was his history of Persia. This was written in 23 books, of which the first six contained the history of the Assyrian monarchy down to the foundation of the kingdom of Persia. The next seven contained the history of Persia down to the end of the reign of Xerxes, and the remaining ten carried the history down to the time when the author left the Persian Court. This great work, whatever may have been its other merits, possessed this especial value, that the facts which it recorded were derived principally

<sup>3</sup> Diodôros (I., 1) followed by Tzetzes (*Chil.* I. i, 82), writes that Ktêsias fighting with his countrymen on behalf of Cyrus was taken prisoner at the battle of Kunaxa, and was thereafter on account of his skill in medicine taken into the king's service, in which he remained for 17 years. A comparison however of well ascertained facts discredits this statement.

<sup>4</sup> V. *Anab.* I. viii, 27.

from the Persian state-records<sup>5</sup> which Ktésias was permitted by the king to consult. His state-ments, as might be expected, are frequently at variance with those of Herodotos whose sources of information were different. He is also in a few instances at variance with his contemporary Xenophon. The work unfortunately no longer exists, but we possess a brief abstract of its contents made by Phôtios, and some fragments which have been preserved by Diodôros and other writers.

Besides the History and the Treatise on India, Ktésias appears to have composed several minor works. These consisted, so far as is known, of treatise on the Revenues of the Persian Empire, two treatises of a geographical nature—one being on Mountains, and the other on Rivers, and some books of voyages entitled *Periploi*.

The *Indika* of Ktésias, like his other works, has been lost, but, like his great work on the History of Persia, it has been abridged by Phôtios, while several fragments of it have been preserved in the pages of other writers, as for instance Ælian. It was comprised in a single book, and embodied the information which Ktésias had gathered about India, partly from the reports of Persian officials who had visited that country on the king's service, and partly also perhaps from the reports of Indians themselves, who in those days were occasionally to be seen at the Persian Court, whither they resorted, either as merchants, or as envoys bringing presents and tribute from the

---

<sup>5</sup> ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν διφθερῶν ἐν αἷς οἱ Πέρσαι τὰς παλαιὰς πράξεις κατὰ τινα νόμον εἶχον συντεταγμένας. Diod. II. 32.

princes of Northern India, which was then subject to Persian rule. Ktésias unfortunately was not only a great lover of the marvellous, but also singularly deficient, for one of his profession, in critical acumen. He took, therefore, no pains to sift the accounts which were communicated to him, and the book which he gave to the world, instead of being, what a careful enquirer with his advantages might have made it—a valuable repertory of facts concerning India and its people, seemed to be little else than a tissue of fables and of absurd perversions or exaggerations of the truth, and was condemned as such, not only by the consentient voice of antiquity, but also by the generality of the learned in modern times. The work was nevertheless popular, and in spite of its infirm credit, was frequently cited by subsequent writers. Its ‘tales of wonder’ fascinated the credulous, while its style, which was remarkable alike for its ease, sweetness, and perspicuity, recommended it to readers of every stamp.<sup>6</sup> It was the only systematic account of India the Greeks possessed till the time of the Makedonian invasion.

We must notice in conclusion the fact, that, as the knowledge of India, and especially of Indian antiquity, has increased, scholars have been led to question the justice of the traditional verdict which condemns Ktésias as a writer of unscrupulous

---

<sup>6</sup> Ktésias, though a Dorian, used many Ionic forms and modes of expression, and these more in the *Indika* than in the *Persika*. His style is praised for the qualities mentioned in the text by Phôtios, Dion. Halicarn., and Demet. Phaler., who does not hesitate to speak of him as a poet, the very demiurge of perspicuity (*ἐναργείας δημιουργός*).

pulous mendacity. They do not indeed wholly exculpate him, but they have shown that many of his statements, which were once taken to be pure falsehoods, have either certain elements of truth underlying them, or that they originated in misconceptions which were perhaps less wilful than unavoidable. The fabulous races for instance which he has described are found, so far from being fictions of his own invention, to have their exact analogues in monstrous races which are mentioned in the two great national epics and other Brahmanical writings, and which, though therein depicted with every attribute of deformity, were nevertheless, not purely fictitious, but misrepresentations of such aboriginal tribes as offered a stout resistance to their Aryan invaders while still engaged in the task of conquering India.

These moderate views, which have been advocated by such authorities as Heeren, Bähr, C. Müller, Lassen, and others, will no doubt come eventually to be very generally accepted.

#### *Notice of Phôtios.*

Phôtios, to whom we are indebted for the abridgments of Ktésias, was the Patriarch of Constantinople, an office to which he was elected, though previously a layman, in the year A. D. 858. Soon after the accession of Leo VI. as emperor (886) he was accused of having conspired against his life, and was in consequence banished to a monastery in Armenia, where he ended his days. He was not only a scholar of wonderful erudition and sound judgment, but was the author of many

works, the most important of which was that entitled *Myriobiblion* or *Bibliothékê*—which was a review on an extensive scale of ancient Greek literature. It contained abstracts of the contents of 280 volumes, many of which are now known only from the account which he has given of them. His abridgment of the Persian history of our author is much more concise than that of his *Indika*. The latter is however a careless and unsatisfactory performance, for the passages summarized are chiefly those for which Ktésias was stigmatized as a fabulist and a liar.

As Lassen has devoted one of the leading sections<sup>7</sup> of his great work on Indian Antiquity to an examination of the reports which are yet extant of Ktésias upon India, and as his review is all but exhaustive, and reflects nearly all the light that learned research has yet been able to throw upon the subject, I have for this reason, as well as with a view to obviate the need which would otherwise occur, of having constant recourse to long foot-notes, thought it advisable to append to the translation of the Greek text a translation of this review. I have appended also a translation of some passages from *Indikopleustês*, which will serve to illustrate the descriptions given by Ktésias of certain Indian animals and plants.

---

<sup>7</sup> In vol. II., pp. 641 ff. 2nd ed. 1874.



## THE INDIKA OF KTĒSIAS.

## FRAGMENT I.

Ecloga in Photii, *Bibl.* LXXII, p. 144 seqq.

1. Another work was read—the *Indika* of Ktēsius, contained in a single book wherein the author has made more frequent use of Ionic forms. He reports of the river Indus that, where narrowest, it has a breadth of forty stadia, and where widest of two hundred;<sup>1</sup> and of the Indians themselves that they almost outnumber all other men taken together.<sup>2</sup> He mentions the *skōlēx*,<sup>3</sup> a kind of worm bred in the river, this being indeed the only living creature which is found in it. He states that there are no men who live beyond the Indians,<sup>4</sup> and that no rain falls in India<sup>5</sup> but that the country is watered by its river.

2. He notices the *pantarba*,<sup>6</sup> a kind of

<sup>1</sup> This differs from what Arrian states on the authority of Ktēsius, (see Frag. ii.) Probably Arrian has quoted the sentence more correctly than Photios. And 100 stadia is far enough from the truth. With Ktēsius Conf. Philostratus, *Vit. Apoll.* II, 18: τὸν μὲν δὴ Ἰνδὸν ὅδε ἐπεραιώθησαν, σταδίους μάλιστα τεσσαράκοντα τὸ γὰρ πλώμιον αὐτοῦ τοσοῦτον. See Mannert, *Geogr. d. Gr. u. Rom.* Bd. V, i, p. 74.

<sup>2</sup> Conf. Herodot. III, 94; Strabo II, v. 32.

<sup>3</sup> Conf. § 27, and Frag. xxvi.

<sup>4</sup> Conf. Herodot. III, 98, 105; Strabo II, v, 1, 32.

<sup>5</sup> But conf. Strabo XV, i, 1, 13, 17, 18; Arrian, *Indika*, VI, 4; Philost. *Vit. Apoll.* II, 19; Diodor. II, 36.

<sup>6</sup> Count Weltheim (*Sammlung von Aufsätzen*, &c. Bd. II, p. 168ff.) regards this as the *Hydrophanes* or the changing stone, sun agate, a kind of opal, remarkable for the variety of colours it displays when thrown into water.

sealstone, and relates that when sealstones and other costly gems to the number of 477<sup>7</sup> which belonged to the Baktrian merchant, had been flung into the river, this *pantarba* drew them up to itself, all adhering together.

3. He notices also the elephants<sup>8</sup> that demolish walls; the kind of small apes<sup>9</sup> that have tails four cubits long; the cocks that are of extraordinary size;<sup>10</sup> the kind of bird called the parrot<sup>11</sup> and which he thus describes: it has a tongue and voice like the human, is of the size of a hawk, has a red bill, is adorned with a beard of a black colour, while the neck is red like cinnabar, it talks like a man in Indian, but if taught Greek can talk in Greek also.

4. He notices the fountain<sup>12</sup> which is filled every year with liquid gold, out of which are

<sup>7</sup> So Müller's text, the common reading is 77.

<sup>8</sup> With this compare Frag. iv. below.

<sup>9</sup> This is reconcilable with the accounts of others if for *μικρῶν* we read *μακρῶν*. For Megasthenēs also speaks of Indian apes not smaller than large dogs and which have tails of five cubits length which answer to the *Mandi* ape or *Simia Faunus*, with the hair on the forehead projecting over the eyes, and the beard white, the body being dark. Vid. *Æliani, Nat. An.* XVII, 39; conf. XVI, 10, and Strabo XV, i, 37:—"The monkeys are larger than the largest dogs . . . their tails are more than two cubits in length."

<sup>10</sup> Conf. Frag. v.c.

<sup>11</sup> *Ψιττακός*: Reland *De Ophir*, p. 184, compares this with the Persian *تدک tedek*. In Arrian, *Ind.* XV, 8 and *Ælian, Nat. An.* XVI, 2 and 15, the bird is called *σιττακος*. *Ælian* however elsewhere calls it *ψιττακός* and so also Diodōros and Pausanias. A feminine form *ψιττακή* occurs in Arist. *H. An.* VIII, 12. The form in Pliny is *Psittacus*.

<sup>12</sup> Conf. Philostrat. *Vit. Apoll.* III, 45.

annually drawn a hundred earthen pitchers filled with the metal. The pitchers must be earthen since the gold when drawn becomes solid, and to get it out the containing vessel must needs be broken in pieces. The fountain is of a square shape, eleven cubits in circumference, and a fathom in depth. Each pitcherful of gold weighs a talent. He notices<sup>13</sup> also the iron found at the bottom of this fountain, adding that he had in his own possession two swords made from this iron, one given to him by the king of Persia,<sup>14</sup> and the other by Parysatis, the mother of that same king. This iron, he says, if fixed in the earth, averts clouds and hail and thunderstorms, and he avers that he had himself twice seen the iron do this, the king on both occasions performing the experiment.<sup>15</sup>

5. We learn further that the dogs of India<sup>16</sup> are of very great size, so that they fight even with the lion;<sup>17</sup> that there are certain high mountains having mines which yield the sar-

---

<sup>13</sup> The Munich MS. 287, makes this a separate fountain : ἔστι δὲ ἑτέρα κρήνη (read κρήνη) ἣτις ἐξάγει σιδηρον. Conf. Philost. *Vit. Apoll.* III, 45.

<sup>14</sup> Artaxerxes Mnēmōn.

<sup>15</sup> Baehr thinks that Ktésias here refers to the magnet, the properties of which were not at that time so well known as now.

<sup>16</sup> Conf. *Ælian. Nat. An.* IV, 19; VIII, 1, 9; and *Frag.* vi, below.

<sup>17</sup> Compare what *Ælian* (*Frag.* vi.) says of the dogs of the Kynamolgoi; compare also *Strabo*, quoting *Megasthenes* XV, p. 1029, and the account in *Curtius* (*de Reb. Alex.* IX, i, 31) of an Indian dog attacking a lion.

dine-stone, and onyxes, and other seal stones ;<sup>18</sup> that the heat is excessive, and that the sun appears in India to be ten times larger<sup>19</sup> than in other countries ; and that many of the inhabitants are suffocated to death by the heat. Of the sea in India, he says, that it is not less than the sea in Hellas ; its surface however for four finger-breadths downward is hot, so that fish cannot live that go near the heated surface, but must confine themselves always to the depths below.

6. He states that the river Indus flows through the level country, and through between the mountains, and that what is called the Indian reed<sup>20</sup> grows along its course, this being so thick that two men could scarcely encompass its stem with their arms, and of a height to equal the mast of a merchant ship of the heaviest burden.<sup>21</sup> Some are of a greater size even than this, though some are of less, as might be expected when the mountain it grows on is of vast range. The reeds are distinguished by sex, some being male,

---

<sup>18</sup> These mountains have been variously identified with Taurus, with Imaus, with Paropamisus, and with the mountains of Great and Little Bukharia, which stretch through Tibet, and Kasmir, but Count Weltheim takes them to be the Bala Ghâts near Bharoch. The Periplus states that onyxes and other precious stones were found in Ozênê (now Ujjain) and thence sent to Barygaza (Bharûch) for export. The well known Khambay stones come from a neighbouring district.

<sup>19</sup> Strabo III, p. 202, contests this.

<sup>20</sup> Conf. Frag. vii, below.

<sup>21</sup> Lit. of 10,000 talents : or *μυριαμόδρου* (Lobeck, *ad. Phryn.* p. 662) 60,000 amphoræ. Conf. Frag. vii.

others female. The male reed has no pith, and is exceedingly strong, but the female has a pith.<sup>22</sup>

7. He describes an animal called the *martikhora*,<sup>23</sup> found in India. Its face is like a man's—it is about as big as a lion, and in colour red like cinnabar. It has three rows of teeth—ears like the human—eyes of a pale-blue like the human and a tail like that of the land scorpion, armed with a sting and more than a cubit long.<sup>24</sup> It has besides stings on each side of its tail, and, like the scorpion, is armed with an additional sting on the crown of its head, wherewith it stings any one who goes near it, the wound in all cases proving mortal. If attacked from a distance it defends itself both in front and in rear—in front with its tail, by up-lifting it and darting out the stings, like shafts shot from a bow, and in rear by straightening it out. It can strike to the distance of a hundred feet, and no creature can survive the wound it inflicts save only the elephant. The stings are about a foot in length, and not thicker than the finest thread. The

---

<sup>22</sup> Cf. Theophrastos, *Plant. Histor.* IV, ii, where he states that the male reed is solid, and the female, hollow. Cf. also Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* XVI, 36. Sprengel identifies this reed of Ktésias with the *Bambusa* and *Calamus Rotang* of Linnæus. The same reed is mentioned by Herodotus (III, 98).

<sup>23</sup> See Frags. viii—xi, below.

<sup>24</sup> *μείζω ὑπάρχουσαν πήχεος*. Baehr rightly amends the reading here to *μείζον ὑπάρχον ἄν*, which refers the measure to the sting instead of to the tail.

name *martikhora*<sup>25</sup> means in Greek ἀνθρωποφάγος (i.e. man-eater), and it is so called because it carries off men and devours them, though it no doubt preys upon other animals as well. In fighting it uses not only its stings but also its claws. Fresh stings grow up to replace those shot away in fighting. These animals are numerous in India, and are killed by the natives who hunt them with elephants, from the backs of which they attack them with darts.

8. He describes the Indians as extremely just, and gives an account of their manners and customs. He mentions the sacred spot in the midst of an uninhabited region which they venerate in the name of the Sun and the Moon.<sup>26</sup> It takes one a fifteen days' journey to reach this place from Mount Sardous. Here for the space of five and thirty days the Sun every year cools down to allow his worshippers to celebrate his rites, and return home unscorched by his

---

<sup>25</sup> Tychsen says—This is the Persian مرد خور *mard khór* from *mard*, a man and *khorden* to eat: *khór*, the eater, is an abbreviated form of the participle *khordēh*, which is still on use . . . if the final be viewed as a component part of the Persian word, we have only to substitute the participial form مرد خورا *mardikhorā*, (abbreviated from *mardikhorān*) as Reland has already done (p. 223), and we obtain precisely the same signification. Conf. Frags. viii—xi; also Philostratus, *Vit. Apoll.* IV, 45.

<sup>26</sup> Weltheim, rejecting the opinion of some that this uninhabited region was the desert of Cobi, takes it to be rather the great desert east of the Indus where the worship of the sun flourished in early times. This desert also was in reality about a fifteen days' journey distant from the mountains which produced the onyx and sardine stones. Lassen has however assigned the locality to the Vindhya.

burning rays.<sup>27</sup> He observes that in India there is neither thunder nor lightning nor rain, but that storms of wind and violent hurricanes which sweep everything before them, are of frequent occurrence. The morning sun produces coolness for one half of the day, but an excessive heat during the other half, and this holds good for most parts of India.<sup>28</sup>

9. It is not, however, by exposure to the sun that the people are swarthy,<sup>29</sup> but by nature, for among the Indians there are both men and women who are as fair as any in the world, though such are no doubt in a minority. He adds that he had himself seen two Indian women and five men of such a fair complexion.<sup>30</sup>

10. Wishing to assure us of the truth of his statement that the sun makes the temperature cool for five and thirty days, he mentions several facts that are equally strange—that the streams of fire which issue from *Ætna*<sup>31</sup> leave unscathed amidst the surrounding havoc those lands which

---

<sup>27</sup> ἵνα μὴ ἀφλεκτοὶ αὐτὴν τελέσωσι, lit. *that they may not celebrate his rites unscorched*. As the writer must have meant the opposite of this, φλεκτοὶ must be read instead of ἀφλεκτοὶ.

<sup>28</sup> Conf. Herodot. III, 104.

<sup>29</sup> Conf. Herodot. III, 101; Arrian. *Exp. Alex.* V, 4, 8; but on the contrary, Aristot. *Hist. Anim.* III, 22; *Gener. Anim.* II, 2; Strabo, XV, i, 13, 24.

<sup>30</sup> Possibly from Kásmir.—J. B.

<sup>31</sup> Conf. Pausan. X, 28, 2; Strabo, VI, 2; Valer. Max. V, 4.

belong to just men<sup>32</sup>—that in Zakynthos there are fountains with fish whence pitch is taken out<sup>33</sup>—that in Naxos is a fountain which at times discharges a wine of great sweetness,<sup>34</sup> and that the water of the river Phasis likewise, if kept in a vessel for a night and a day, changes into a wine which is also of great sweetness<sup>35</sup>—that near Phaselis in Lykia there is a perpetual volcano,<sup>36</sup> always flaming on the summit of the rock both by night and by day, and this is not quenched by water, which rather augments the

---

<sup>32</sup> The reference is to *the field of the pious*, εὐσεβῶν χώρα, near Catana, the scene of the story regarding the two brothers Amphinomos and Anapos, who saved their parents during an eruption by carrying them off on their shoulders. Vid. Pausan. X. xxviii, 2; Strabo, VI, 2; and Valer. Max. V, 4.

<sup>33</sup> Herodotus (IV. 195) states that he had himself seen this bituminous fountain. It is mentioned by Antigonos; *Hist. Mirabil.* 169; by Dioskor. I, 99; by Vitruv. VIII, 3; and Pliny, XXXV, 15. Their accounts have been verified by modern travellers.

<sup>34</sup> This fountain is mentioned by Stephan. Byz. s. v. Naxos, and a similar one by Pliny (*Hist. Nat.* II, ciii, 106)—in the island of Andros; Cf. idem. XXXI, ii; and also Philostrat. *Icon.* I, 25.

<sup>35</sup> The waters of the Phasis, according to modern accounts, are lead-coloured, possessed of a healing virtue and held as sacred, perhaps because they were thought by the ancients to have sprung from the gates of the morning sun, and therefore to have formed the dividing line between day and night. Arrian in the *Periplus Pont. Eux.*, no doubt with an eye to this passage of Ktésias, says that the water of the Phasis if kept in certain vessels acquired a pleasant vinous taste. V. Ritter, *Erdk.* II. pp. 817 and 915. Conf. Pliny (*H. N.* II. ciii, 106) who says that the water of the Lyncestis in Epirus is somewhat acid, and intoxicates like wine those who drink it.

<sup>36</sup> See Frag. xii, below.



blaze, but by casting rubbish into it<sup>37</sup>—and in like manner, the volcanoes of *Ætna* and of *Prusa* keep always burning.<sup>38</sup>

11. He writes that in the middle of *India* are found the swarthy men called *Pygmies*,<sup>39</sup> who speak the same language as the other *Indians*. They are very diminutive, the tallest of them being but two cubits in height, while the majority are only one and a half. They let their hair grow very long—down to their knees, and even lower. They have the largest beards anywhere to be seen, and when these have grown sufficiently long and copious, they no longer wear clothing, but, instead, let the hair of the head fall down their backs far below the knee, while in front are their beards trailing down to their very feet. When their hair has thus thickly enveloped their whole body, they bind it round them with a zone, and so make it serve for a garment. Their privates are thick,

<sup>37</sup> Conf. *Frag.* xii, A. and B. Beaufort, an English traveller, confirms this statement. He reports that while travelling in the regions nearest the country of the *Phaselitæ* he came upon a place where there was to be seen an ever-burning flame which like the fire of a volcano was inextinguishable. V. Beaufort's *Caramania*, p. 44.

<sup>38</sup> There is a *Prusa* in *Bithynia* and another in *Mysia*, each near a mountain. *Strabo*, (XII, p. 844 seqq.) mentions both; but as he says nothing of a volcanic mountain in connexion with either, *Bæhr* inclines to think that the reference is to *Prusa* in the vicinity of Mount *Olympus*, formerly called *Cios*, famous for miraculous fountains and things of that sort.

<sup>39</sup> Conf. *Homer*, *Il.* III, 6; *Aristot. Hist. An.* VIII, 12 and 14; *Philostrat. Vit. Apollon.* III, 47; *Plin. Hist. Nat.* VII, 2; *Strabo, Geog.* XV, i, 57; *Aulus Gellius, Noct. Att.* IX, 4.

and so large that they depend even to their ancles. They are moreover snubnosed, and otherwise ill-favoured. Their sheep are of the size of our lambs, and their oxen and asses rather smaller than our rams, which again are as big as their horses and mules and other cattle.<sup>40</sup> Of the Pygmies three thousand men attend the king of the Indians, on account of their great skill in archery. They are eminently just, and have the same laws as the Indians. They hunt hares and foxes not with dogs but with ravens and kites and crows and vultures.<sup>41</sup> In their country is a lake eight hundred stadia in circumference, which produces an oil like our own. If the wind be not blowing, this oil floats upon the surface, and the Pygmies going upon the lake in little boats collect it from amidst the waters in small tubs for household use.<sup>42</sup> They use also oil of sêsamum<sup>43</sup> and nut oil, but the lake-oil<sup>44</sup> is the best. The lake has also fish.

12. There is much silver in their part of the country, and the silver-mines though not deep are deeper than those in Baktria. Gold also is a product of India.<sup>45</sup> It is not found

---

<sup>40</sup> See Frag. xii, c.

<sup>41</sup> See Frag. xiii below.

<sup>42</sup> Conf. Frag. xxvii.

<sup>43</sup> See Salmas, *Exerc. Plin.* p. 1033; Sprengel, *Histor. Botan.* vol. I, p. 79; Reynier, *de l'Economie publique des Perses*, p. 283.

<sup>44</sup> Antigon, c. 165, in Frag. xxvii, below.

<sup>45</sup> On metals in India, see Heeren, *Asiat. Nat.* vol. II, p. 268.

in rivers and washed *from the sands* the like gold of the river Paktôlos, but is found on those many high-towering mountains which are inhabited by the Griffins,<sup>46</sup> a race of four-footed birds, about as large as wolves, having legs and claws like those of the lion, and covered all over the body with black feathers except only on the breast where they are red. On account of those birds the gold with which the mountains abound is difficult to be got.

13. The sheep and the goats of the Indians<sup>47</sup> are bigger than asses, and generally produce young by four and by six at a time. The tails grow to such a size that those of the dams must be cut off before the rains can get at them. India does not however produce the pig, either the tame sort or the wild.<sup>48</sup> Palm-trees and their dates are in India<sup>49</sup> thrice the size of those in Babylon,<sup>50</sup> and we learn that there is a certain river flowing with honey out of a rock, like the one we have in our own country.

14. The justice of the Indians, their devotion to their king and their contempt of death

---

<sup>46</sup> Γρύψ, in Persian گرفتن *giriften*, means to gripe or seize and گرفت *girif* corresponds well enough with γρύψ. See Frag. xiv, below, where a fuller account of the *gryphons* is given.

<sup>47</sup> See Frag. xii, below.

<sup>48</sup> See Frag. xv, below; also Frag. xxix, D. Swine, wild and tame, are common enough now in India.

<sup>49</sup> Conf. Palladius *De Brachman*, p. 4.

<sup>50</sup> Regarding the Babylonian palms, vid. Herodot. I, 193; and Diodor. II, 53.

are themes on which he loves to expatiate. He notices a fountain having this peculiarity, that when any one draws water from it, the water coagulates like cheese, and should you then detach from the solid lump a piece weighing about three obols, and having triturated this, put the powder into common water, he to whom you give this potion blabs out whatever he has done, for he becomes delirious, and raves like a madman all that day.<sup>51</sup> The king avails himself of this property when he wishes to discover the guilt or innocence of accused persons. Whoever incriminates himself *when undergoing the ordeal* is sentenced to starve himself to death, while he who does not confess to any crime is acquitted.<sup>52</sup>

15. The Indians are not afflicted with headache, or toothache, or ophthalmia, nor have they mouthsores or ulcers in any part of their body. The age to which they live is 120, 130, and 150 years, though the very old live to 200.<sup>53</sup>

16. In their country is a serpent a span long, in appearance like the most beautiful purple with a head perfectly white but without any teeth.<sup>54</sup> The creature is caught on those very hot mountains whose mines yield the sardine-stone. It does not sting, but on whatever part of the body it casts its vomit, that place invariably putrifies.

<sup>51</sup> Antigonus Caryst. *Histor. Mirab.* C. 160; Sotion, C. 17; Strabo, XVI, iv, 20.

<sup>52</sup> Conf. Frag. xv, G.

<sup>53</sup> Arrian, *Ind.* 15, 12, and Frag. xxii, C.

<sup>54</sup> See Frag. xvii.

If suspended by the tail, it emits two kinds of poison, one like amber which oozes from it while living, and the other black, which oozes from its carcase. Should about a sesame-seed's bulk of the former be administered to any one, he dies the instant he swallows it, for his brain runs out through his nostrils. If the black sort be given it induces consumption, but operates so slowly that death scarcely ensues in less than a year's time.<sup>55</sup>

17. He mentions an Indian bird called the *Dikaïron*,<sup>56</sup> a name equivalent in Greek to *δίκαϊον* (*i.e.* just). It is about the size of a partridge's egg. It buries its dung under the earth to prevent its being found. Should it be found notwithstanding, and should a person at morning tide swallow so much of it as would about equal a grain of *sêsamum*, he falls into a deep unconscious sleep from which he never awakes, but dies at the going down of the sun.<sup>57</sup>

18. In the same country grows what is called

---

<sup>55</sup> Conf. Frag. xvii, also Strabo, XV, i, 37, where, quoting Megasthenes, he speaks of flying serpents that let fall drops which raise putrid sores on the skin.

<sup>56</sup> *Δίκαϊρος*: Tychsen compares the word with *د* *di*, good, the good principle, and *ك* *kar*, doing, a participle of the verb *كردن* *kerden*; the whole then means *benefactor*, and might be supposed to allude to the custom of the bird here mentioned. Bekker reads *δίκερον* here. See Frag. xviii.

<sup>57</sup> For fuller particulars vide Frag. xviii.

the *Parébon*,<sup>58</sup> a plant about the size of the olive, found only in the royal gardens, producing neither flower nor fruit, but having merely fifteen roots, which grow down into the earth, and are of considerable thickness, the very slenderest being about as thick as one's arm. If a span's length of this root be taken, it attracts to itself all objects brought near it—gold, silver, copper, stones and all things else except amber. If however a cubit's length of it be taken, it attracts lambs and birds, and it is in fact with this root that most kinds of birds are caught. Should you wish to turn water solid, even a whole gallon of it, you have but to throw into the water not more than an obol's weight of this root, and the thing is done. Its effect is the same upon wine which, when condensed by it, can be held in your hand like a piece of wax, though it melts the next day. It is found beneficial in the cure of bowel disorders.

19. Through India there flows a certain river, not of any great size, but only about two stadia in breadth, called in the Indian tongue *Hyparkhos*,<sup>59</sup> which means in Greek *φέρων πάντα*

---

<sup>58</sup> Πάρεβον (in Apollonius *παρύβος*,) may be compared with the Persian بار *bâr*, weight, burthen, and آور *âver*, bearing, drawing. This comparison however is rather defective.—Tychsen. See Frag. xix.

<sup>59</sup> Υπαρκος: Tychsen adduces the Persian *âver*, bringing, carrying, and خوش *khosh*, good: consequently *âver-khosh*, bringing good, which exactly corresponds with the

τα ἀγαθὰ (i.e. the bearer of all things good). This river for thirty days in every year floats down amber, for in the upper part of its course where it flows among the mountains there are said to be trees overhanging its current which for thirty days at a particular season in every year continue dropping tears like the almond-tree and the pine-tree and other trees. These tears on dropping into the water harden into gum. The Indian name for the tree is *siptakhora*,<sup>60</sup> which means when rendered into Greek γλυκύ, ἡδὺ (i.e. sweet). These trees then supply the Indians with their amber.<sup>61</sup> And not only so but they are said to yield also berries, which grow in clusters like the grapes of the vine, and have stones as large as the filbert-nuts of Pontos.<sup>62</sup>

20. He writes that on the mountains just spoken of there live men having heads like

---

signification pointed out by Ktésias. We might also compare *برخوش* *berkhosh*, good, so that the initial letter in *ὑπαρχος* would be merely euphonic, but then the participle *φέρων* would not be expressed. The river is called by Pliny the Hypobarus, vide *Frag.* xx.

<sup>60</sup> *Σιπταχόρα*: Compare this with the Persian *شیدته خور* *shiftehkhhor*, 'agreeable to eat.' The Persians call an apricot *شیدته رنگ* *shifteh-reng*, 'agreeable colour.' Pliny (*Hist. Nat.* xxxvii. 2) has 'arbores eas Aphytaeoras vocare,' where the word is disfigured.—Tychsen.

<sup>61</sup> India however does not produce amber, and the tree of which it is here said to be the gum, cannot be satisfactorily identified. Baehr quotes Pliny XII, ix, 19, as a passage of no small importance for settling the question.

<sup>62</sup> Pliny (*Hist. Nat.* XV, xxii, 24), explains why *Pontic nuts* were so called.

those of dogs, who wear the skins of wild beasts, and do not use articulate speech, but bark like dogs, and thus converse so as to be understood by each other.<sup>63</sup> They have larger teeth than dogs, and claws like those of dogs, only larger and more rounded. They inhabit the mountains, and extend as far as the river Indus. They are swarthy, and like all the other Indians extremely just men. With the Indians they can hold intercourse, for they understand what they say, though they cannot, it is true, reply to them in words, still by barking and by making signs with their hands and their fingers like the deaf and the dumb, they can make themselves understood. They are called by the Indians *Kalystrioi*, which means in Greek *Κυνοκέφαλοι*<sup>64</sup> (*i. e.*, dog-headed). Their food is raw flesh. The whole tribe numbers not less than 120,000 men.

21. Near the sources of this river<sup>65</sup> there grows a certain purple flower, which is used for dying purple, and is not inferior to the Greek sort, but even imparts a far more florid hue.

---

<sup>63</sup> See Frags. xxi and xxii.

<sup>64</sup> Tychsen compares the word with the Persian *کلی* *kelek* or *keluk*, a wolf, and *سر* *ser*, the head, *i. e.* *kelukser*, 'wolf-headed.' Another word more exactly answering the sound of the Greek would be *Kalusterin*, the superlative of *kalus*, stupid, which would convert the dogheaded people into 'blockheads,' but this is not consonant with the translation of the name.—Heeren, *Asiat. Nat.* vol. II. p. 364. Vide Frags. xxi, xxii, xxxi.

<sup>65</sup> The Hyparkhos.



In the same parts there is a wild insect about the size of a beetle, red like cinnabar, with legs excessively long. It is as soft as the worm called *skólex* and is found on the trees which produce amber, eating the fruits of those trees and destroying them, as in Greece the wood-louse ravages the vine-trees. The Indians grind these insects to a powder and therewith dye such robes, tunics, and other vestments as they want to be of a purple hue.<sup>66</sup> Their dye-stuffs are superior to those used by the Persians.

22: The *Kynokephaloi* living on the mountains do not practise any of the arts but subsist by the produce of the chase. They slaughter the prey, and roast the flesh in the sun. They rear however great numbers of sheep and goats and asses. They drink the milk of the sheep and the whey which is made therefrom. They eat moreover the fruit of the *Siptakhora*—the tree which produces amber, for it is sweet. They also dry this fruit, and pack it in hampers as the Greeks do raisins. The same people construct rafts, and freight them with the hampers as well as with the flowers of the purple plant, after cleansing it, and with 260 talents weight of amber, and a like weight of the pigment which dyes purple, and 1000 talents more of amber. All this cargo, which is the

---

<sup>66</sup> It is generally agreed that the cochineal insect is that to which Ktésias refers, though his description of it is not quite accurate. For fuller particulars vide Frag. xxiii.

season's produce, they convey annually *as tribute* to the King of the Indians. They take also additional quantities of the same commodities for sale to the Indians, from whom they receive in exchange loaves of bread and flour and cloth which is made from a tree-grown stuff (cotton).<sup>67</sup> They sell also swords such as they use in hunting wild beasts, and bows and javelins, for they are fell marksmen both in shooting with the bow and in hurling the javelin. As they inhabit steep and pathless mountains they cannot possibly be conquered in war, and the king moreover once every five years sends them as presents 300,000 arrows and as many javelins, 120,000 shields and 50,000 swords.

23. These Kynokephaloi have no houses but live in caves. They hunt wild beasts with the bow and the spear, and run so fast that they can overtake them in the chase. Their women bathe once a month at the time of menstruation, and then only. The men do not bathe at all, but merely wash their hands. Thrice a month, however, they anoint themselves with an oil made from milk,<sup>68</sup> and wipe themselves with skins. Skins denuded of the hair, and made thin and soft, constitute the dress both of the men and their wives. Their richest men

<sup>67</sup> See Larcher's Note on Herodot. III, 47; Plin. *Nat. Hist.* XIX, 1; and Frag. xxiv.

<sup>68</sup> Butter; conf. Polyæn. *Strateg.* IV, 3, 32; cf. also *Peripl. Ær. Mar.* § 41, where the same expression occurs.

however use cotton raiment,<sup>69</sup> but the number of such men is small. They have no bed but sleep on a litter of straw or leaves. That man is considered the richest who possesses most sheep, and in property of this sort consists all their wealth. Both men and women have, like dogs, tails above their buttocks but larger and more hairy.<sup>70</sup> They copulate like quadrupeds in dog-fashion, and to copulate otherwise is thought shameful. They are just, and of all men are the longest-lived, attaining the age of 170, and some even of 200 years.

24. Beyond these again are other men who inhabit the country above the sources of the river, who are swarthy like the other Indians, do no work, and neither eat grain nor drink water, but rear a good many cows and goats and sheep, and drink their milk as their sole sustenance. Children are born among them with the anus closed up, and the contents of the bowels are therefore voided, it is said, as urine, this being something like curds, though not at all thick but feculent. When they drink milk in the morning and take another draught at noon, and then immediately after eat a certain sweet-tasted root of indigenous growth which is said to prevent milk from coagulating in the

---

<sup>69</sup> Curtius, VIII, 9, 21.

<sup>70</sup> Conf. Frag. i, section appended to § 33. Malte-Brun considered that this statement had reference to the Ourang-Outang of the Island of Borneo, or perhaps of the Andaman islands.

stomach, this root towards evening acts as an emetic, and they vomit up everything quite readily.

25. Among the Indians, he proceeds, there are wild asses as large as horses, some being even larger.<sup>71</sup> Their head is of a dark red colour, their eyes blue, and the rest of their body white. They have a horn on their forehead, a cubit in length [the filings of this horn, if given in a potion, are an antidote to poisonous drugs]. This horn for about two palm-breadths upwards from the base is of the purest white, where it tapers to a sharp point of a flaming crimson, and, in the middle, is black.<sup>72</sup> These horns are made into drinking cups, and such as drink from them are attacked neither by convulsions nor by the sacred disease (epilepsy). Nay, they are not even affected by poisons, if either before or after swallowing them they drink from these cups wine, water, or anything else. While other asses moreover, whether wild or tame, and indeed all other solid-hoofed animals have neither huckle-bones,<sup>73</sup> nor gall in the liver, these *one-horned asses*<sup>74</sup> have both. Their huckle-bone is the most beautiful of all I have ever seen, and is, in ap-

<sup>71</sup> See Frag. xxv.

<sup>72</sup> Conf. Bruce's account (*Travels*, vol. V, p. 93) who describes its surface as of a reddish-brown.

<sup>73</sup> Ἀστραγάλους, conf. Aristot. *Hist. An.* II, 2, 9.

<sup>74</sup> Tychsen thinks the rhinoceros is here meant, but the colour and other details do not quite agree with that animal. Heeren, *As. Nat.* vol. II, pp. 364 ff.

pearance and size, like that of the ox. It is as heavy as lead, and of the colour of cinnabar<sup>75</sup> both on the surface, and all through-out. It is exceedingly fleet and strong, and no creature that pursues it, not even the horse, can overtake it.

26. On first starting it scampers off somewhat leisurely, but the longer it runs, it gallops faster and faster till the pace becomes most furious.<sup>76</sup> These animals therefore can only be caught at one particular time—that is when they lead out their little foals to the pastures in which they roam. They are then hemmed in on all sides by a vast number of hunters mounted on horseback, and being unwilling to escape while leaving their young to perish, stand their ground and fight, and by butting with their horns and kicking and biting kill many horses and men. But they are in the end taken, pierced to death with arrows and spears, for to take them alive is in no way possible. Their flesh being bitter<sup>77</sup> is unfit for food, and they are hunted merely for the sake of their horns and their huckle-bones.<sup>78</sup>

27. He states that there is bred in the

<sup>75</sup> That is, vermilion.

<sup>76</sup> This is what Bruce relates of the rhinoceros.—*Travels*, vol. V, pp. 97 and 105.

<sup>77</sup> Bruce says it has a disagreeable musky flavour.

<sup>78</sup> Cf. *Frag.* xxv, and the account of the unicorn in Kosmas Indikopl.; conf. also Aristotle, *de Part. An.* III, 2, and *Hist. Anim.* II, 1; and also Philostrat. *Vit. Apoll.* III, 2 and 3. Aelian's account in the above *Frag.* of the wild ass may be compared with his account of the *Kartazon*,—*Ind. Ant.*, vol. VI, p. 128.

Indian river a worm<sup>79</sup> like in appearance to that which is found in the fig, but seven cubits more or less in length, while its thickness is such that a boy ten years old could hardly clasp it within the circuit of his arms. These worms have two teeth—an upper and a lower, with which they seize and devour their prey. In the daytime they remain in the mud at the bottom of the river, but at night they come ashore, and should they fall in with any prey as a cow or a camel, they seize it with their teeth, and having dragged it to the river, there devour it. For catching this worm a large hook is employed, to which a kid or a lamb is fastened by chains of iron. The worm being landed, the captors hang up its carcase, and placing vessels underneath it leave it thus for thirty days. All this time oil drops from it, as much being got as would fill ten Attic *kotylai*. At the end of the thirty days they throw away the worm, and preserving the oil they take it to the king of the Indians, and to him alone, for no subject is allowed to get a drop of it. This oil [like fire] sets everything ablaze over which it is poured and it consumes not alone wood but even animals. The flames can be quenched only by throwing over them a great quantity of clay, and that of a thick consistency.<sup>80</sup>

<sup>79</sup> See § 1, and Frag. xxvi. <sup>80</sup> Cf. Frag. xxvi, where *Ælian* gives fuller particulars. A somewhat similar creature is mentioned by *Palladius* (*de Brachman*. 10) as belonging to the Ganges. He calls it the *Odontotyrannos*.

28. But again there are certain trees in India as tall as the cedar or the cypress, having leaves like those of the date palm, only somewhat broader, but having no shoots sprouting from the stems. They produce a flower like the male laurel, but no fruit. In the Indian language they are called *karpion*, but in Greek *μυρορῶδα* (unguent-roses<sup>51</sup>). These trees are scarce.

<sup>51</sup> Baehr thinks this may be the Chetak (*Pandanus odoratissima*), Kaida, or Kyura. Regarding the word *karpion* Dr. Caldwell in the Introduction to his *Dravidian Grammar* thus writes: 'The earliest Dravidian word in Greek of which we know the date is *κάρπιον*, Ktésias's name for cinnamon. Herodotus describes cinnamon as the *κάρφεια*, which we, after the Phœnicians, call *Κιννάμωμον*. Liddell and Scott say "this word bears a curious likeness to its Arabic name *kerfat*, *kirfah*." This resemblance must, I think, be accidental, seeing that Herodotus considered 'cinnamon' alone as a foreign word. The word mentioned by Ktésias seems however to have a real resemblance to the Arabic word and also to a Dravidian one. Ktesias describes an odorous oil produced from an Indian tree having flowers like the laurel, which the Greeks called *μυρορῶδα*, but which in India was called *κάρπιον*. From Ktésias's description (making allowance for its exaggerations) it is evident that cinnamon oil was meant, and in this opinion Wahlagrees. Uranius, a writer, quoted by Stephen of Byzantium, mentions *κέρπαθον* as one of the productions of the Abaseni, the Arabian Abyssinians, by which we are doubtless to understand, not so much the products of their country as the articles in which they traded. From the connexion in which it is found *κέρπαθον* would appear to be cinnamon, and we can scarcely err in identifying it with *kerfat* or more properly *kirfah*, one of the names which cinnamon has received in Arabia. Some Arabian scholars derive *kirfah* from *karafa* 'decortavit,' but Mr. Hassoun does not admit this derivation, and considers *kirfah* a foreign word. We are thus brought back to Ktésias's *κάρπιον*, or the Indian word which *κάρπιον* represented. As this is a word of which we know the antiquity, the supposition that the Greeks or the Indians borrowed it from the Arabs is quite inadmissible. What then is the Indian word Ktesias referred to? Not, as has been supposed, *kurundhu*, the Singhalese

There oozes from them an oil in drops, which are wiped off from the stem with wool, from which they are afterwards wrung out and received into alabaster boxes of stone. The oil is in colour of a faint red, and of a somewhat thick consistency. Its smell is the sweetest in all the world, and is said to diffuse itself to a distance of five stadia around. The privilege of possessing this perfume belongs only to the king and the members of the royal family. A present of it was sent by the king of the Indians to the king of the Persians, and Ktésias alleges that he saw it himself, and that it was of such an exquisite fragrance as he could not describe, and he knew nothing whereunto he could liken it.

29/ He states that the cheese and the wines of the Indians are the sweetest in the world, adding that he knew this from his own experience, since he had tasted both.

---

name for cinnamon derived from the Sanskrit *kurunṭa*, but the Tamil-Malayalam word *karuppu* or *kōrppu*, e. g. *karappa-(t)ailam*, Mal. oil of cinnamon. Other forms of this word are *karappu*, *karuva* and *karuvā*, the last of which is the most common form in modern Tamil. Rheede refers to this form of the word when he says that "in his time in Malabar oils in high medical estimation were made from both the root and the leaves of the *karua* or wild cinnamon of that country." There are two meanings of *karu* in Tamil-Malayalam, 'black,' and 'pungent', and the latter doubtless supplies us with the explanation of *karuppu* 'cinnamon'. . . . . I have little doubt that the Sanskrit *karpūra*, 'camphor,' is substantially the same as the Tamil-Malayalam *karuppu*, and Ktésias's *káπτιον*, seeing that it does not seem to have any root in Sanskrit and that camphor and cinnamon are nearly related. The camphor of commerce is from a cinnamon tree, the *camphora officinarum*.



30. There is a fountain<sup>32</sup> among the Indians of a square shape and of about five ells in circumference. The water lodges in a rock. The depth downward till you reach the water is three cubits and the depth of the water itself three *orguiái*. Herein the Indians of highest distinction bathe [both for purification and the averting of diseases] along with their wives and children; they throw themselves into the well foot foremost, and when they leap in the water casts them up again, and not only does it throw up human beings to the surface, but it casts out upon dry land any kind of animal, whether living or dead, and in fact anything else that is cast into it except iron and silver and gold and copper, which all sink to the bottom. The water is intensely cold and sweet to drink. It makes a loud bubbling noise like water boiling in a caldron. Its waters are a cure for leprosy, and scab.<sup>33</sup> In the Indian tongue it is called *Balladé*<sup>34</sup> and in Greek *ὀφελίμη* (*i. e.* useful).

31. On those Indian mountains where the Indian reed grows, there is a race of men whose number is not less than 30,000, and whose wives bear offspring only once in their whole lifetime. Their children have teeth of perfect

---

<sup>32</sup> Conf. frag. xxxvii.

<sup>33</sup> Conf. Frag. xxvii.

<sup>34</sup> *Balada* in Sank. means 'giving strength'; and is applied to a bullock, and a medical plant: *baladá* is the *Physalis flexuosa*.—ED.

whiteness, both the upper set and the under, and the hair both of their head and of their eyebrows is from their very infancy quite hoary, and this whether they be boys or girls. Indeed every man among them till he reaches his thirtieth year has all the hair on his body white, but from that time forward it begins to turn black, and by the time they are sixty, there is not a hair to be seen upon them but what is black. These people, both men and women alike, have eight fingers on each hand, and eight toes on each foot. They are a very warlike people, and five thousand of them armed with bows and spears follow the banners of the King of the Indians. Their ears, he says, are so large that they cover their arms as far as the elbows while at the same time they cover all the back and the one ear touches the other.<sup>85</sup>

32. There is in Ethiopia an animal called properly the *Krokottas*, but vulgarly the *Kynolykos*. It is of prodigious strength, and is said to imitate the human voice, and by night to call out men by their names, and when they come forth at their call, to *fall upon them* and devour them. This animal has the courage of the lion, the speed of the horse, and the strength of the bull, and cannot be encountered success-

---

<sup>85</sup> For an account of the various fabulous Indian races mentioned by the classical writers, and for their identification with the races mentioned in Sanskrit writings, see *Ind. Ant.*, vol. VI, pp. 133-135, and footnotes.

fully with weapons of steel.<sup>86</sup> In Eubœa about Chalkis the sheep have no gall,<sup>87</sup> and their flesh is so extremely bitter that dogs even will not eat it. They say also that in the parts beyond the Maurusian Straits<sup>88</sup> rain falls in the summer-time, while the same regions are in winter-time scorched with heat. In the country of the Kyônians<sup>89</sup> there is, according to his account, a certain fountain, which instead of water has springs of oil—this oil being used by the people in the neighbourhood for all kinds of food. In the region also called Metadrida there is another fountain, this being at no great distance from the sea. At midnight it swells with the utmost violence, and in receding casts forth fish upon dry land in such quantities that the people of the place cannot gather them, and are obliged to leave them lying rotting on the ground.<sup>90</sup>

33. Ktésias thus writing and romancing professes that his narrative is all perfect truth,

<sup>86</sup> Regarding the *Krokotta*, a sort of hyæna, vide Diodor. III, 34; Ælian, *Hist. Nat.* VII, 22; Pliny, *H. N.* VIII, 31; Porphy. *De Abstin.* III, p. 223. Conf. Hesych. s. h. voc.; Bruce's *Travels*, vol. V, p. 113.

<sup>87</sup> Conf. Theophr. *H. Plant.* IX, 18, and Arist. *Hist. An.* I, 27.

<sup>88</sup> *Μαυρουσίων πυλῶν*—understand of the Pillars of Hercules. We have Maurusios in Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* V, 2; Strabo, *Geog.* XVII, iii, 2.

<sup>89</sup> *Ἐν τῶν Κυωνίων χώρα* appears to be corrupt. We might suggest Cio in Mysia. The same thing is told of the fountain *ἐν Σικάνων χώρα* at the city *Κυρίστρατον* thus commonly for *Μυρίστρατον* (Antigon. *Mirab.* 154). Conf. also Aristot. *Mir. ausc.* c. 123.

<sup>90</sup> This section is found only in the MS. of Müniah and perhaps does not belong to Ktesias.

and, to assure us of this, asseverates that he has recorded nothing but what he either saw with his own eyes, or learned from the testimony of credible eye-witnesses. He adds moreover that he has left unnoticed many things far more marvellous than any he has related, lest any one who had not a previous knowledge of the facts might look upon him as an arrant story-teller.

The<sup>91</sup> Sêres<sup>92</sup> and the natives of Upper India are said to be men of huge stature, so that among them are found some who are 13 cubits in height and who also live till they are above 200 years old. There are besides somewhere in the river called the Gaitês<sup>93</sup> men of a brute-like appearance who have a hide like that of a rhinoceros being quite impervious to darts,<sup>94</sup> while in India itself in the central parts of an island of the ocean the inhabitants are said to have tails of extraordinary length such as satyrs are represented with in pictures.<sup>95</sup>

#### FRAG. II.

From Arrian, *Anab.* Book V. 4, 2.

And Ktésias (if any one considers him a competent authority) asserts that the distance from the one bank of the Indus to the other where the stream is narrowest is 40 stadia, and

<sup>91</sup> This fragment in the Munich MS. forms a part of the 15th Section of the text of Photios.

<sup>92</sup> Cf. Lucian *Macrob.* c. 5.

<sup>93</sup> Var. lect.—Gaitres.

<sup>94</sup> Cf. Ptolemy, *Geog.* VII, iii, where the same words are used.

<sup>95</sup> Cf. same chapter of same Book p. 178.

where it is widest, so much even as 100 stadia, though its breadth in general is the mean between these two extremes.

### FRAG. III.

Strabo, *Geog.* Book XV.

From this we can see how greatly the opinions of the others differ, Ktésias asserting that India is not less than all the rest of Asia, and Onesikritos that, &c.

From the *Indika* of Arrian, 30.

Ktésias the Knidian states that India is equal to the rest of Asia, but he is wrong.

### FRAG. IV.

Ælian, *De Nat. Anim.* Book XVII, 29.

When the King of the Indians goes on a campaign, one hundred thousand war-elephants go on before him, while three thousand more, that are of superior size and strength, march, I am told, behind him, these being trained to demolish the walls of the enemy. This they effect by rushing against them at the King's signal, and throwing them down by the overwhelming force with which they press their breasts against them. Ktésias reports this from hearsay, but adds that with his own eyes he had seen elephants tear up palm trees, roots and all, with like furious violence; and this they do whenever they are instigated to the act by their drivers.<sup>95</sup>

<sup>95</sup> Conf. Diodor. II., 17; Strabo. XV, I, 41 ff.; Curtius, VIII, 9, 17; Kosmos Indikopleustes, XI, p. 339.

## FRAG. V.

(A) Aristotle, *De Gener. Anim.* II, 2.

What Ktésias has said regarding the seed of the elephant is plainly false, for he asserts that when dry it turns hard so as to become like amber; and this it does not.<sup>97</sup>

(B) From the same, towards the end of the 3rd Book of his *History of Animals*.

What Ktésias has written regarding the seed of the elephant is false.

(C) Ælian, *De Animal.* XVI, 2.

Cocks [in India] are of immense size, and their crests are not red like the crests of our own cocks, but many-hued, like a floral garland; their rump feathers are neither curved nor wreathed, but broad, and these they trail after them in the way the peacock drags his tail when he does not make it stand erect. The feathers of the Indian cocks are partly golden, and partly of a gleaming azure like the smaragdus stone.<sup>98</sup>

## FRAG. VI.

(A) Ælian, *De Animal. Nat.* XVI, 31.

Ktésias in his account of India says that the people called the Kynamolgoi rear many dogs as big as the Hyrkanian breed, and this Knidian writer tells us also why they keep so many dogs, and this is the reason: From the time of the summer solstice on to mid-winter

<sup>97</sup> Ktésias, however, probably referred to the matter which issued from the orifice in the temples.

<sup>98</sup> A kind of pheasant is meant—the *Impeyanum Lophop.*

they are incessantly attacked by herds of wild oxen, coming like a swarm of bees or a flight of angry wasps, only that the oxen are more numerous by far. They are ferocious withal and proudly defiant, and butt most viciously with their horns. The Kynamolgoi, unable to withstand them otherwise, let loose their dogs upon them, which are bred for this express purpose, and these dogs easily overpower the oxen and worry them to death. Then come the masters, and appropriate to their own use such parts of the carcasses as they deem fit for food, but they set apart for their dogs all the rest, and gratitude prompts them to give this share cheerfully. During the season when they are left unmolested by the oxen, they employ their dogs in hunting other animals. They milk the bitches, and this is why they are called Kynamolgoi (dog-milkers). They drink this milk just as we drink that of the sheep or the goat.

(B) Polydeukês (Pollux), *Onomastic*. V, 5, 41, p. 497.

The Kynamolgoi are dogs living about the lakes in the south of India and subsisting upon cows' milk. They are attacked in the hot season by the oxen of India, but they fight these assailants and overcome them, as Ktésias relates.<sup>99</sup>

---

<sup>99</sup> Conf. Diod. III, 31; Megasthenes in Strabo, XV, 37; Plin. *Hist. Nat.* VII, 2; Curtius, IX, i. 31.

(B) *Ælian, De Animal. Nat.* IV, 32.

It is worth while learning what like are the cattle of the Indians. Their goats and their sheep are, from what I hear, bigger than the biggest asses, and they produce four young ones at a time, and never fewer than three. The tails of the sheep reach down to their feet, and the tails of the goats are so long that they almost touch the ground. The shepherds cut off the tails of those ewes that are good for breeding to let them be mounted by the rams, and these tails yield an oil which is squeezed out from their fat. They cut also the tails of the rams, and having extracted the fat, sew them up again so carefully that no trace of the incision is afterwards seen.

#### FRAG. VII.

Tzetzês, *Chil.* VII, v. 739, from the Third Book of the *Ἀραβικὸν* of Uranius.

If any one thinks that the size of the Arabian reeds has been exaggerated, who, asks Tzetzês, would believe what Ktêsias says of the Indian reeds—that they are two *orguiai* in breadth, and that a couple of cargo-boats could be made from a single joint of one of these reeds.<sup>100</sup>

#### FRAG. VIII.

Aristotle, *De Hist. Anim.* II, 1.

No animals of these species have a double row of teeth, though, if we are to believe

<sup>100</sup> Conf. Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* XVI, 36 : VII, 2 ; Theophrast. *Plant. Hist.* IX, 11 ; Herodot. III, 98 ; Strabo, XV, 21.



Ktêsias, there is one exception to the rule, for he asserts that the Indian beast called the Martikhora has a triple row of teeth in each of its jaws. He describes the animal as being equal in size to the lion, which it also resembles in its claws and in having shaggy hair, though its face and its ears are like those of a human being. Its eyes are blue and its hair is of the colour of cinnabar.<sup>101</sup> Its tail, which resembles that of the land scorpion, contains the sting, and is furnished with a growth of prickles which it has the power of discharging *like shafts shot from a bow*. Its voice is like the sound of the pipe and the trumpet blended together. It runs fast, being as nimble as a deer. It is very ferocious and has a great avidity for human flesh.

#### FRAG. IX.

Pausanias (*Boiôt.* IX. xxi. 4) quoting Ktêsias, thus describes the same animal.

The animal mentioned by Ktêsias in his *Indika*, called by the Indians the *Martikhora*, but by the Greeks, it is said, ἀνδροφάγον (man-eater) is, I am convinced, the tiger. It is described as having three rows of teeth in each of its jaws and as having stings at the end of its tail, wherewith it defends itself against its assailants whether fighting at close quarters or at a distance. In the latter case it shoots its stings clean away from its tail like shafts shot from a bow-string.

---

<sup>101</sup> i. e. vermilion.

[The Indians appear to me to have accepted this account, which is not true, through their excessive dread of this creature.]

## FRAG. X.

Pliny, *H. N.* VIII, 21 (al. 30.)

Ktésias states that the animal which he calls the *Martikhora* is found among these people [the Indians or rather the Aethiopians]. According to his description, it has a triple row of teeth, ranged together like the teeth of a comb; its face and its ears are like those of a human being, while its eyes are blue and its hair of a blood-red colour. It has the body of a lion and its tail is armed with stings, with which it smites like the scorpion. Its voice is like the commingled sound of the pipe and the trumpet. It runs very fast, and is very fond of human flesh.

## FRAG. XI.

From Ælian, *De Animal.* IV. 21; respecting the Indian *Martikhora*.

In India is found a wild animal called in the native tongue the *Martikhora*. . It is of great strength and ferocity, being about as big as a lion, of a red colour like cinnabar, and covered with shaggy hair like a dog. Its face, however, is not bestial, but resembles that of a human being. It has both in the upper and the lower jaw a double row of teeth which are extremely sharp at the points and larger than the canine.

Its ears in their conformation are like the human, but they are larger and covered with shaggy hair. Its eyes also are like the human, and of a blue colour. It has the feet and the claws of a lion, but its tail, which may be more than a cubit long, is not only furnished at the tip with a scorpion's sting but is armed on both sides with a row of stings. With the sting at the tip it smites any one who comes near it, and kills him therewith instantaneously, but if it is pursued it uses the side stings, discharging them like arrows against the pursuer, whom it can hit even though he be at a good distance off. When it fights, having the enemy in front, it bends the tail upward, but when, like the Sakians, it fights while retreating, it straightens it out to the fullest length. The stings, which are a foot long and as slender as a rush (or a fine thread), kill every animal they hit, with the exception of the elephant only. Ktésias says that he had been assured by the Indians that those stings that are expended in fighting are replaced by a growth of new ones as if to perpetuate this accursed plague. Its favourite food, according to the same author, is human flesh, and to satisfy this lust, it kills a great many men, caring not to spring from its ambush upon a solitary traveller, but rather upon a band of two or three for which it is singly more than a match. All the beasts of the forest yield to its prowess, save only the lion, which it is im-

potent to subdue. That it loves above all things to gorge itself with human flesh, is clearly shown by its name—for the Indian word *Martikhora* means *man-eater*—and it has its name from this particular habit. It runs with all the nimbleness of a deer. The Indians hunt the young ones before the stings appear on their tails, and break the tails themselves in pieces on the rocks to prevent stings growing upon them. Its voice has a most striking resemblance to the sound of a trumpet. Ktésias says that he had seen in Persia one of these animals, which had been sent from India as a gift to the Persian king. Such are the peculiarities of the *Martikhora* as described by Ktésias, and if any one thinks this Knidian writer a competent authority on such subjects, he must be content with the account which he has given.

#### FRAG. XII.

(A) Antigonos, *Mirab. Nar. Cong. Hist.* c. 182.

He says that Ktésias gives an account of an undying fire burning on Mount Chimaera in the country of the Phasélitai. Should the flame be cast into water, this but sets it into a greater blaze, and so if you wish to put it out you must cast some solid substance into it.

(B) Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* II, 106.

Mount Chimaera in Phasélis is volcanic, and burns night and day with a perpetual

flame.<sup>102</sup> According to Ktésias the Knidian, the fire is augmented by water, but extinguished by earth or hay.<sup>103</sup>

C. Ælian, *De Anim.* XVI. 37.

Among the Indian Psylloi (who are so called to distinguish them from the Libyan Psylloi) the horses are no bigger than rams, while the sheep look as small as lambs. The asses are likewise correspondingly small and so are the mules and the oxen, and in short all cattle of whatever kind.<sup>104</sup>

#### FRAG. XIII.

Ælian, *Nat. An.* IV, 26.

Hares and foxes are hunted by the Indians in the manner following. They do not require dogs for the purpose, but taking the young of eagles, of ravens and of kites, they rear and train them to pursue these animals by subjecting them to this course of instruction. Taking a pet hare and a tame fox, they fasten on to each a gobbet of flesh, and then making them run away, at the same time dismiss the birds to give them instant chase, and catch the alluring bait. The birds eagerly pursue, and catching up either the hare or the fox, pounce upon the flesh, with which they are allowed to glut their maw in recompense for their activity in having

<sup>102</sup> Conf. *Ind. Ant.*, vol. IX, p. 109, and Beaufort's *Travels*.

<sup>103</sup> *Fœno*, for which perhaps *fimo* should be read.

<sup>104</sup> See Frag. xv. From this it appears that Ktésias calls the same race both Psylli and Pygmies.

captured it. When they have thus become adepts in hunting, they are taken out to pursue mountain hares and wild foxes, when, on sighting the quarry, they at once give it chase in hope of earning the customary dainty, and having quickly caught it bring it to their masters, as Ktésias acquaints us. From the same source we further learn that the entrails of the quarry are given them instead of the goblets of flesh to which they had been formerly treated.

#### FRAG. XIV.

(A) *Ælian Nat. Anim.* IV, 27.

The *gryphon*, an Indian animal, is, so far as I can learn, four-footed like the lion and has claws of enormous strength closely resembling his. It is described as having feathers on its back, and these black, while the breast feathers are red and those of the wing white. According to Ktésias its neck is variegated with feathers of a bright blue; its beak is like an eagle's; and its head like the representations which artists give of it in paintings and sculptures. Its eyes are said to be fiery red, and it builds its nest upon the mountains, and, as it is impossible to catch these birds when full grown, they are caught when quite young. The *Baktrians* who are next neighbours to the *Indians* give out that these birds guard the gold found in the regions which they haunt, and that they dig it out of the ground and build

their nests with it, and that the Indians carry off as much of it as falls to the ground. The Indians however deny that the gryphons guard the gold, alleging, what I think is highly probable, that gold is a thing gryphons have no use for; but they admit that when these birds see them coming to gather the gold, they become alarmed for their young and attack the intruders. Nor do they resist man only, but beasts of whatever kind, gaining an easy victory over all except only the elephant and the lion, for which they are no match. The gryphons, then, being so formidable, the natives of these countries go not to gather gold in the day time, but set out under cover of night when they are least likely to be detected. Now the auriferous region which the gryphons inhabit is a frightful desert,<sup>105</sup> and those who make a raid upon the gold, select a moonless night, and set out armed, the expedition being a thousand or even two thousand strong. They take with them mattocks for digging the gold and sacks in which to carry it away. If they are unobserved by the gryphons they have a double share of good luck, for they not only escape with their lives but bear a freight of gold in triumph home, where, the metal having been purified by those who are skilful in smelting ores, they are recompensed with overflowing wealth for all the

---

<sup>105</sup> Perhaps the Desert of Cobi.

hazards of the enterprise. Should they on the other hand be detected in the act of theft, certain death would be their fate. I have learned by enquiry that they do not return home till after an absence of three or four years.<sup>106</sup>

#### FRAG. XV.

(A) Ælian, *Nat. An.* XVI, 37.

It is said that neither the wild nor the tame swine is found in India, and that the Indians so much abhor the flesh of this animal that they would as soon taste human flesh as taste pork.

(B) Ælian, *De Nat. Anim.* III, 4.

The following also are peculiarities in the nature of animals. The swine, according to Ktésias, whether wild or tame, is not found in India, and he somewhere states that Indian sheep have tails a cubit in breadth.

(C) Arist., *De Hist. Anim.* VIII, 28.

In India, as Ktésias, a writer not to be depended on, tells us, the swine is not found either wild or tame.

[The animals of that country however which are bloodless and those that lie in holes are all large.]

(D) Palladius, *De Brachman*, p. 5.

For the swine of the Thebâïd, on account of the excessive heat, is no longer found either in the parts of India or of Æthiopia.

---

<sup>106</sup> The same is related from Ælian by Philo, *De animall. propriett.* 2, pp. 15 seq.; conf. Herodot. III. 116; IV. 13, 27. Baehr has a very long note on the Gryphons.



(E) Pallad., *De Brach.*, p. 4.

It (India) has also palms and the largest of nuts, the Indian as well as the small nut which is aromatic.

(F) Antig. *Mirab. Nar.* 160.

Ktêsias, he says, informs us that in Æthiopia there is a fountain whose waters are red like cinnabar, and make those who drink them mad.

(G) From the work of Sôtiôn.

Ktêsias relates that in Æthiopia there is a fountain of water resembling cinnabar in colour which deprives those who drink it of their reason, so that they confess all the misdeeds which they have secretly committed.

(H) Pliny, XXXI, 2.

In drinking this water due moderation must be observed lest it make you mad like those persons who drink of that red fountain in Æthiopia whereof Ktêsias writes.

(I) Michael. Apostol. *Proverb*, XX, 6.<sup>107</sup>

*A swine among the roses*, a proverb applied by Kratês to the intractable and uneducated. Ktêsias asserts that the swine is not bred in India, either the wild or the tame kind, and he somewhere mentions that the sheep have tails a cubit in breadth.

#### FRAG. XVI.

Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* XVII, 2.

Onesikritus says that in those parts of India where no shadows are cast there are men who are 5 cubits and 2 palms in stature and who

---

<sup>107</sup> This is given as frag. 29 by Lion, but not by Müller.

live 130 years without becoming old, for if they die then they are cut off as it were in mid-life. Krates of Pergamus calls the Indians who live over a hundred years *Gymnetae*, but many writers call them *Makrobii*. *Ktésias* asserts that a tribe of them called *Pandaræ* inhabiting the valleys live for 200 years, and have in their youth white hair, which turns black when they grow old.

FRAG. XVII.

*Ælian, Nat. An. IV, 36.*

Writers on India inform us that that country produces many drugs, and is astonishingly prolific of those plants that yield them. Many of these drugs are medicinal and cure snake-bites, which are so dangerous to life, but others are deleterious and quickly destroy life. Among these may be reckoned the poison of a particular kind of serpent, one which to appearance is about a span long. Its colour is purple of the deepest dye, but not on the head, which so far from being purple, is extraordinarily white, whiter even than snow or than milk. It is found in those parts of India which are most scorched by the sun. It has no teeth, and does not at all incline to bite, and hence one would think it to be of a tame and gentle nature, but nevertheless, wherever it casts its vomit, be it upon the limb of a man or of a beast, nothing can prevent the whole of that limb from mortifying. It is sought after for the sake of this

poison, and is, when caught, suspended from a tree by the tail, so that the head may look downward to the ground. Below its mouth they place a casket made of brass, to receive the drops of poison as they fall. The matter thus discharged condenses and becomes a solid mass which might be mistaken for the gum which oozes from the almond-tree. When the snake is dead the vessel is replaced by another, which is also of brass, for the carcase then discharges a serous humour like water, which, after being allowed to stand for three days, takes also a solid form. The two masses differ from each other in colour, the one being jet-black and the other the colour of amber. If you take of the latter no more than what would equal the bulk of a sesame seed, and administer this to one either in his food or his drink, he is first of all seized with violent spasms, and his eyes in the next place become distorted, and his brain, forcing its way through his nostrils, runs out, when death ensues after a short but sharp agony. If a smaller dose is taken, death does not immediately ensue, but does so eventually. The black poison, again, which has oozed from the snake when dead, operates but slowly, for if one swallows the same bulk of it as of the other, it corrupts his blood and he falls into a consumption, of which he dies in a year's time. Many, however, survive for two years, dying inch by inch.

## FRAG. XVIII.

Ælian, *De Nat. An.* IV, 41.

There is a species of Indian bird of very diminutive size which may be thus described. It builds its nests on high and precipitous mountains, and is about as big as a partridge egg, and of a bright red colour like realgar. The Indians call it in their tongue *dikairon*, and the Greeks in theirs, as I am informed, *dikaion* (*i. e.* just). Its dung has a peculiar property, for if a quantity of it no bigger than a grain of millet be dissolved into a potion, it would be enough to kill a man by the fall of evening. But the death that comes thereby resembles a sleep, and is most pleasant withal and painless, being like that death which the poets are wont to call *lusimelês* (limb-relaxing) and *ablêkhros* (easy), for such a death is painless, and is therefore to those who wish to be rid of life, the sweetest of all deaths. The Indians accordingly spare no pains to procure this substance, which they regard as a genuine anodyne for all human ills. Hence it is included among the costly presents sent by the king of the Indians to the Persian king, by whom it is prized more than aught else, and who treasures it up as a sure defence in case of necessity against ills that are past all other remedy. No one in all Persia possesses it save only the king himself and the king's mother. Let us here then compare this Indian drug with the Egyptian

so as to determine which is superior. The Egyptian we saw, had the effect throughout the day it was taken of restraining and checking tears, whereas the Indian induced an unending oblivion of all ills. The former was the gift of a woman, and the latter the gift of a bird, or rather of Nature, which, through the agency of this bird, unfetters man from the sternest bondage. And the Indians, they say, are happy in the possession of this, since they can by its means whenever they please, escape from their prison-house here below.

## FRAG. XIX.

Apollonios (Dyskolos), *Hist. Mirab.* XVII.

Ktêsias says that in India is found a tree called the *parybon*. This draws to itself everything that comes near, as gold, silver, tin, copper and all other metals. Nay, it even attracts sparrows when they alight in its neighbourhood. Should it be of large size, it would attract even goats and sheep and similar animals.

## FRAG. XX.

Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* XXXVII, 2.

Ktêsias says that in India is a river, the Hypobarus, and that the meaning of its name is *the bearer of all good things*. It flows from the north into the Eastern Ocean near a mountain well-wooded with trees that produce amber. These trees are called *aphytacorae*, a name which means *luscious sweetness*.

## FRAG. XXI.

Tzetzés, *Chil.* VII, v, 714.

Ktêsias says that in India are the trees that produce amber, and the men called the Kynoképhaloi, who, according to his account, are very just men living by produce of the chase.

## FRAG. XXII.

Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* VII, 2.

On many mountains (of India) is found a race of men with heads like those of dogs, who are dressed with the skins of wild beasts, who bark instead of speaking, and who, being armed with claws, live by hunting and fowling. Ktêsias says that in his time the number of these men was 120,000.

## FRAG. XXIII.

Ælian, IV, 46.

Among the Indians are found certain insects about the size of beetles and of a colour so red that at first sight one might mistake them for cinnabar. Their legs are of extraordinary length and soft to the touch. They grow upon the trees which produce amber, and subsist upon their fruit. The Indians collect them for the sake of the purple dye, which they yield when crushed. This dye is used for tinting with purple not only their outer and their under-garments, but also any other substance where a purple hue is required. Robes tinted with this purple are sent to the Persian king, for the Indian purple is thought by the Persians to be marvellously beautiful and far

superior to their own. This we learn from Ktésias, who says well, for this dye is in fact deeper and more brilliant than the renowned Lydian purple.

In that part of India where the beetles (κανθάροι) are met with, live the Kynokephaloi, who are so called from their being like dogs in the shape of their head and in their general appearance. In other respects, however, they resemble mankind, and go about clad in the skins of wild beasts. They are moreover very just, and do no sort of injury to any man. They cannot speak, but utter a kind of howl. Notwithstanding this they comprehend the language of the Indians. They subsist upon wild animals, which their great fleetness of foot enables them to capture with the utmost ease. Having killed the prey they cut it into pieces, and roast it by the heat of the sun and not by fire. They keep goats however and sheep, whose milk supplies them with drink, as the chase with food. I have mentioned them among the brutes, and with good reason, for they do not possess articulate and intelligible speech like mankind.<sup>108</sup>

#### FRAG. XXIV.

Servius the Commentator on Virgil; *Æneid*, I, v, 653.

*Acantho*—i. e. with a flexible twig in imitation of which a robe is artificially adorned

<sup>108</sup> Herodotus mentions Kynokephaloi in Africa (IV, 192); conf. Diodor. III, 34; Augustine, *C. D.* XVI, 8; Aristot. *Hist. Anim.* 11, 8; Strabo, XVI, iv, 15; Philost. *Vit. Apollon.* VI, 1.

and wrought. Varius makes this statement. Ktésias says that there are trees in India which grow wool.

FRAG. XXV.

(A) *Ælian, Hist. An.* IV, 52.

I have ascertained by enquiry that wild asses are found in India as big as horses. The animal is entirely white, except about the head, which is of a reddish colour, while the eye gleams with azure. It has a horn upon its forehead about a cubit and a half long. This horn is white at the base, crimson at the tip, and jet black in the middle. These particoloured horns are used, I understand, as drinking cups by the Indians, not indeed by people of all ranks, but only by the magnates, who rim them at intervals with circlets of gold just as they would adorn with bracelets the arm of some beautiful statue. They say that whoever drinks out of this horn is protected against all incurable diseases, for he can neither be seized by convulsions nor by what is called the sacred disease (epilepsy),<sup>109</sup> and neither can he be cut off by poison; nay if before drinking from it he should have swallowed anything deleterious, he vomits this, and escapes scatheless from all ill effects, and while, as has been believed, all other asses, wherever found, and whether wild or tame, and even all solid-hoofed animals, have neither a huckle-bone (*ἀστρογάλος*) nor a gall in

---

<sup>109</sup> Cf. Herod. III, 33.



the liver, the Indian horned asses have according to Ktésias both a huckle-bone and a gall in the liver. The huckle-bones are said to be black, not only on the surface but all throughout as may be proved by breaking one to pieces. They are fleeter not only than other asses but even than horses and deer. On first starting they run leisurely, but they gradually strengthen their pace, and then to overtake them, is, to use a poetic expression, the unattainable (*τα ἀκίχθητα*).<sup>110</sup> When the dams have brought forth and begin to lead out their young ones to the pastures, the males are in close attendance, and guard their offspring with devoted care. They roam about in the most desolate tracts of the Indian plain, and when the hunters come to attack them, they relegate their foals, being as yet but young and tender, to graze in the rear, while in front they fight to defend them. Their mode of attack is to charge the horsemen, using the horn as the weapon of assault, and this is so powerful, that nothing can withstand the blow it gives, but yields and snaps in two, or is perhaps shattered to pieces and spoiled for further use. They sometimes even fall upon the horses, and so cruelly rip up their sides with the horn that their very entrails gush out. The riders, it may well be imagined, dread to encounter them at close quarters, since the penalty of approach-

---

<sup>110</sup> Used by Homer.

ing them is a miserable death both to man and horse. And not only do they butt, but they also kick most viciously and bite; and their bite is much to be dreaded, for they tear away all the flesh they grasp with their teeth. It is accordingly impossible to take them alive if they be full-grown; and hence they must be despatched with such missiles as the spear or the arrow. This done, the Indians despoil them of their horns, which they ornament in the manner already described. The flesh is so very bitter that the Indians cannot use it for food.<sup>111</sup>

(B) *Ælian*, III, 41.

India, he says, produces unicorn horses and breeds likewise unicorn asses. Drinking cups are made from these horns. Should one who plots against another's life put a deadly poison into these cups no harm is done to the man who drinks therefrom. The horn of the horse and the ass, it would appear, is an antidote against evil.

FRAG. XXVI.

*Ælian*, *Nat. An.* V, 3.

The river Indus has no living creature in it except, they say, the *Skôlêx*, a kind of worm which to appearance is very like the worms that are generated and nurtured in trees. It differs however in size, being in general seven cubits in length and of such a thickness that a child of

---

<sup>111</sup> Conf. *Ælian* III, 41; XVI, 20; *Aristot. De partt. Anim.* III, 2; *Philostrat. Vit. Apoll.* III, 2.

ten could scarcely clasp it round in his arms. It has a single tooth in each of its jaws, quadrangular in shape and above four feet long. These teeth are so strong that they tear in pieces with ease whatever they clutch, be it a stone or be it a beast, whether wild or tame. In the daytime these worms remain hidden at the bottom of the river, wallowing with delight in its mud and sediment, but by night they come ashore in search of prey, and whatever animal they pounce upon—horse, cow, or ass, they drag down to the bottom of the river, where they devour it limb by limb, all except the entrails. Should they be pressed by hunger they come ashore even in the daytime, and should a camel then or a cow come to the brink of the river to quench its thirst, they creep stealthily up to it, and having with a violent spring secured their victim by fastening their fangs in its upper lip, they drag it by sheer force into the water, where they make a sumptuous repast of it. The hide of the *skólér* is two finger-breadths thick. The natives have devised the following method for catching it. To a hook of great strength and thickness they attach an iron chain, which they bind with a rope made of a broad piece of white cotton. Then they wrap wool round the hook and the rope, to prevent them being gnawed through by the worm, and having baited the hook with a kid, the line is thereupon lowered into the stream. As many as thirty men, each of whom

is equipped with a sword and a spear fitted with a thong, hold on to the rope, having also stout cudgels of cornel lying ready to hand, in case it should be necessary to fell the monster with blows. As soon as it is hooked and swallows the bait, it is hauled ashore and despatched by the fishermen, who suspend its carcase till it has been exposed for 30 days to the heat of the sun. An oil all this time oozes out from it, and falls by drops into earthen vessels. A single worm yields ten *kotulai* (about five pints). The vessels having been sealed up, the oil is despatched to the king of the Indians, for no one else is allowed to have so much as one drop of it. The rest of the carcase is useless. Now this oil possesses this singular virtue, that if you wish to burn to ashes a pile of any kind of wood, you have only to pour upon it half a pint of the oil, and it ignites without your applying a spark of fire to kindle it, while if it is a man or a beast you want to burn, you pour out the oil, and in an instant the victim is consumed. By means of this oil also the king of the Indians, it is said, captures hostile cities without the help of rams or testudos or other siege apparatus, for he has merely to set them on fire with the oil, and they fall into his hands. How he proceeds is this. Having filled with the oil a certain number of earthen vessels which hold each about half a pint, he closes up their mouths, and aims them at the uppermost parts of the gates ;

and if they strike there and break, the oil runs down the woodwork, wrapping it in flames which cannot be put out, but with insatiable fury burn the enemy, arms and all. The only way to smother and extinguish this fire is to cast rubbish into it. This account is given by Ktésias the Knidian.

#### FRAG. XXVII.

(A) From Antigonos, *Mirab. Nar. Cong. Hist.* 165.

It is said that Ktésias mentions certain lakes in India, one of which, like the lakes in Sicily and Media made everything that was cast into it sink down [float] except gold, copper, and iron. Moreover, should anything fall into it aslant, it is thrown up standing erect. It is said to cure the disease called the white leprosy. Another lake at certain seasons yields an oil which is found floating on the surface.

(B) From Sôtión in scattered passages where he relates marvels about rivers, fountains and lakes.

There is a fountain in India which throws out upon its banks as if shot from an engine those who dive into its waters, as Ktésias relates.<sup>112</sup>

(C) Strabo, *Geog.* XVI, 4.

Ktésias the Knidian mentions a fountain which discharges into the sea water of a red colour and full of minium (red-lead).

#### FRAG. XXVIII.

Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* XXXI, 2.

Ktésias records that in India is a pool of

---

<sup>112</sup> Conf. Aristot. *Mir. Ausc.* c. 122; Plin. *Hist. Nat.* II, 103.

water called Side<sup>113</sup> in which nothing will float, but everything sinks to the bottom.

FRAG. XXIX.

(A) Antigonos, *Mirab. Nar. Cong. Hist.* c. 182.

Ktésias mentions the water which falls from a rock in Armenia, and which casts out black fish which cause the death of the eater.

(B) Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* XXXI, 2.

Ktésias writes that in Armenia there is a fountain with black fish which, if taken as food, produce instantaneous death, and I heard the same said of the Danube, that where it rises, the same kind of black fish is found in it till you come to a fountain adjoining its channel, and that this fountain is therefore commonly believed to be the head of the river. They tell the same thing of the Nymph's pool in Lydia.

FRAG. XXX.

(A) Tzetzês, *Chil.* VII, v, 638.

This Skylax (of Karyanda) writes other such stories by the myriads, stories of one-eyed men, and of men that sleep in their ears, and thousands of other wonderful creatures, all which he speaks of as really existing, and not fictitious; but for my part, as I have never met with any of them, I do not believe in them, although there are multitudes, such as Ktésias, Iamboulos,

<sup>113</sup> Isidor. *Orig.* xiii, 13; Conf. Antigon. c. 161; Diodorus, II, 36, 7; Arrian, *Ind.* c. 6; Strabo, XV, i, 38; and *Ind. Ant.* vol. V, pp. 333, 334, and vol. VI, pp. 121, 130.

Hésigonos, Rhêginos, who not only believe that these, but that still greater monstrosities, are to be found in the world.

(B) Pliny, *Hist. Nat.* VII, 2.

And he affirms that there is a tribe of Indians whose women bear offspring once only in their lifetime, and whose hair turns white in the very childhood. He mentions also a race of men called Monosceli (one-legged), who, though they had but a single leg, could hop upon it with wonderful agility, and that they were also called Sciopodæ, because that when they lay on their back in very hot weather, they shaded themselves from the sun with their feet. They lived not very far from the Troglodytes (cave-dwellers). To the west of these, he adds, lived men without a neck, and who had their eyes placed in their shoulders.

(C) From the same.

According to Ktésias the Indian people which is called Pandore and occupies the valleys, live for 200 years, and have in early youth hoary hair which turns black as they become old. There is a people on the other hand whose life-time does not exceed forty years. They are next neighbours to the Makrobii, and their women produce offspring once only. Agatharchidés asserts the same, and adds that they live upon locusts and are fleet of foot. [To these Klitarchus gave the name of Mandi, and Megasthenés reckons the number of their

villages at 300. Their women bear children when they are seven years old, and they are in their old age at forty.]

FRAG. XXXI.

Gellius, *Noct. Attic.* IX. c. 4.

When we were returning from Greece into Italy, and had made our way to Brundisium, and having disembarked, were walking about in that famous seaport which Ennius, using a somewhat far-fetched but sufficiently well-known word, called the fortunate (*praepes*), we saw a number of bundles of books lying exposed for sale. I lost not a moment, but pounced with the utmost avidity upon these books. Now, they were all in Greek and full of wonders and fables—containing relations of things unheard of and incredible, but written by authors of no small authority—Aristeas of Proconnêsos and Isigonos of Nicaea, and Ktâsias, and Onêsikritos and Polystephanos and Hegesias. The volumes themselves however were musty with accumulated mould, and their whole condition and appearance showed that they were going fast to decay. I went up to the stall however, and enquired the prices, and being induced by the wonderful and unexpected cheapness, I bought a great lot of the books for a few coppers; and occupied myself for the next two days in glancing over the contents. As I read I made some extracts, noting the wonderful stories which none of our writers



have as yet aimed at composing, and interspersing them with these comments of my own, so that whoever reads these books may not be found quite a novice in stories of the sort like one who has never even heard of them before. [Gellius now goes on to record many particulars regarding the Skythians, Ariasprians, Sauromatae and others of whom Pliny has written at length in his *Natural History*. These particulars have been evidently extracted from the *Indika* of Ktésias and are here subjoined] :—"On the mountains of India are men who have the heads of dogs, and bark, and who live by hunting and fowling. There are besides in the remotest regions of the East other strange creatures—men who are called Monocoli (one-legged), who run hopping upon their one leg with wonderful agility; others who have no necks but have eyes in their shoulders." All unbounded however is his astonishment on his learning from these writers about a race of men in the uttermost parts of India having shaggy bodies and plumage like that of birds, who live not upon food, but on the perfume of flowers inhaled through the nostrils. Not far from these live the Pygmies, the tallest of whom do not exceed  $2\frac{1}{4}$  feet. The books contained these and many similar absurd stories, and as we perused them we felt how wearisome a task it is to read worthless books which conduce neither to adorn nor to improve life.

## FRAG. XXXII.

Frag. IV. From Athénaïos, lib. X. [c. 9.]<sup>114</sup>

Ktésias says that in India the king is not allowed to make himself drunk, but that the Persian king is allowed to do so on one particular day—that on which sacrifice is offered to Mithras.

## FRAG. XXXIII.

Tzetzés, *Chil.* VIII, v, 987.<sup>115</sup>

Herodotus, Diodôros, Ktésias and all others agree that the Happy Arabia, like the Indian land, is most odoriferous, exhales a spicy fragrance, so that the very soil of the former, and the stones of the latter, if cut, emit a delicious perfume, while the people there, when made languid and faint by the rich odours, recover from the stupor by inhaling the smoke of certain bones and horns and strong-smelling substances.

## FRAG. XXXV.

Lucian, *Ver. Hist.* I, 3.<sup>116</sup>

Ktésias the son of Ktésiokhos, the Knidian, wrote about India and its inhabitants what he neither himself saw nor heard from the report of others.

## FRAG. XXXVI.

Strabo, *Geog.* I. 2.<sup>117</sup>

Theopompos professes in express terms that in his history he will tell fables better than such as have been related by Herodotus, and Ktésias and Hellanikos and those who wrote about India.

<sup>114</sup> Müller places this as frag. 55 of the *Persica*.<sup>115</sup> Müller places this among the fragments of the *Periplus* or *Periegesis*.<sup>116</sup> This belongs to the life of Ktésias; conf. Müller, p. 8.<sup>117</sup> This is Lion's 49th frag., but can hardly be regarded as one.

LASSEN'S REVIEW  
OF THE REPORTS OF KTĒSIAS  
CONCERNING INDIA.<sup>1</sup>

In proceeding to examine the reports concerning Indian matters which yet survive from the work of Ktesias, I call to mind what I previously remarked, that on account of the unsatisfactory state in which we possess the fragments, as well as on account of the predilection of the author for the marvellous, it is difficult to separate what is exaggerated from what is true, and to give a satisfactory explanation of his statements, while further, I have shown in several examples that his descriptions, as far as they have been examined, have been found to be true in material points, though they cannot be absolved from the reproach that the facts have been purposely disfigured by being magnified. In judging of his work, two especial points are to be taken into account. The first is, that he resided at the Court of Artaxerxēs Mnēmôn as his physician, and thereby enjoyed the best opportunity of questioning the Persians about all the information they had acquired regarding India. He could question even Indians themselves about their native country, because he testifies that he had seen such men, these being white, *i.e.* Aryans.<sup>2</sup> The second is that the extract from his work was made by a Byzantine of far later date, the Patriarch Photius, who

<sup>1</sup> Translated from his *Ind. Alterthum.* vol. II, pp. 641 ff. 2nd edition, 1874.

<sup>2</sup> Ktesiae, *Fragm.* ed. C. Müller, p. 81a.

lived about the middle of the ninth century of our æra, and who had such a predilection for the wonderful and did the work so negligently, that it can offer no suitable scale whereby to measure the true value of the original. Most of the quotations, besides, concern the fabulous Indian races and the wonderful products of the country. Regarding several of his statements the advancing knowledge of Indian archæology has sufficed to show that they had not been invented by the author, but that they originated in fictions current among the Indians. Accordingly, the accusations of mendacity heaped upon him by the ancients, with reference to his book on India, have been generally withdrawn; but it would be going too far to absolve him entirely from lying, although in most cases his corruptions of the truth originate in his desire to tell unheard of stories.

He composed his work, which consisted of one book, after his return to his own country in the year 398 B.C.,<sup>3</sup> but how long afterwards cannot be determined. He did not consult Herodotus or any other of his predecessors. Whether his coincidence with Skylax about the fabulous peoples is a plagiarism is dubious.<sup>4</sup> Besides what I shall presently have to say about his Indian reports, it will suffice to mention only what is of essential importance, as it would be unsuitable in this place to enter into detailed researches on as yet unexplainable reports, while, as regards the fabulous nations, it will suffice to point out their Indian origin.

---

<sup>3</sup> Müller, p. 16.

<sup>4</sup> Schwanbeck's *Megasth. Ind.*, p. 8.

According to Ktésias, India was not smaller than all the rest of Asia<sup>5</sup>—which is a palpable exaggeration. Like Herodotus he considered the Indians to be the greatest of nations and the outermost, beyond whom there lived no other.<sup>6</sup> Of the Indian rivers he knows strictly speaking only the Indus, for it must remain undecided whether the Hypankhos be the Ganges.<sup>7</sup> As the Persians had obtained exact information only of the Indus region, we must expect to find that his more accurate communications have reference to that region exclusively. Of the former river he assumed the breadth where it was smallest at forty, and where it was widest at one hundred stadia, while in most parts it was a mean between these two extremes.<sup>8</sup> These figures are, however, without doubt excessive, but one need not be surprised thereat, since at that time no measurement had been made. On the other hand it is correctly stated that it flows through the mountains as well as through the plains.<sup>9</sup> Of the Indian sea Ktésias had learned that it is larger than the Grecian, but it must be considered as an invention that to the depth of four finger breadths, the surface is so hot that fish on that account do not approach it, but live in the deep below.

It must also be ascribed to fiction that in India the sun appears ten times larger than in other countries, and that the heat there is so powerful that it suffocates many persons; that there are neither storms nor rain in India, but that the

<sup>5</sup> Frag. iii.

<sup>6</sup> Frag. i, 1, 2.

<sup>7</sup> Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol. II, p. 563.

<sup>8</sup> Frag. ii and i, 1.

<sup>9</sup> Frag. i. 6.

country is watered by the river; there are on the other hand violent hurricanes which carry away everything that stands in their course.<sup>10</sup> The last remark may be considered as correct, but the assertion that India has no rain is on the contrary false, for it is known to possess regular rainy seasons, whereby the soil is watered. The Indus region is inundated by the river only in the Delta and, to a slight extent, in the upper country, while in the north under the mountains it has heavy rains, and lower down is not unvisited by slight showers. On the other hand, it is correctly remarked that in most parts of India the sun at his rising brings coolness, while during the rest of the day he causes vehement heat.<sup>11</sup>

His statements about the precious stones have already been elucidated.<sup>12</sup> Concerning the iron taken from the bottom of a well, of which iron swords were manufactured possessing the property of turning off hail, clouds and lightning, I have already remarked that they were probably lightning conductors. As to the method of obtaining it there is no information, but there is somehow gold was obtained.<sup>13</sup> Every year a spring filled itself with fluid gold which was drawn from it in one hundred earthen pitchers. It was necessary that they should be of clay, because the gold afterwards congealed, and the pitchers had to be broken in order to get it out. The spring was quadrangular, eleven ells in circumference, and about two yards deep. Each pitcher contained one talent of gold. The sense of this passage can only be that

<sup>10</sup> Frag. i, 2, 5, 8.

<sup>12</sup> Frag. i, 5 and 2.

<sup>11</sup> Frag. i, 8.

<sup>13</sup> Frag. i, 4.

auriferous ores were melted, and that the gold obtained from them was drawn out in a fluid state. That there was a spring, must be a misapprehension, and we must imagine instead that there was a cistern prepared to receive the gold. As a pitcher need not be very large to contain one talent (which is only somewhat more than fifty-three pounds) of gold, this particular may be considered as correct, but no stress need be placed on the statement that this operation was repeated every year. If this supposition is right, it follows that the Indians knew how to extract gold from the ore by melting.

Of the gold it is said also, that it is not obtained from rivers by washing, (which, however, is a mistake), but that it was met with on mountains that stretched far away, and was there guarded by griffins.<sup>14</sup> This, as has already been remarked, is the fiction which had reached the ears of Ktésias, whereas according to the account given by others it was dug out of the ground by the ants. Of silver-mines, it is said that there are many of them, although not as deep as those in Baktriana. This agrees with the reality, because in India silver mines seem to occur only in Udayapura in Ajmir: on the other hand Badakshan, in the upper Oxus valley, is rich in silver.<sup>15</sup> His report would accordingly refer to a more eastern country than the Indus region.

On the seal-ring, *Pantarba*, which is said to have had the property when thrown into the water of attracting other seal-rings and precious stones, so

<sup>14</sup> Frag. i. 12.

<sup>15</sup> Yule's *Marco Polo*, vol. I, p. 166; *Cathay*, p. 595.

that they became connected with each other, the remark may suffice that an altogether satisfactory solution of this story does not seem to have been found.<sup>16</sup> It must also be left undecided what we are to understand by the *elektron* (amber) which during thirty days of the year exuded like sweat from the trees on the mountains into the river *Hyparkhos*, and which turned hard in its waters.<sup>17</sup> Of this much only can we be certain, that it was a gum exuding from trees, of which there are several kinds in India, especially towards the east—the likeliest quarter wherein to seek for this river.

The mention of this tree leads us to the reports concerning Indian plants, and the products of the vegetable kingdom. The trees producing the oil called *Karpion* have been already treated of.<sup>18</sup> Of the Indian palms it is said that their fruits, which are called nuts, are three times as large as the Babylonian.<sup>19</sup> It is evident that it was some other than the date-palm, and was no doubt the cocoa-palm, which has a nut of the size indicated.

Of the Indian reed *Ktêsias* has reported that it grows in the mountain regions on the Indus, and is so thick that two men with outstretched hands cannot span it round, and that it is as high as the mast of a large ship.<sup>20</sup> This report agrees with that of Herodotus, only that it gives a more exact description, which may be considered as true, since the bamboo can grow to the height of sixty feet,

---

<sup>16</sup> Frag. ii. and note.

<sup>17</sup> Frag. i. 15, and note.

<sup>18</sup> Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. II, p. 564.

<sup>19</sup> Frag. i, 13, and xv.

<sup>20</sup> Frag. i, 6, and vii.



and may be two feet in diameter. Ktésias was the first who brought to notice that there are male and female reeds; that the latter only had a pith, and the former none; and that the former were more strong and compact, and the latter broader. He mentions also the fact that small boats were made of them, which could hold not more than three men, provided, as is probable, this statement really does belong to him.<sup>21</sup>

The expression, *garments produced by trees*, can only mean cotton garments.<sup>22</sup> Ktésias has without doubt stated that the Indians from preference use oil of sesame, and it can only be the fault of the author of the extract if the use of this oil, together with that of the oil expressed from nuts, is ascribed to the pygmies.<sup>23</sup> His other statements with regard to the obtaining of oils are evidently fictions.<sup>24</sup> Among these products of the exuberant fancy of the Indians, there may here be appropriately mentioned the story that those living near the Indus obtained a kind of oil from the worms living in that river, said to have possessed the property of setting everything on fire. Some have supposed from this that the ancient Indians were acquainted with fire-arms,<sup>25</sup> but the report must on the contrary be used to show that poetical ideas peculiar to the Indians had already in the time of Ktésias become known to the Persians. There can scarcely be a doubt that the report of Ktésias now in question is the corruption of the ancient Indian idea that the possession of

---

<sup>21</sup> Plin. *Hist. Nat.* XVII, 3.

<sup>22</sup> Frag. i, 22, and xxiv.

<sup>23</sup> Frag. i, 11.

<sup>24</sup> Frag. i, 11, and xxvii, &c.

<sup>25</sup> P. von Bohlen, *Altes Indien*, vol. II, p. 64.

supernatural arms, which they might at times entrust to mortals, was one of the special prerogatives of the gods.<sup>26</sup> The worship of snakes was particularly current in the north-western frontier countries,<sup>27</sup> to which the report of Ktésias regarding the oil specially relates. It will accordingly be a fire-weapon lent to man by one of the serpent-gods then worshipped, but which was represented to Ktésias as one that really existed.

For the sake of continuity of subject, I have anticipated what is to be remarked about the reports of Ktésias concerning Indian animals. Of the products of the vegetable kingdom he had mentioned a *very sweet wine*,<sup>28</sup> by which expression probably must be understood only an intoxicating liquor prepared from sugar and palm-juice, since we know that grapes do not grow in India. Lastly, according to our author, there existed also a tree *Parēbos*, or *Parybos*, which was found only in the gardens of the king, the root whereof attracted everything to itself, such as metals, and birds also, and sheep; birds for the most part being caught by it. The root served also as a medicine against bowel disorders.<sup>29</sup> With this conception may be suitably compared that of divining-rods, by the aid whereof metals were sought to be discovered. What Indian tree is meant is not certain.

Whoever is aware of the great vegetable riches of India cannot fail to remark that the reports of Ktésias concerning them are extremely scanty.

---

<sup>26</sup> Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol. I, p. 674, n. 1.

<sup>27</sup> Lassen, vol. II, p. 468.

<sup>28</sup> Frag. i, 29.

<sup>29</sup> Frag. i, 18, and xix.

Possibly the reason for this defect may be partly that the regions best known to the Persians, and consequently to him, are less rich in vegetable products than those of inner India, but the principal reason is to be sought in the negligence and incompleteness of the whole extract, wherein the various subjects follow each other without a proper connexion, as well as in the circumstance that quotations from his book are by accident pretty copious on some subjects and not on others. Thus the extracts are meagre which describe ordinary things, whereas about the extraordinary, much richer extracts have come down to us. Accordingly we cannot absolve the classic writers who have preserved for us passages from the work of Ktésias from the reproach of having selected precisely those that relate what is extraordinary and wonderful.

This reproach attaches also to his statements about Indian animals—some of those most valued and praised by the Indians, as cows and lions, are not even mentioned in the extracts, but on the contrary those only that are extraordinary and fictitious. It can scarcely be denied that Ktésias treated of the former. About other animals he had been misinformed. The knowledge of the Indian animal kingdom which was communicated by him to his countrymen is doubly significant for the history of zoology. Firstly, it is certain that Aristotle, the founder of this science, had made use of his reports about Indian animals, and his book therefore contributed, though but slightly, to the materials whereon that eminent genius founded his observations. Secondly, through him several

Indian animals first became known to the Greeks, and he has therefore co-operated so far to propagate zoological knowledge among his countrymen. To represent this addition to science is the business of zoology; for a history of Greek knowledge about India it is sufficient to enumerate the animals which he has mentioned—an exception being allowable only when an animal through some real or imaginary peculiarity appears pre-eminent over others, or when the form of the representation is characteristic of the way the author views things.

Concerning the animal most remarkable to foreigners on account of its size, docility and multifarious uses, the elephant I mean, he had been misled by the Persians into making the exaggerated statement that in war the king of the Indians was preceded by one hundred thousand of them, whilst three thousand of the strongest and most valiant followed him.<sup>30</sup> It can just as little be true that these animals were used to demolish the walls of hostile towns. On the other hand, he truthfully reports what he had seen with his own eyes, that in Babylon, elephants pulled up palm-trees, roots and all. He is the first Greek who mentioned the peculiarity of the female elephants that when they were in heat a strongly smelling fluid issued out from an orifice in their temples.<sup>31</sup> Of the parrots he remarked with charming simplicity that they spoke Indian, but also spoke Greek if they had been taught to do so. The

---

<sup>30</sup> Frag. i, 3, iv, and v.

<sup>31</sup> Frag. i, 3, and v.

Indian name of the jackal he was the first to communicate to the Greeks under the form, *Krokottos*, and it follows from what he says, as well as from the fables current about this animal, that the *Æthiopian* kind cannot be meant.<sup>32</sup> The qualities attributed to it, such as that it imitates the human voice, has the strength of the lion, and the swiftness of the horse, show that the jackal already at that time played a prominent part in animal fables, and that such were generally current in India, if there were any need of such an argument.

Of the four yet remaining animals, two must be considered as real, though it is not easy to identify them. The other two have on the contrary been invented but not by the Indians themselves. The wild ass was specially distinguished by his horn, because, of the horns cups were manufactured which protected those who drank out of them from certain kinds of diseases and from poison.<sup>33</sup> He was further distinguished from solid-hoofed animals by the gall on his liver and by his ankle-bone. The first mark suits the rhinoceros, as it possesses a large gall bladder, but not the second, because all quadrupeds have ankle-bones. This, however, may only be an error of the author, though one that is surprising since he was a physician and had himself seen such ankle-bones. According to him, they were red, which is likewise false. The great strength attributed to the animal points to the rhinoceros, but not the great swiftness. At the same time the name, *kartazonon*, does

---

<sup>32</sup> Schwanbeck, *Megasth. Ind.* p. 3. The Greek is a form of *kottháraka* from *kroshṭuka*, a jackal.

<sup>33</sup> Frag. i, 25, 26, and xxv.

not furnish us with any certain means of identification. The explanation of this word from new Persian is not tenable—we might rather think that Ktêsias had altered the Indian name of the rhinoceros, *Kadga* (which can be easily changed to *Kharga*) to *Karta*, in order to assimilate the sound to that of Greek words whose significations are very suitable to the animal.<sup>34</sup>

By piecing these remarks together it would appear most probable that by the wild ass is to be understood the rhinoceros, because there is no other Indian animal which the description suits better. If Ktêsias attributes to it a red head and a white body, whilst its colour is really grey-brown, he had perhaps been so informed. With reference to this so-called Indian unicorn, and also to the two fabulous animals, the griffin and the martikhoras, I have already remarked, that it is incorrect either to recognize them in the wonderful animals of Persepolis, or to attribute to them a Baktro-Indian origin. In opposing this view, I have shown that the similarity of the sculptured animals to those described by Ktêsias is only general—that in both cases the animals have been composed from parts of such as were real, and further that an ethico-religious symbolism through miraculous animals was unknown to the Indians. The conjecture there thrown out that the old Persian miraculous animals are of Babylonian-Assyrian origin, have been confirmed by the recent discoveries at Nineveh.

About the bird, *Dikairos*, which was not larger

---

<sup>34</sup> *καρτα* strong, and ζῷον animal.

than the egg of a partridge, the dung of which was dug up, and first produced sleep and afterwards death,<sup>35</sup> I can say nothing more satisfactory than others. That it is not fictitious appears from the fact that the King of India had sent some of it to the King of Persia, who preserved it as something very precious, because it was a remedy against incurable diseases. That opium, as has been suggested, cannot be meant by it, is certain, since the cultivation of that drug was introduced much later into India. It would be futile to try to explain the name because it is explained by the word *just*, and has been altered to assimilate its sound to that of a Greek word.

If the *griffins* have been indicated as Indian animals,<sup>36</sup> there is no confirmation of this discoverable in the Indian writings—and so the griffins must be classed along with the Issedonians,<sup>37</sup> the Arimaspians, and other fictions of the more northern peoples, which had found admission also among the Persians, where they survived till later. Just as foreign to the Indians is the *Martikhoras*, whose name is correctly explained as *the man-eater*,<sup>38</sup> but in old Iranian, because *Martija-qdra* has this meaning, but the second part is foreign to the Indian language. If Ktésias has reported that he had seen such an animal with the Persian King to whom it had been presented by the Indian king, he cannot in this instance be acquitted of mendacity.

---

<sup>35</sup> Frag. i, 17, and xviii; the name is also written *Dikeros*.

<sup>36</sup> Frag. i, 12, and xiv.

<sup>37</sup> Lassen, *Ind. Alt.*, vol. II, p. 609.

<sup>38</sup> Frag. i, 7, and viii—xi; Herodot. III, 116; IV, 13, 27.

Since he has specified a pretty large number of Indian animals without exhausting the list, and has also described some of them minutely, if we may judge from the details which have been preserved, we may conclude that he had also treated at large of the manners and customs of the Indians. From this portion of the work which, had it been preserved, would have interested us most of all, we cannot expect to have learned anything about those subjects which we do not already know, but light would have been thrown upon the communications which had at that time reached the Persians from India, and upon the nature of the ideas they had conceived regarding the inhabitants of India. But unfortunately we possess only very scanty extracts on such topics, while, on the other hand, there are tolerably complete repetitions of his reports of fabulous peoples.

Of the Indians he correctly asserted that they had their black colour not from the sun, but from nature.<sup>39</sup> As a proof he adduced the fact that he had with his own eyes seen white Indians, viz. two women and five men. He mentioned their great justice, their laws and customs, their love for their sovereigns, and their scorn of death. Nothing shows so plainly how little the way in which the extracts have been made is to be relied on, as the omission of these very subjects, with the exception of four of the less important usages. The first is that the Indians went on pilgrimage to a holy place distant fifteen days from the Sard mountains, situated in an uninhabited region where

---

<sup>39</sup> Frag. i, 9.



they worshipped the sun and the moon. During the festival the sun is said to have afforded them coolness for thirty-five days, so that they might be able to perform all the rites and return to their homes unscorched by his heat. There can be no doubt as to where this place lay. It was among the Vindhya's, one of whose off-shoots are the Sardinian mountains. It is self-evident that this can only have been an isolated worship of the two luminaries,<sup>40</sup> probably by a barbarous tribe, to which also the legend of the cooling down of the temperature may have belonged.

The second custom mentioned is connected with the idea formed by Ktésias of the bodily constitution of the Indians. They attained an age of 130 or 140 years, and the oldest of 200. None of them suffered from headache, eye diseases, toothache, sore mouths, or putrid ulcers. In India there was a quadrangular well, enclosed by rocks, wherein the Indians of high rank bathed along with their wives and children. It had the property of throwing out again upon the bank not only the bathers, but everything else, except gold, silver, iron and copper. It is called in India *balladé*, which meant *useful*. This word is really Indian, for in Sanskrit *balada* means *strengthening*. From this report we learn the unimportant fact that the Indians had discovered the healing power of *mineral* wells.

Another well had the peculiarity that the water drawn from it congealed to the thickness of cheese.<sup>41</sup> If three obols weight of this was tri-

---

<sup>40</sup> Frag. i. 8.

<sup>41</sup> Frag. i. 14.

turated to a powder and being put in water was given as a dose to an inculpated person, he confessed all his transgressions. The king used this as a means to bring the accused to a confession. Those found guilty under the ordeal were condemned to die of starvation, and the innocent were dismissed. This particular is remarkable, because the Chinese pilgrim, Fah-hian, relates something similar regarding Udyâna, a country west of the Indus and to the north of Peshawar. He says it was the custom there, if a doubt existed about the guilt of an accused person, to remove the doubt by administering to him a medicinal drink; those guilty of a capital offence were banished. Pliny had much earlier reported something similar of an Indian plant.<sup>42</sup> Guilty persons who had swallowed pills prepared from its roots and administered in wine, were during the night tormented by visions, and confessed all their transgressions. Although the origin of the drink mentioned by Ktésias may be incorrect, there can be no doubt but that it was used for judicial purposes, as it is confirmed by the other two witnesses. Of such ordeals, called *divya* and *pariksha*, several are adduced in the codes of law.<sup>43</sup> Among these, poison also occurs. If the accused, after swallowing the dose, felt no hurtful effects ensuing, he was declared innocent, so that the report of Ktésias is justified by the Indians themselves.<sup>44</sup>

This, however, cannot be said of the fourth custom mentioned in the fragments of the work; that in

<sup>42</sup> *Hist. Nat.* xxiv, 102.

<sup>43</sup> *Manu, Dharmas.* VII, 114-116; *Yâjn. Dharmas.* II, 95ff.

<sup>44</sup> See Stenzler, *Zeitschrift d. D. Morg. Ges.* vol. IX, p. 661.

hunting hares and foxes, the Indians did not use dogs, but eagles, crows, and vultures, which they trained for that purpose.<sup>45</sup> For this practice the Indian writings afford no confirmation, though it by no means follows that the report is untrue. It is only doubtful whether eagles can be so tamed. It would be important to know whether from an oversight on the part of Aelian, who alone has preserved this report, vultures have not been substituted for falcons; in that case this custom would be one which the Indians had in common with the Thrakians and the ancient Germans.

With regard to the Aryan Indians we learn nothing from the extracts from the work of Ktésias, but the fact already noticed, that they were white. He invariably speaks of but one king of India<sup>46</sup>; but from this we must not conclude that at that time Western India formed a single state. It would rather appear that Ktésias did not care to treat of the separate kingdoms.

The fabulous peoples are divided into two classes, one purely fictitious, and the other embracing the aboriginal tribes that have obtained their name from some one peculiarity, and in one particular instance this name is Greek. Of the first class Skylax had already mentioned several. There is but this one fact with reference to these tribes which is significant, that since the fictions regarding them had been propagated to foreign nations so early as the time of Skylax, they must have been still earlier widely current among the Indians. It will therefore be sufficient, if, without

---

<sup>45</sup> Frag. xiii.

<sup>46</sup> Frag. i, 14, 28, 31, &c.

treating of them specially, I content myself with merely establishing their claim to be of Indian origin.<sup>47</sup> When Ktésias, following no doubt the precedent of the Persians, reported of one of these tribes that it was a very brave nation, and that five thousand men of them followed the king of the Indians as archers and lancers, so far from seeing in this circumstance a reason to consider them a real nation, as in the great epic the one-footed men brought gifts to a king, we shall only find a

<sup>47</sup> The *Ἐνωτίκροτες*—the *once-bearing*—see Tzetzes, *Chil.* vii. 636, Frag. i. and xxx, are called in Sanskrit *Ekagarbha*, and inhabit the eight *varshas* or divisions of the terrestrial heavens: *Bhāg. Purāṇa* v, 17, 12. According to an earlier opinion the *varshas* were parts of the world. Whether Ktésias also mentioned the one-eyed *Ekalochana*, who appear in the great epic, is doubtful. Conf. Tzetzes, *Chil.* *ibid.* and *Mahāb.* III, 297, v. 16137. But both do mention the Indian *Karṇaprāvaraṇa*, or those who used their ears as a covering, and who dwelt in the southern region. By Skylax they are called *ὤρόλικροι*, *i.e.* having shovel-sized ears, Tzetzes, *Chil.* vii, 631, 638. Ktésias (frag. i, 31) does not seem to have known their name, but he says they had eight fingers on each hand, and eight toes on each foot, a feature wanting in the Indian accounts, but which is certainly an Indian idea. Megasthenes had translated the Indian name by *Ἐνωτοκόλται*, *i.e.* such as slept in their ears: (see *Ind. Ant.* vol. VI, pp. 133-4). The *Σκιάποδες* are mentioned by Skylax, Hekataios, and Ktesias,—by the second as in Ethiopia, with the frequent attribution of Indian fictions to Ethiopia: Tzetzes, *Chil.* vii, 629 f.; Philostrate, *Vit. Appolon.* vii, 14; Ktés. frag. xxvii, or Müller, *Ctes. Frag.* 89, p. 106. They have not yet been identified in Indian writings: their name must have been *Chādyāpāda*. Possibly they were considered to have feet large enough to overshadow them. The predecessors of Ktésias had not mentioned the one-footed race called *Ekapāda*, who were able nevertheless to run fast—frag. xxx. The passage relating to them in the *Mahābhārata*, according to which they lived in the north, is cited by Lassen, *Ind. Alt.* vol. I, p. 1026n., and that from the *Rāmāyaṇa* in the *Zeitschrift f. d. k. d. Morg.* vol. II, p. 40. Pliney (*Hist. Nat.* VII, 2.) incorrectly considers them to have been the same as the *Sciapodes*.

new proof of the wide dissemination of such fictions at that early period.

It will be suitable here to mention that Ktésias was the first Greek who had received intelligence of the holy country of the Uttara Kuru, although considering the incomplete state in which his work lies before us, this can only be shown by the help of the native writings. He had, to wit, stated that there existed a fountain called Silas, in whose waters even the lightest substances that were thrown in sank to the bottom.<sup>43</sup> Now, this is the river Śilā or Śailodā which one must cross before he can reach that country. It was believed that nothing would float or swim in its waters because by contact with them everything was transmuted into stone. It was only possible to effect a passage by means of the Kīchaka-reed which grew there. The Greek representation offers itself as an inversion of the Indian fiction; if anything that came into contact with the water was changed into stone, it must have become as heavy as stone and sunk to the bottom. The Greeks accordingly supposed that the lightness of the water was the cause of its being innavigable.

In the extant excerpts there is no mention of the Hyperboreans, who, as we shall afterwards show, answer to the Indian Uttara kuru. According to Megasthenes, they lived one thousand years, but according to the Indian view one thousand

<sup>43</sup> Frag. xxviii. Megasthenēs also mentions a river Silas flowing from a source of the same name through the country of the Sileoi, and so light that everything sank in it. The Śilā is mentioned also in the *Mahābh.* VI, 6, v. 219, but north of Meru.

and even ten thousand years.<sup>49</sup> Accordingly it is not at all impossible but that Ktésias has mentioned them under the name of *Μακροβίοι*, who lived four hundred years. These are attributed also to Ethiopia by Herodotus<sup>50</sup> and other writers of later date, but are probably of Indian origin.

The accounts given of the real tribes deserve more consideration, because from them several particulars appear which shed over the aborigines and their contact with the Arian Indians a light all the more unexpected, as it has been the common practice to deny all value to the statements advanced by Ktésias in this connection.

Among the real tribes was one that was black, and dwelt above the river *Ἠπάρκῃος*, probably the Ganges.<sup>51</sup> They spent their days in idleness, ate no corn, but lived only on the milk of kine, goats and sheep which they maintained in great numbers. This notice is interesting, in so far as it shows that on the upper Ganges, or more correctly in the Himalaya, there still existed in those days black aborigines, as the great Epos also knows them there. It must be considered as an exaggeration that they drank no water, and that though not agriculturists, they subsisted also upon fruits. The fullest reports are those relating to the *Κυνάμολγοι* or *Κυνόκεφαλοι*, the dog-headed,<sup>52</sup> who must on account of this peculiarity being attributed to them have particularly

<sup>49</sup> Frag. xxx; Pliny, *H. N.* VII, 2, has confounded the Pandore with the Mandi of Kleitarkhos and Ktésias. See Schwanbeck's *Megasth. Ind.* p. 71; *Ind. Alter.* vol. I, p. 797.

<sup>50</sup> Herodot. III, 17.

<sup>51</sup> Frag. i, 24.

<sup>52</sup> Frag. i, 20, 22, 23, and xxi, xxii, xxiii.

attracted the attention of the classical authors. They were widely propagated, because they dwelt near the sources of the Hyparkhos, as well as in Southern India; their number is stated to have amounted to one hundred and twenty thousand. They were black, and the teeth, tails and voices of dogs, as well as their heads, are attributed to them. They understood, however, the language of the Indians. The reason for their name and their fictitious properties is evident from the circumstance that they kept big dogs for hunting wild oxen and other wild animals. If the use of dog-milk is attributed to them, this may have also been merely an invention, because it is said elsewhere that they used also the milk of goats and of sheep. The other things related of them show that they were a real nation, a tribe of the black aborigines.

They were acquainted with but few of the technical arts, had no houses or beds, but dwelt in caves and slept on couches of straw, leaves, or grass. They knew how to tan hides, and the men as well as the women wore very fine garments manufactured from them. The richest only possessed linen. They kept a multitude of asses, goats and sheep, and the greatest number of the latter constituted their wealth. Besides milk they used also as food the fruit of the Siptakhora tree, which they dried and packed up in plaited baskets and exported to the other Indians. They were very fast runners, good hunters, archers and hurlers of the javelin. They lived especially on the produce of the chase. The flesh of the animals which they killed, they roasted in the sun. Protected by their inaccessible mountains,

they were not attacked in war by their neighbours; they are represented as just men and harmless. They are said to have reached the age of one hundred and seventy years, and some even of two hundred. They carried on trade with the civilized Indians in their neighbourhood, and stood in a free relationship with the Indian king. To him they brought annually two hundred and sixty talents of dried fruits of the Siptakhora tree on rafts, and as many talents of a red dye-stuff and one thousand of elektron or the gum exuding from the Siptakhora tree. To the Indians they sold these wares, and obtained from them in exchange bread, oatmeal, cotton-clothes, bows, and lances, which they required in hunting and killing wild animals. Every fifth year the king presented them with three hundred bows, three thousand lances, one hundred and twenty thousand small shields, and fifty thousand swords.

This description throws a clear light upon the position held by the Indian aborigines towards the kings of the Aryan Indians, on their mutual relations, on the intercourse of the civilized Indians with their barbarous countrymen, and the civilizing influence which they exercised upon them. Secured from subjugation in their inaccessible mountains, the latter must nevertheless have been glad to live in peace with the neighbouring kings, and to propitiate them by presents, and the former to make them feel the superiority of their power. On account of the need for the means of subsistence, and for the means for pursuing their occupations, which they procured from their civilized neighbours, the aborigines were obliged to accustom



themselves to have intercourse with them, and to afford them also an opportunity, and to open a door for the admission of their doctrines and laws among them.

The Indian name of this people *Su n a m u k h a*, *dog-faced*, has been discovered in a MS. which has not yet been published.<sup>53</sup> This tribe, according to it,<sup>54</sup> dwelt on the Indus. The *Καλύστριοι* considered by Ktésias to be synonymous with it cannot be satisfactorily explained from the Sanskrit; but it may have reached us in a corrupted form. To deny that the Aryan Indians may have given to a nation which they despised a name taken from the dog would be unreasonable, because the dog was a despised animal, and the name *Svapāka* or *Svapaka*, *i. e.*, feeder of dogs, designates one of the lowest castes. Nor is there anything to object to the view that one of the aboriginal tribes was specially addicted to the rearing of dogs, which were needed for hunting, seeing that the wild dog is widely propagated throughout India and occurs in the Deccan, and probably also in Nepaul as well as in the south and in the north, where the *K y n a m o l g o i* dwelt. This tribe also has been transferred to Ethiopia and Libya.<sup>55</sup>

The third of these tribes are the *Pygmies*, whose name is Greek, and means 'a fist long.' They are mentioned by Homer, and as fighting

---

<sup>53</sup> Wilford, *As. Res.* vol. VIII, p. 331, from the *Prabhā-sakhanda*.

<sup>54</sup> Vans Kennedy explained this by *Kālavastra*, clothed in black, but the meaning does not suit.

<sup>55</sup> Herodot. IV, 191, and Agatharkhides, p. 44, ed. Hudson, who has drawn his account from Ktésias.

with the cranes.<sup>56</sup> It hence appears that the namō has been transferred to an Indian people. The Indian Pygmies are described as very small, the tallest of them being two ells in height, but most of them only one and a half. They dwelt in the interior of India, were black and deformed, had snub noses, long hair and extraordinarily large beards. They were excellent archers, and three thousand of them were in the retinue of the king. Their sheep, oxen, asses and mules were unusually small. They hunted hares and foxes, not with dogs, but with eagles, ravens, crows and vultures, like the Indians, followed the Indian laws, and were just. They agreed further with the Indians in using both sesame oil and nut oil, as already mentioned. This is all that is stated regarding them in the fragments of Ktésias. To determine what Indian people is meant by this name, it must further be mentioned that Megasthenēs ascribes the battle with the cranes to the *Trispithamoi*, i. e. men three spans long,<sup>57</sup> a name by which he could only designate the Pygmies, and which he had probably selected because it was an old word. Ktésias may therefore be considered as one of those writers who mentioned the battle of the Indian Pygmies with the cranes. Now the Indians ascribe to the *Garuda*, the bird of Vishnu, enmity towards the people of the *Kirâta*, which for this reason is called *Kirâtâsin*, i. e. the devourers of the *Kirâta*, and the name of this people has also the meaning of a *dwarf*. It hence appears that the *Kirâtas* were small men in comparison with the Arian

---

<sup>56</sup> *Iliad*, III, 3ff.

<sup>57</sup> *Ind. Ant.* vol. VI, p. 133, note †, and p. 135.

Indians, and may consequently have been easily confounded with the Pygmies. The form of the bird of Vishnu, as described by the poets, does not exactly correspond with a real bird; in the pictures the form of a bird almost entirely yields to that of a man. There is nevertheless some similarity to an eagle and to a vulture as well as to a crane. If in mythology a simple bird of this kind usually only occurs, it is to be remarked that it passes at the same time for the father and king of the divine birds, and there is nothing to hinder us from believing that, according to the ideas of the people a battle of this bird with the *Kirâta* was thought to have occurred. If the remark that they lived in the interior of India does not agree with their actual position, which is assigned to the east of Bengal, in the *Himâlaya*, and further to the north, it must be understood that foreigners had attributed a wider extension to the name so that it designated even a people in Orissa.<sup>58</sup> From this further application of the names several characteristics attributed to the Pygmies explain themselves, which partly suit the true *Kirâtas*, who like the Bhuta people are beardless, but on the other hand wear long hair. Among them occur also the flat noses,<sup>59</sup> but not the black complexion by which the *Gondas* and other *Vindhya* tribes are on the contrary distinguished, so that here also a commingling of characteristics must be assumed. Both these people, however, are distinguished by their shortness of stature. If the

---

<sup>58</sup> *Peripl. Mar.* c. 62; *Ind. Ant.* vol. VIII, p. 150.

<sup>59</sup> Wilford. *u. s.*, mentions the *chipitanasika*, 'snub-nosed.'

smallness of the Pygmies has been ascribed to their cattle also, it must simply be considered as an enlargement to the account made by foreigners. As we have seen above that the Arian kings kept female Kirâta slaves and hunters, while the Pygmies are described as very brave and hunters of wild animals, and even in later times, the people of that race appear in the royal retinue, the Greek report is confirmed in this point also, while it must further be correct in stating that, though not all, yet at least one tribe of this people had adopted the laws of the Arian Indians.

The Pygmies with their battle against the cranes have also been transferred to Ethiopia<sup>60</sup> from their original home in India. Whether the legend concerning them had already reached the Greeks at the time when the poems of Homer were composed, may be left undecided.

The preceding examination of the narrative of Ktésias (which has reached posterity in so abridged and incomplete a form, and the author whereof had been accused by his own countrymen of mendacity) abundantly shows that Ktésias has in most cases only repeated statements as he heard them from the mouths of the Persians, who themselves had received them from Indians who sojourned in their country, and so we have the reports, not directly from the Indians themselves, but from the Persians. From this circumstance, it is evident why the names, as far as they have been explained, are, with a single exception, Persian, and why some names attributed to the Indians are foreign. If we consider the cir-

---

<sup>60</sup> Hekat. *Frag.* 266, Müller's ed. p. 18.

culits these accounts have made in reaching Greece from India, we cannot but be surprised that in general they still bear the stamp of their Indian origin. As has been shown, Ktésias cannot be absolved from the charge of having in some instances adorned the statements he received and of having even allowed himself to tell untruths. He has also transferred Greek notions to Indian subjects, at least in the matter of the Pygmies. If we however consider his book in its original and complete form, then we see that he must have given a tolerably complete representation of the products of Western India, and of the customs and usages of the inhabitants, as well as several notices of the interior of the country. A few details serve even to elucidate Indian affairs, and there were no doubt many such, which have been lost, because after the Greeks had become more closely acquainted with India in the time of Alexander the Great, his work had been neglected by his countrymen. But the special significance of his narrative does not consist in these isolated elucidations of Indian antiquity, but in the fact that he had communicated to his countrymen the mass of the knowledge on Indian matters and the form which they had assumed among the Persians, and had marked thereby the extent of the knowledge gained regarding India before the time of Alexander. His work may have contributed to increase the desire of the Greeks to investigate foreign countries, but it exerted no influence on the development of geographical science, and just as little on the expedition of Alexander, as has already been remarked.

## APPENDIX.

## ON CERTAIN INDIAN ANIMALS.

From Kosmas Indikopleustes<sup>61</sup> *De Mundo*, XI.

1. *The Rhinoceros.*

This animal is called the rhinoceros from having horns growing upon its nose. When it walks about the horns shake, but when it looks enraged it tightens them, and they become firm and unshaken so that they are able to tear up even trees by the roots, such especially as stand right in their way. The eyes are placed as low down as the jaws. It is altogether a most terrible animal, and is especially hostile to the elephant. Its feet and its skin closely resemble those of the elephant. Its skin, which is dry and hard, is four fingers thick—and from this instead of from iron some make ploughshares wherewith they plough their lands. The Ethiopians in their language call the rhinoceros *arou* or *harisi*, prefixing the rough breathing to the *alpha* of the latter word, and adding *rissi* to it, so that the word *arou* is the name of the animal, while *harisi* is an epithet which indicates its connexion with *ploughing* arising from the configuration of its nose and the use made of its hide. I have seen a living rhinoceros, but I was standing some distance off at

---

<sup>61</sup> A monkish traveller of the 7th century.

the time. I have also seen the skin of one, which was stuffed with straw and stood in the king's palace, and I have thus been enabled to delineate the animal accurately.<sup>62</sup>

#### 2. *The Taurelaphos or Ox-deer.*

This is an animal found in India and in Ethiopia. But those in India are tame and gentle, and are there used for carrying pepper and other stuffs packed in bags; these being slung over the back one on each side. Their milk is made into butter. We eat also their flesh, the Christians killing them by cutting their throat, and the Greeks by beating them with cudgels. The Ethiopian ox-deer, unlike the Indian, are wild and untameable.

#### 3. *The Camélopardalis or Giraffe.*

This animal is found only in Ethiopia, and is, like the hog-deer of that country, wild and untameable. In the royal palace, however, they bring up one or two from the time when they are quite young, and make them tame that the sight of them may amuse the king. In his presence they place before them milk or water to drink contained in a pan, but, then, owing to the great length of their feet, breast, and neck they cannot possibly stoop to the earth and drink unless by making their two forelegs straddle. When they make them straddle they can of course drink. I have written this from my own personal knowledge.

#### 4. *The Agriobous or Wild Ox.*

This is an animal of great size and belongs to

---

<sup>62</sup> Referring to the picture of the animal in his book.

India, and from it is got what is called the *toupha*, wherewith the captains of armies decorate their horses and their standards when taking the field. They say of it that if its tail be caught by a tree it no longer stoops, but remains standing through its unwillingness to lose even a single hair. On seeing this the people of the neighbourhood approach and cut off the tail, and then the creature flies off when docked entirely of its tail.

5. *The Moskhos or Musk-deer.*

This is a small animal, and is called in the native dialect the *Kastouri*.<sup>63</sup> Those who hunt it pierce it with arrows, and having confined the blood which collects at the navel, they cut the navel off, that being the part which has the pleasant fragrance known to us under the name of musk.

6. *The Monokerós or Unicorn.*

This animal is called the unicorn, but I have never set eyes upon it. I have however seen *four* brazen statues of it in Ethiopia, where they were set up in the royal palace—an edifice adorned with four towers. From these statues I have thus delineated the animal. They say of it that it is a terrible beast and invincible, having its power all lodged in its horn. When it perceives that its pursuers are many and that they are on the point of catching it, it springs down from the top of some precipice, and during the descent through the air turns itself in such a way that the whole shock of the fall is sustained by the horn which

---

<sup>63</sup> This is still its Indian name.



receives no damage thereby.<sup>64</sup> The scripture refers to this peculiarity, which says : *save me from the mouth of lions and my humility from the horns of unicorns* ; and again, *the one beloved as the son of unicorns* ; and again in the blessings of Balaam wherewith he blessed Israel, he says twice over : *God led him out of Egypt even as the glory of the unicorn*, thus bearing witness to the strength and boldness and glory of the animal.

7. *The Khoirelaphos or Hog-deer,  
and the Hippopotamus.*

The hog-deer I have both seen and eaten. The hippopotamus however I have not seen, but I have had in my possession teeth of it so large that they weighed about thirteen pounds. These teeth I sold here. I saw many both in Ethiopia and in Egypt.

8. *Piperi—Pepper.*

This is a picture of the pepper tree. Each separate plant clings for support to some tall tree which does not yield fruit, being very weak and slender like the delicate tendrils of the vine. Each cluster is enveloped within a couple of leaves. It is perfectly green like the colour of rue.

9. *Argellia*<sup>65</sup> *or the cocoanut-tree.*

There is another tree of this sort called *argellia*, that is—the tall nut-trees of India. It differs in no respect from the date-palm except in being taller and thicker and having larger leaves. It pro-

<sup>64</sup> The ibex is said to fall in such a way that its horns sustain the force of the impact.

<sup>65</sup> The initial *n* must have dropped out as the word no doubt transliterates the native term for the cocoa, *narikel*.

duces no other fruit than two or three and as many nuts. The taste is extremely sweet and pleasant, being like that of the kernels of green nuts. The nut is at first full of a deliciously sweet water which the Indians therefore drink instead of wine. This very sweet beverage is called *rhongkhosoupha*. If the fruit is gathered at maturity, then so long as it keeps its quality, the water in the course of time hardens upon the shell, while the water in the centre retains its fluidity till it finally disappears. If however it be kept too long *without being opened*, the concretion on the shell becomes rancid and unfit for human food.

10. *Phóké, Delphis, Khelóné*—*The Seal, the Dolphin and the Tortoise.*

When at sea we use the seal, dolphin and tortoise for food should they chance to be caught.<sup>65</sup> The dolphin and tortoise we kill by cutting their throat, but we cut not the throat of the seal, but despatch him with blows as we do large fish. The flesh of the tortoise, like that of the sheep, is dark-coloured; that of the dolphin like the pig's is dark-coloured and rank; that of the seal like the pig's is white, but not rank.

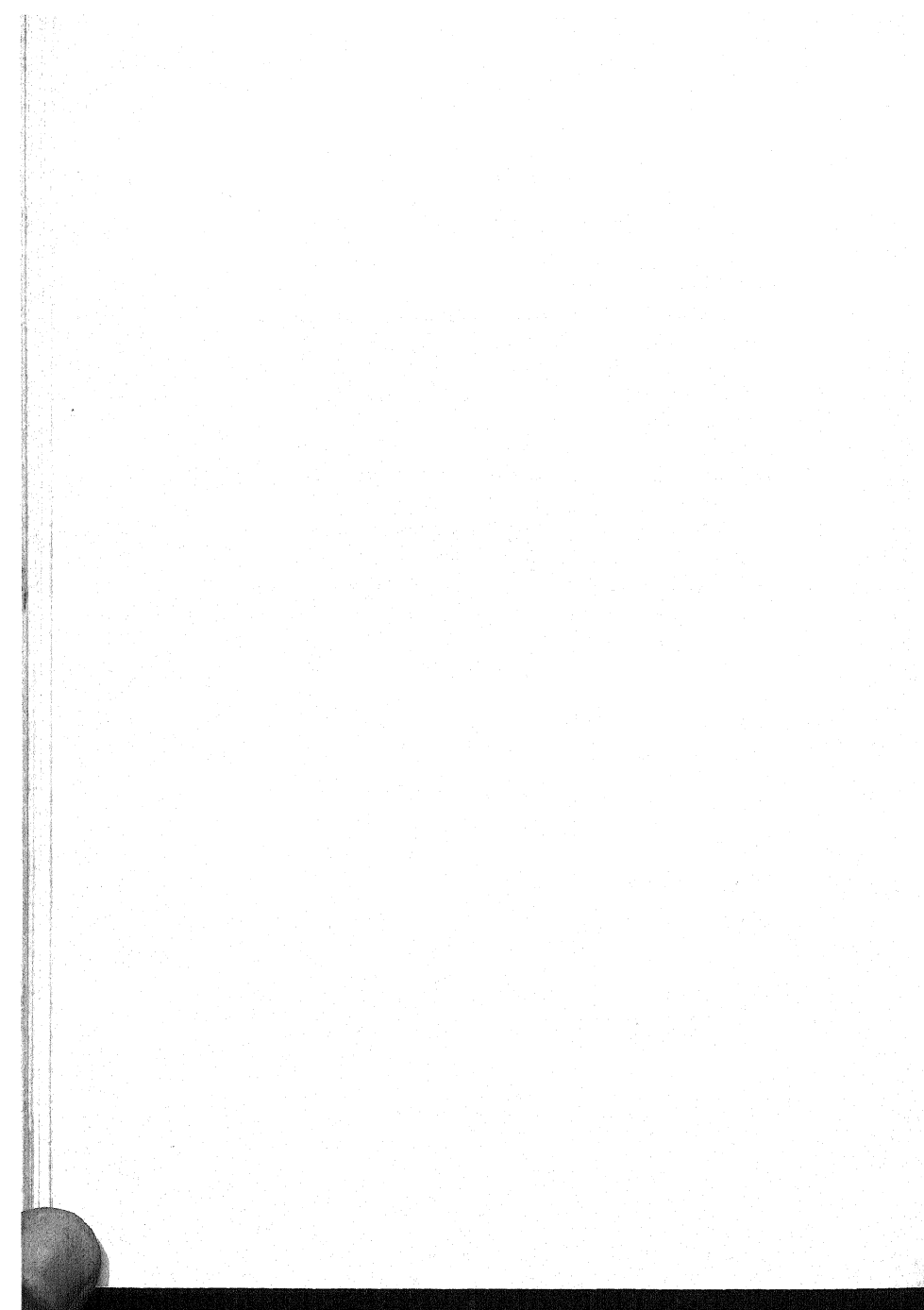
---

<sup>65</sup> According to the recipe for making hare-soup—"First catch your hare."

## ADDITIONAL NOTE.

In frag. XIII p. 43 it is stated that eagles were trained by the Indians to hunt hares and foxes, and Lassen (p. 81) expresses doubt as to whether eagles could be so far tamed. Here however Ktésias must be judged to have written according to fact, for in Upper India eagles are trained to this very day for the purpose mentioned. Sir Joseph Fayrer informs us that when the Prince of Wales visited Lahore, there were among the people collected about Government House some Afghans with large eagles trained to pull down deer and hares. They were perched, he adds, on their wrists like hawks.

---



# INDEX.

	PAGE		PAGE
<b>A</b>		Asses, wild .....	26, 27, 43, 54-56
<i>Abtekhros</i> , death .....	50		
<i>Acanthus</i> .....	53	<b>B</b>	
<i>Æthiopia</i> .....	46, 47, &c.	Babylon .....	17
<i>Ætna</i> .....	13, 15	Badakshan .....	69
<i>Agriobous</i> (wild-ox) .	93	Baktria .....	16, 44, 69
Alexander the Great	91	Balaam.....	95
Amber...20, 21, 23, 51, 52,		Bala Ghâts .....	10n
	70, 86	<i>Balladē</i> , a fountain.	31n, 79
Amphinomos .....	14n*	Bambu.....	10, 70
Anapos.....	14n	Bambusa .....	11n
Andros Is. ....	14n	Beetle (cochineal in-	
Apes.....	8	sect) .....	53
<i>Aphytakorce</i> trees		Bharoch .....	10n
producing amber..	51	Bhutans .....	89
Arabia the Happy...	64	Bird-dung poison ...	50
<i>Argyllia</i> (cocoa) ...	95	Bittakos (parrot)...8n,	74
Arimaspians.....	63, 77	Borneo Is. ....	25n
Aristeas .....	62	Brundusium .....	62
Aristotle .....	73, 74		
Armenia .....	60		
Artaxerxēs Mnêmôn.	2,		
	9, 14, 30, 42, 50, 65		
Asklēpiadai.....	1		

\* n means note.



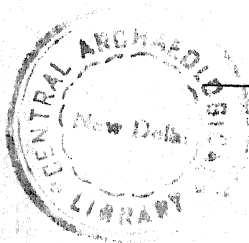
	PAGE		PAGE
<b>G</b>		<b>H</b>	
Gaîtês, Gaitrês River	34	Hares .....	43, 44
Ganges River .....	84	Heat in India...	10, 13, 68
<i>Garuda</i> .....	88	Hegesias .....	62
Gellius .....	63	Hekataios .....	1, 82n
Germans, ancient ...	81	Hellankos .....	64
Giraffe .....	93	Herodotos .....	1, 3, 64
Goats .....	17, 38 &c.	Hēsigonos .....	61
Gold .....	16, 44, 46, 68	Hippokratês .....	1
Gonda people .....	89	Hippopotamus .....	95
Griffins or Gryphons.	17, 44, 76	Hog-deer .....	95
Gymnetae .....	48	Homer .....	87, 90
<b>H</b>		Honey .....	17
		Horned ass in India.	54
		Huckle-bone of the	
		Indian ass .....	55
		Ἰνδῶνος River .....	20-22, 67, 70, 84
		<b>I</b>	
		Hunting .....	16
		Hurricanes .....	68
		<i>Hydrophanes</i> (sun-	
		agate) .....	7n
		Hyperboreans .....	83
		Hypobarus River ...	51
		<b>J</b>	
		Iamboulos .....	60
		Ibex .....	95n
		Indians, age attained	
		by ...	18, 25, 62, 79, 83, 84
		„ character of.	12
		„ 17, 78, 81, 84	
		„ complexion of.	13
		„ 78, 81, 84	
		„ customs of ...	18, 78
		„ health of ...	18
		„ number of. .	7
		Indikopleustes .....	60
		Indus River .....	7, 10, 34
		Insect yielding purple	52
		Isigonos of Nikaea...	62
		<b>K</b>	
		Jackal .....	75
		<b>K</b>	
		Kalystrioi .....	22, 87

	PAGE		PAGE
<i>Kavθapoi</i> insects .....	53	Locusts .....	61
<i>Karnaprāvāraṇa</i> .....	82n	<i>Lusimīlēs</i> death .....	50
<i>Kapṭiṇ</i> (cinnamon). 29n,		<i>Lyncestis</i> .....	14n
	70		
<i>Karpura</i> (camphor)..	30n		<b>M</b>
<i>Kartazonon</i> ...27n, 75-76		<i>Magnet</i> .....	9n
<i>Karuva</i> .....	30n	<i>Makrobioi</i> .....48, 61, 84	
<i>Kastouri</i> .....	94	<i>Mandi</i> .....	61
<i>Khelone</i> , the tortoise	96	<i>Martikhora</i> . 11-12, 38-42,	
<i>Khoirelephas</i> or hog-			76, 77
deer .....	95	<i>Maurusian Straits</i> ...	33n
<i>Kīchaka</i> reed .....	83	<i>Medicinal root</i> .....	25
<i>Kirāta</i> .....	88	<i>Megasthenēs</i> .....	61, 88
<i>Knidos</i> .....	1	<i>Metadrida</i> .....	33
<i>Kosmas Indicopleus</i> -		<i>Mineral wells</i> .....	79
tes, extract from ..	92	<i>Mines</i> .....	9
<i>Krates</i> .....	47, 48	<i>Minium</i> (red lead)...	59
<i>Krokottas</i> (Jackal or		<i>Mithras</i> , a god .....	64
Hyæna) .....	32-33	<i>Monocoli</i> .....	63
<i>Ktesiarkhos</i> .....	1, 64	<i>Monosceli</i> .....	61
<i>Κυνοκέφαλοι</i> .....	22	<i>Musk-deer</i> .....	94
<i>Kynamolgoi</i> . 9n, 36, 84-87			
<i>Kynokephaloi</i> ...21-25,			<b>N</b>
36-37, 52, 53, 63, 84-87		<i>Narikel</i> (cocoa) .....	95n
<i>Kynolykos</i> , e. g. Kro-		<i>Naxos</i> .....	14
kottas.....	32-33	<i>Nepaul</i> .....	87
<i>Kyonian</i> , country ...	33		
			<b>O</b>
		<i>Odontotyrannos</i> .....	28n
<b>L</b>		<i>Oil of cinnamon</i> . 29n, 30	
<i>Lakes</i> , marvellous. 59, 60		„ lake of .....	16
<i>Leprosy</i> , the white... 59		„ of the <i>skōlex</i> 28, 58-59	
<i>Lions</i> .....	73	„ spring of .....	33

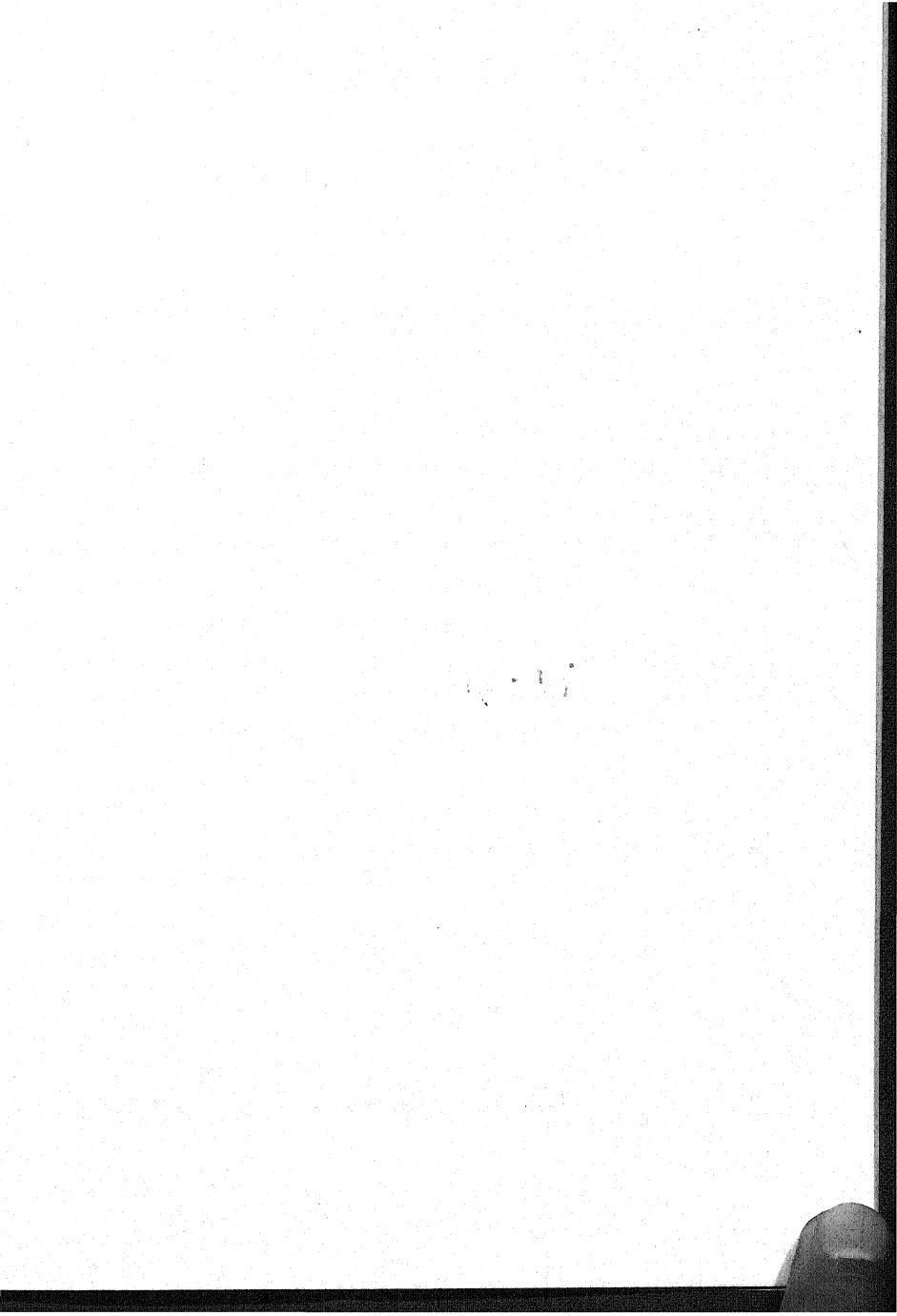


	PAGE		PAGE
Onēsikritos .....	62	Purple dye.....	22, 23, 52
Onyx .....	9, 10n, 12n	Pygmies 15, 63, 71, 87-90,	91
Ordeals .....	18, 47, 80		
Orissa .....	89	<b>R</b>	
Ὀρόλινοι .....	82n	Races, fabulous 25, 31-32,	
Ourang-outang .....	25n	34, 47-48, 60-61, 63	
Ox-deer .....	93	Rainfall.....	7, 81, 83
Ox, the wild .....	93	Reeds.....	10, 38, 70-71
Ozêné (Ujjain).....	10n	„ <i>Kitchaka</i> .....	83
		Rhēginos.....	61
<b>P</b>		Rhinoceros .....	26n, 27n,
Paktōlos River .....	17	75, 92	
Palm-trees. 17, 47, 70, 95		Rhonkosoupha .....	96
Pandareæ or Pandore. 48,			
61, 84n		<b>S</b>	
<i>Pantarba</i> .....	7, 69-70	Sardine stone.....	9, 12n
<i>Parēbon</i> or <i>Parybon</i> . 20,		Sardous, Sardian	
51, 72		mountains ...	12, 78, 79
Pariksha (an ordeal). 81		Sauromatae.....	63
Parrots .....	8, 74	Sciopodae .....	61, 82n
Parysatis .....	9, 50	Sea in India .....	10, 67
Pepper .....	93, 95	Seal (Phōkē) .....	96
<i>Periploi</i> .....	3	Seal-stones.....	8, 10
Persepolis .....	76	Sêres.....	34
Phasēlis .....	14, 15n, 42	Serpents 18-19, 48-49, 72	
Phasis River .....	14n	Sheep .....	17 &c.
Phōkē—the seal.....	96	„ of Khalkis... 33	
Phōtios .....	5-6, 65-66	Sidē River and Lake 60	
Polystephanos .....	62	Šilās or Šailodā River 83	
Precious stones .....	10n	Silver .....	16
Prusa .....	15n	Simia Faunus .....	8n
<i>Psittacus</i> (parrot) ... 8n		<i>Siptakhora</i> (a tree). 21,	
Psylloi .....	43	85, 86	

PAGE		PAGE
Skins used as dress. 24	U	
Skōlex (worm of the	Udayapura ..... 69	
Indus) .....7, 23, 27-28,	Udyāna, country ... 80	
56-59	Unicorn ...26, 56, 75-76,	
Skylax ...60, 66, 81, 82n	94, 95	
Snakes ..... 48	Uttarakuru ..... 83	
Sun, size of .....10, 68	V	
„ worship of .. ... 12	Vindhya Mountains. 12n,	
Sunamukha, people.. 87	89	
Svapāka ..... 87	Vishnu..... 88, 89	
Swine..... 17, 46, 47	Volcano ..... 14	
T	W	
Taurelaphos (ox-deer) 93	Wines ..... 30, 72	
Thebaid ..... 46	Wool-growing trees. 54	
Theopompos ..... 62	X	
Thrakians ..... 81	Xenophon ..... 3	
Tortoise ..... 96	Z	
Toupha ..... 94	Zakynthos ..... 14	
Tree-attracting me-		
tals and animals... 51		
Trispithamoi ..... 88		
Troglodytes..... 61		



CATALOGUED.



JOHN W. McCRINDLE

ANCIENT INDIA

AS DESCRIBED IN

CLASSICAL LITERATURE

BEING A COLLECTION OF  
GREEK AND LATIN TEXTS RELATING TO INDIA, EXTRACTED FROM  
HERODOTOS, STRABO, PLINIUS, AELIANUS, KOSMAS,  
BARDESANES, PORPHYRIOS, STROBAIOS, DION CHRYSOSTOM,  
DIONYSIOS, PHILOSTRATOS, NONNOS,  
DIODORUS SICULUS, THE ITINERARY AND ROMANCE HISTORY OF  
ALEXANDER AND OTHER WORKS  
TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH, WITH COPIOUS NOTES, A CRITICAL INTRODUCTION  
AND AN INDEX

\* \* \*  
\* \*  
\*

Westminster 1901. Reprint 1971. XXI, 226 pages.  
Cloth, 8vo. (\*ISBN 90 6022 110 9)



PHILO PRESS / POSTBOX 806 / AMSTERDAM 1000 / HOLLAND

BRIAN HOUGHTON HODGSON

ESSAYS ON THE  
LANGUAGES, LITERATURE  
AND RELIGION  
OF NEPAL AND TIBET

TOGETHER WITH FURTHER  
PAPERS ON THE GEOGRAPHY, ETHNOLOGY AND COMMERCE  
OF THOSE COUNTRIES

CORRECTED AND AUGMENTED EDITION OF TWO EARLIER COLLECTIONS  
OF ESSAYS

ENTITLED 'ILLUSTRATIONS... 1841' AND 'SELECTIONS... XXVII, 1857',

WITH A SUPPLEMENT OF  
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS FROM THE AUTHOR'S COPY,  
EDITED BY MAHADEVA PRASAD SAHA

AND WITH OTHER ADDITIONS, OMITTED IN THE FORMER EDITION



PHILO PRESS / POSTBOX 806 / AMSTERDAM 1000 / HOLLAND

EDWARD B. COWELL & ROBERT A. NEIL

THE DIVYÂVADÂNA  
A COLLECTION  
OF  
EARLY BUDDHIST LEGENDS

SANSKRIT TEXT IN TRANSCRIPTION,  
EDITED FROM THE NEPALESE MANUSCRIPTS IN CAMBRIDGE  
AND PARIS,  
WITH COMPARISON OF OTHER MANUSCRIPTS, WITH VARIANT READINGS,  
APPENDICES,  
NOTES TO THE TEXT AND AN INDEX OF WORDS AND PROPER NAMES

\* \* \*  
\* \*  
\*

Cambridge 1886. Reprint 1970. XII, 712 pages.  
Cloth, 8vo. (ISBN 90 6022 079 X)



PHILO PRESS / POSTBOX 806 / AMSTERDAM 1000 / HOLLAND